User Guide - Exchange Public Folder Archiver Agent

TABLE OF CONTENTS

OVERVIEW

Introduction Key Features Add-On Components Terminology

SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS - EXCHANGE PUBLIC FOLDER ARCHIVER AGENT

DEPLOYMENT - EXCHANGE SERVER AGENTS

INSTALL THE 64-BIT EXCHANGE AGENTS FOR EXCHANGE SERVER 2007 OR 2010

INSTALL THE 64-BIT EXCHANGE AGENTS FOR EXCHANGE SERVER 2007 OR 2010 - CLUSTERED ENVIRONMENT

INSTALL THE 32-BIT EXCHANGE AGENTS FOR EXCHANGE SERVER 2007 OR 2010

INSTALL THE 32-BIT EXCHANGE AGENTS FOR EXCHANGE SERVER 2007 OR 2010 - CLUSTERED ENVIRONMENT

INSTALL THE EXCHANGE AGENTS ON EXCHANGE SERVER 2003

INSTALL THE EXCHANGE AGENTS ON EXCHANGE SERVER 2003 - CLUSTERED ENVIRONMENT

INSTALL THE 32-BIT EXCHANGE AGENTS ON A NON-EXCHANGE SERVER

INSTALL THE EXCHANGE AGENTS FOR EXCHANGE SERVER 2003 ON A NON-EXCHANGE SERVER

GETTING STARTED CONFIGURATION - EXCHANGE PUBLIC FOLDER ARCHIVER AGENT

GETTING STARTED ARCHIVE - EXCHANGE PUBLIC FOLDER ARCHIVER AGENT

GETTING STARTED RECOVER - EXCHANGE PUBLIC FOLDER ARCHIVER AGENT

ADVANCED CONFIGURATION - EXCHANGE PUBLIC FOLDER ARCHIVER AGENT

Understanding the CommCell Console

Configuring Archive Rules for Messages

Based on Message Properties Based on Stubs Based on Attachments

Configure Recall Status Messages

For Recalls from Disk Library For Recalls from Tape Library For Recalls when Media is Outside the Library

Selecting Folders For Archiving Filter Specific Folders Include Specific Folders

Managing the Default Subclient

Modifying an Agent, Archive Set, or Subclient

Deleting an Agent, Archive Set, or Subclient

ADVANCED ARCHIVE - EXCHANGE PUBLIC FOLDER ARCHIVER AGENT

Scheduling an Archive Job

Managing Jobs Restarting Jobs Controlling Jobs

Additional Options

Administration Guide - Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent

ADVANCED RECOVER - EXCHANGE PUBLIC FOLDER ARCHIVER AGENT

Recovering a Public Folder Item

Recovering an Attachment

Finding and Restoring

Finding a Message with a Specific Subject Finding a Message From a Specific User Finding a Message Sent to a Specific User Finding a Message Received in a Specific Time Range Quick Search using Sampling Finding a Message Backed Up at a Specific Time Adding Search Results to a List Using Find from a Browse Window Restoring a Message or a Mailbox Item from the Search Results Save, Email, or Print Search Results

Performing an Out-of-Place Recovery

Recovering to a Different Exchange Server Version

Reviewing Data Selected for Recovery

Scheduling a Recovery

Restoring By Jobs

Managing Recover Jobs Restarting Jobs

Controlling Jobs

Additional Restore Options

DATA AGING - EXCHANGE PUBLIC FOLDER ARCHIVER AGENT

ADDITIONAL OPERATIONS - EXCHANGE PUBLIC FOLDER ARCHIVER AGENT

OUTLOOK ADD-IN

DESKTOP BROWSE

FAQ

TROUBLESHOOTING - EXCHANGE PUBLIC FOLDER ARCHIVER AGENT ARCHIVE

TROUBLESHOOTING - EXCHANGE PUBLIC FOLDER ARCHIVER AGENT RECOVER

ONLINE HELP

System Requirements - Exchange Public Folder Archiver Agent

System Requirements Supported Features

The following requirements are for the Exchange Public Folder Archiver Agent:

APPLICATION

Microsoft Exchange 2003 32-bit Server up to the latest service pack Microsoft Exchange 2007 64-bit Server up to the latest service pack Microsoft Exchange 2010 64-bit Server up to the latest service pack

OPERATING SYSTEM

WINDOWS SERVER 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 x64 Editions* *Core Editions not supported

WINDOWS SERVER 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1

CLUSTER - SUPPORT

The software can be installed on a Cluster if clustering is supported by the above-mentioned operating systems.

For information on supported cluster types, see Clustering - Support.

HARD DRIVE

1 GB of minimum disk space is required for installing the software.
 256 MB of free disk space is required for job result directory.
 256 MB of free disk space is required for log directory.

OWA PROXY ENABLER

256 MB minimum of hard disk space for installing the software.

OUTLOOK ADD-IN CLIENT

50 MB minimum of hard disk space for installing the software.

721 MB of temp space required for install.

Ensure that your setup has disk space to install the following: Visual Studio Tools for Office

.NET Framework 4

MEMORY

32 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

PROCESSOR

All Windows-compatible processors supported

SUPPORTED COMPONENTS

OWA PROXY ENABLER

The OWA Proxy Enabler is supported on any platform supported by the Microsoft Exchange Server.

WEB PROXY AGENT

The Web Proxy Agent is supported on any platform supported by the Microsoft Exchange Server.

OUTLOOK ADD-IN CLIENT

The Outlook Add-In Client is supported with any version of Microsoft Outlook supported by the Microsoft Exchange Server.

PERIPHERALS

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

MISCELLANEOUS

NETWORK

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

MICROSOFT VISUAL C++

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

.NET FRAMEWORK

.NET Framework 2.0 is automatically installed. Note that .NET Framework 2.0 can co-exist with other versions of this software.

NOTES ON MICROSOFT EXCHANGE SERVER /DATAAGENT INSTALLATION

Microsoft Exchange 2007 64-bit Server Agents are 32-bit MAPI-based Agents installed on a Microsoft Windows x64 platform. See Installing 32-bit Components on a Microsoft Windows x64 Platform for information on installation and configuration requirements for these Agents.

- The Microsoft Exchange 2003 and 2007 Mailbox and Public Folder-based Agents can be installed in two ways:
- $\,\circ\,\,$ directly on the Microsoft Exchange Server computer
- o as Proxy Agents on a separate computer running a supported 32-bit operating system

NOTES ON OUTLOOK OWA PROXY ENABLER INSTALLATION

Prior to configuring Web Access for Exchange 2007 Mailbox/Public Folder Archiver, Exchange WebProxy Archiver Agent, or OWA Proxy Enabler, ensure that the Client Access Role has been configured on the Exchange Server.

NOTES ON OUTLOOK ADD-IN CLIENT INSTALLATION

For Windows clients, JRE 1.7.0_17 is installed automatically with the Outlook Add-In software if it is not already installed.

.NET Framework is needed to support RPC over HTTP connection mode, as well as support for the Exchange Offline Mining Tool. It is not automatically installed by the MSI package and must be manually installed.

Update 331320 must be installed on the client in order to use RPC over HTTP. Contact Microsoft Product Support Services and refer to KB 331320 to obtain this patch.

The Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is not automatically installed for MSI installs. However, the required subset of files from Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package are provided as part of the software and therefore, manual installation is not required.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors are supported by our software but may not be individually listed in our System Requirements. We will provide information on any known caveat for the revisions and/or service packs. In some cases, these revisions and/or service packs affect the working of our software. Changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. The older releases of our software may not support the platforms supported in the current release. However, we will make every effort to correct the behavior in the current or future releases when necessary. Please contact your Software Provider for any problem with a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable

Deployment - Exchange Server Agents

PLANNING YOUR INSTALLATION

The Microsoft Exchange Server Agents can be installed individually or in any combination. However, your installation options will differ depending on your environment and the combination of Agents you intend to install.

To ensure you select the appropriate installation option for your environment, first compile the following information:

EXCHANGE AGENTS TO BE INSTALLED

For complete protection, it is recommended all Agents be installed in your environment.

EXCHANGE SERVER VERSION

The Exchange Server Version can be 2010, 2007, or 2003.

WILL THE AGENTS BE INSTALLED ON THE EXCHANGE SERVER?

You can install Agents on the Exchange Server or another computer (Non-Exchange Server). The Database iDataAgent, however, must be installed on the Exchange Server.

IS THE COMPUTER 32-BIT OR 64-BIT?

Whether installing on the Exchange Server or a Non-Exchange Server, the bit-rate can be 32-bit or 64-bit.

WHAT VERSION OF OUTLOOK IS INSTALLED ON THE COMPUTER?

Outlook must be installed on the computer for all Agents except the Database iDataAgent and can be version 2010 or 2007.

IS THE OUTLOOK VERSION 32-BIT OR 64-BIT?

The Outlook bit-rate can be 32-bit or 64-bit.

WILL YOU BE INSTALLING THE AGENTS IN A CLUSTERED ENVIRONMENT?

INSTALLATION OPTIONS

Once you have compiled the above information, choose the appropriate installation procedure as described in the tables below.

EXCHANGE SERVER 2013

	OUTLOOK VERSION	INSTALLATION PROCEDURE	SUPPORTED AGENTS
INSTALLING ON THE	EXCHANGE SERVER		
64-bit Exchange Server	N/A		Database Agent for Database Availability Group (DAG) Configuration

EXCHANGE SERVER 2010

SERVER SETUP	ουτιοοκ	INSTALLATION PROCEDURE	SUPPORTED AGENTS
	VERSION		
INSTALLING ON TH	E EXCHANGE SERVER		
64-bit Exchange Server	Outlook 2010 64-bit	Install the 64-bit Exchange Agents for Exchange Server 2010 or 2007	Database, Mailbox, and Public Folder iDataAgents
			Compliance, Mailbox, and Public Folder Archivers
64-bit Exchange Server	Outlook 2010/2007 32-bit	Install the 32-bit Exchange Agents for Exchange Server 2010 or 2007	Database, Mailbox, and Public Folder iDataAgents
			Compliance, Mailbox, and Public Folder Archivers

64-bit Exchange Server	N/A	Install the 64-bit Exchange Agents for Exchange Server 2010 or 2007	Database Agent for Database Availability Group (DAG) Configuration
INSTALLING ON A N	ON-EXCHANGE SERVE	R	
32-bit Non-Exchange Server	Outlook 2010/2007 32-bit	Install the 32-bit Exchange Agents on a Non-Exchange Server	Mailbox and Public Folder iDataAgents Compliance, Mailbox, and Public Folder Archivers
64-bit Non-Exchange Server	Outlook 2010/2007 32-bit	Install the 32-bit Exchange Agents for Exchange Server 2010 or 2007	Mailbox and Public Folder iDataAgents Compliance, Mailbox, and Public Folder Archivers
64-bit Non-Exchange Server	Outlook 2010 64-bit	Install the 64-bit Exchange Agents for Exchange Server 2010 or 2007	Mailbox and Public Folder iDataAgents Compliance, Mailbox, and Public Folder Archivers

EXCHANGE SERVER 2007

SERVER SETUP	ουτιοοκ	INSTALLATION PROCEDURE	SUPPORTED AGENTS
	VERSION		
INSTALLING ON THI	E EXCHANGE SERVER		
64-bit Exchange Server	Outlook 2010 64-bit	Install the 64-bit Exchange Agents for Exchange Server 2010 or 2007	Database, Mailbox, and Public Folder iDataAgents
			Compliance, Mailbox, and Public Folder Archivers
64-bit Exchange Server - Cluster	Outlook 2010 64-bit	Install the 64-bit Exchange Agents for Exchange Server 2010 or 2007 - Clustered Environment	Database, Mailbox, and Public Folder iDataAgents
			Compliance, Mailbox, and Public Folder Archivers
64-bit Exchange Server	Outlook 2010/2007 32- bit	Install the 32-bit Exchange Agents for Exchange Server 2010 or 2007	Database, Mailbox, and Public Folder iDataAgents
			Compliance, Mailbox, and Public Folder Archivers
64-bit Exchange Server - Cluster	Outlook 2010/2007 32- bit	Install the 32-bit Exchange Agents for Exchange Server 2010 or 2007 - Clustered Environment	Database, Mailbox, and Public Folder iDataAgents
			Compliance, Mailbox, and Public Folder Archivers
INSTALLING ON A N	ON-EXCHANGE SERVE	R	
32-bit Non-Exchange	Outlook 2010/2007	Install the 32-bit Exchange Agents on a Non-Exchange Server	Mailbox and Public Folder iDataAgents
Server	32-bit		Compliance, Mailbox, and Public Folder Archivers
64-bit Non-Exchange	Outlook 2010/2007	Install the 64-bit Exchange Agents for Exchange Server 2010	Mailbox and Public Folder iDataAgents
Server	64-bit	or 2007	Compliance, Mailbox, and Public Folder

EXCHANGE SERVER 2003

SERVER SETUP	OUTLOOK VERSION	INSTALLATION PROCEDURE	SUPPORTED AGENTS
INSTALLING ON THE	EXCHANGE SERVER		
Exchange Server	Not Required	Install the Exchange Agents on Exchange Server 2003	Database, Mailbox, and Public Folder iDataAgents
			Compliance, Mailbox, and Public Folder Archivers
Exchange Server - Cluster		Install the Exchange Agents on Exchange Server 2003 - Clustered Environment	Database, Mailbox, and Public Folder iDataAgents
			Compliance, Mailbox, and Public Folder Archivers
INSTALLING ON A N	ON-EXCHANGE SERVER		
Non-Exchange Server		Install the Exchange Agents for Exchange Server 2003 on a	Mailbox and Public Folder iDataAgents
	bit	Non-Exchange Server	Compliance, Mailbox, and Public Folder Archivers

Compliance, Mailbox, and Public Folder Archivers

Install the 64-bit Exchange Agents for Exchange Server 2010 or 2007

Previous Next >

Follow the steps given below to install Exchange Agents on one of the following:

- 64-bit Exchange Server 2010
- 64-bit Exchange Server 2007
- 64-bit Non-Exchange Server

WHERE TO INSTALL

The Exchange Agents can be installed in one of two ways:

- Directly onto the Exchange Server. This method is referred to as an on-host installation and is useful if you want to preserve hardware resources.
- On a separate computer with connectivity to the Exchange Server. This method is referred to as an Non-Exchange Server installation and is useful if you want to offload the memory and processing resources required for backups and restores from the Exchange Server.

Install the Exchange Agents on all the nodes on which backups have to be run in a DAG configuration.

INSTALLATION

The software can be installed using one of the following methods:

METHOD 1: INTERACTIVE INSTALL

Use this procedure to directly install the software from the installation package or a System Requirements network drive.

METHOD 2: INSTALL SOFTWARE FROM COMMCELL CONSOLE

Use this procedure to remotely install the software on a client computer.

RELATED TOPICS

Download Software Packages Provides step-by-step procedure to download the latest packages for software install.

Verify that the computer in which you wish to install the software satisfies the System Requirements.

Firewall

Provides comprehensive information on firewall.

PREREQUISITES

If you are installing the Exchange Agents on a 64-bit off-host proxy computer, perform the following pre-requisite task before installing these agents:

- Ensure that the proxy computer has been added to the same Domain in which the Exchange Server 2007 resides.
- Install Microsoft Outlook 2007 or higher on the off-host proxy computer in order to supply the software drivers necessary for Exchange-based agents to function in an off-host proxy configuration.

FOR EXCHANGE SERVER 2010

- Ensure that the service account is a member of Organization Management group.
- Ensure that the mail-enabled user is a member of the Local Administrator Group and have rights to all mailboxes on the server.

To assign full access follow the steps given below:

- Using ADSIEDIT navigate to Configuration | Services | Microsoft Exchange.
- Right-click your organization name, click Properties | Securities and click the Advanced tab.
- Click Edit to modify the permissions set for Organization Management group.
- Click to select Full Control, Receive As and Send As permissions and wait for replication.
- Click the Effective Permission tab and Select the name of the backup account.
- The backup account should display the following as selected:

Full Control

All Extended Rights

Send As

Receive As

• Start the PowerShell and type the following to add the backup account so it has full control over all the databases:

Get-MailboxDatabase -server (server name) | Add-ADPermission -user "backup account" -ExtendedRights Receive-As

Run the above PowerShell every time a new database is added.

 Navigate to the Exchange Management Console, right-click the <mailbox> and click Manage Full Access Permissions to view the mailbox listed under Full Access Permissions.

FOR EXCHANGE SERVER 2007

з.

- Service account should be a member of Exchange Organization Administrators group.
- Ensure that the mail-enabled user is a member of the Local Administrator Group and have rights to all mailboxes on the server.

METHOD 1: INTERACTIVE INSTALL

- 1. Log on to the computer using an account with the following privileges:
 - Administrator of the local computer

Select the required language.

Click Next.

- Administrator of the Exchange Server
- 2. Run **Setup.exe** from the Software Installation Package.

4. Select the option to Install Calypso on this 64-bit computer.

Your screen may look different from the example shown.

 Select I accept the terms in the license agreement. Click Next.

- To install the Exchange iDataAgents expand Client Modules | Backup & Recovery | Exchange, and select one or more of the following:
 - Exchange Database iDataAgent
 - Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent
 - Exchange Public Folder iDataAgent

To install the **Exchange Archiver Agents**, expand **Client Modules | Archive Management**, and select one or more of the following:

- Exchange Compliance Archiver
- Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent
- Exchange Public Folder Archiver Agent

Administration Guide - Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent

Click Next.

For Non-Exchange Server, Exchange Database *i*DataAgent will not be applicable.

7. If this computer and the CommServe is separated by a firewall, select the **Configure** firewall services option and then click **Next**.

For firewall options and configuration instructions, see Firewall Configuration and continue with the installation.

If firewall configuration is not required, click **Next**.

8.	Enter the fully qualified domain name of the $\ensuremath{\textbf{CommServe Host Name}}.$
	Click Next.

Do not use space and the following characters when specifying a new name for the CommServe Host Name:

\|`~!@#\$%^&*()+=<>/?,[]{}:;'"

9. Click Next.

nstaller					
Select Platforms					
Select the platforms yo	u want to configu	re.			
	erve Modules ell Console gent Modules es & Recovery Indexing and Sea sed Search & Bro Management pusDataReplicato	wse	() III ()	platform nai description reasons whi disabled. Disk Spac (Reg/Reco Installatio 0 I Temporar 0 I	of the platform and y it may be ormmended) in Folder: MB/ 0 MB my on C: drive: MB/ 0 MB
Installer	tore Only	< Back		Special He	gistry Keys In Use
nstaller Firewall Configura Configure firewall servic					
If there is a firewall bet	ween this machin	e and the CommS	erve, confi	gure firewall	services below.
Configure firewall s	ervices				
Please specify how y connection from here CommServe are bloc machine, or whether This machine can CommServe can o	to a CommServe ked, and setup sl there is a Proxy in open connection pen connection t	i's tunnel port, whe hould instead expe hetween. to CommServe on oward this machin	ther all co ct CommS tunnel po	nnections to erve to conr	ssible to open ward lect back to this
C CommServe is rea					
Installer			Ne	ext >	Cancel
Installer CommServe Name Specify the CommServi name	e computer name	and host			X
CommServe Name Specify the CommServe name CommServe (CommServe 1	Client Name Host Name		srople:		X
CommServe Name Specify the CommServe name CommServe (CommServe 1 (Enter a valid mycomputer.r	Client Name Host Name , fully-qualified, IF nycompany.com)	host name; for ex	ample:		×
CommServe Name Specify the CommServe name CommServe (CommServe 1 (Enter a valid mycomputer.r	Client Name Host Name , fully-qualified, IF	host name; for ex	ample:		X
CommServe Name Specify the CommServe name CommServe (CommServe 1 (Enter a valid mycomputer.r	Client Name Host Name , fully-qualified, IF nycompany.com)	host name; for ex		9X(>	Cancel
CommServe Name Specify the CommServe name CommServe (CommServe 1 (Enter a valid mycomputer.	Client Name Host Name , fully-qualified, IF nycompany.com)	' host name; for ex		ext >	
CommServe Name Specify the CommServe name CommServe (CommServe 1 (Enter a valid mycomputer.	Dient Name fost Name fully-qualified, IF nycompany.com mycompany.com	host name; for ex		×t>	
CommServe Name Specify the CommServe CommServe C CommServe C CommServe I Enter a vaid mycomputer. Installer Installer Communication Inf	Dient Name fost Name fully-qualified, IF nycompany.com mycompany.com	host name; for ex		< 20	
CommServe Name Specify the CommServe CommServe C CommServe C CommServe I Enter a vaid mycomputer. Installer Installer Communication Inf	Client Name	host name; for ex	Ne		
CommServe Name Specify the CommServe CommServe C CommServe C CommServe I Enter a vaid mycomputer. Installer Installer Communication Inf	Client Name	host name; for ex	N	▼ will use to	

10. Select Add programs to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List, to add CommCell programs and services to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List.

Click Next.

This option enables CommCell operations across Windows firewall by adding CommCell programs and services to Windows firewall exclusion list.

It is recommended to select this option even if Windows firewall is disabled. This will allow the CommCell programs and services to function if the Windows firewall is enabled at a later time.

11.

12.

13.

	Instatter
	Windows Firewall Exclusion List Allow programs to communicate through Windows Firewall
	Windows Firewall is ON
	Add programs to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List
	If you plan on using Windows Firewall, it is recommended to add the software programs to the exclusion list.
	Installer Cancel
Verify the default location for software installation.	Installer
Click Browse to change the default location.	Destination Folder Select the destination folder to install the program files.
Click Next.	
 Do not install the software to a mapped network drive. 	Click Next to accept the default location, or click Browse to choose an alternate location.
 Do not use the following characters when specifying the destination path: 	Destination Folder
/:*?"<> #	
It is recommended that you use alphanumeric characters only.	Drive List C: 928 MB Space Required / Recommended 1334 MB / 1670 MB
	Installer Kext Cancel
Select a Client Group from the list.	Installer
Click Next.	Client Group Selection
	Select a client group for the client.
This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the CommCell Console.	The Client Group is a logical grouping of client machines which have the same associations at various levels like Schedule Policy, Activity Control, Security and Repots.
	Client group:
	None Selected
	cient_group
	Installer Kext> Cancel
Click Next.	Installer
	Schedule Install of Automatic Updates Choose when you want to schedule an install of the downloaded updates.
	I⊄ Schedule Install of Automatic Updates
	C Once
	♥ Weekly ♥ Weekly ♥ Monday ♥ Tuesday
	C Wednesday C Thursday
	C Friday C Saturday
	⊂ Sunday
	Installer
	< Back Next > Cancel

14. Select a Storage Policy. Click Next.

X

Installer				
Storage Policy Selection				
Select a storage policy for the default sub backed up.	client to be			
Configure for Laptop or Desktop Ba				
Configure for Laptop or Desktop Ba	скир			
Select a storage policy from the pu	II-down list.			
Unassigned				
Installer				
Installer	< Back	 Next>	-	Cancel
Installer	< Back	Next>		Cancel
Installer	< Back	Next >		Cancel
Installer	< Back	Next >]_	Cancel
Installar Storage Policy Selection		Next >		Cancel
Installer		Next >] _	Cancel
Installar Storage Policy Selection	olient to be	Next >] _	Cancel
Installer: Storage Policy Selection Select a storage policy for the default sub- backet of a	olient to be	Next >] _	Cancel
Installer: Storage Policy Selection Select a storage policy for the default sub- backet of a	olient to be	Next >		Cancel
Installer: Storage Policy Selection Select a storage policy for the default sub- backet of a	olient to be	Next>		Cancel
Instation Storage Pallcy Selection Select a screage policy for the default sub- backet arise	olient to be	Next>		Cancel
Instation Storage Pallcy Selection Select a screage policy for the default sub- backet arise	olient to be	Next>		Cancel

If you do not have Storage Policy created, this message will be displayed. Click ${\bf OK}.$

You can create the Storage Policy later in step 24.

- If you are installing the Exchange Database iDataAgent on the Exchange Server, click Configure Exchange Database Specific Information.
- If you are installing the Exchange Agents on the Non-Exchange Server, skip to Configure Exchange Agents Specific Information.

CONFIGURE EXCHANGE DATABASE SPECIFIC INFORMATION

- **15.** Select the backup type for Exchange Database backups. Choose either of the following options, then click **Next**.
 - Differential Specifies that each non-full Exchange Database backup secures all data that has changed since the last full backup. Transaction lobs are not purged.
 - **Incremental** Specifies that each non-full Exchange Database backup secures only that data that has changed since the last backup of any type. Committed transaction logs are purged.

Installer			
Exchange Backup Please select a defau			
C Differential	Backs up change Store and Directo Full backup, Does transaction logs.	s in the Information ry Service since the last s not purge the	
C Incrementa	Store and Directo	s in the Information ry Service since the last remental backup. The tion logs are then	
Installer	< Ba	ck Next>	Cancel
Enter Administrato Enter Administrator aci	r account information ount information		X
4	ccount Name:		
1			
l f	ccount Password:		
ļ	ccount Password:		
[omain:		
[
[omain:		
[omain:		
[omain:	Ness>	Qarcel

16. Enter the user credentials to access the Exchange Server to perform the backup operation.

- The User Account must have Exchange Administrator privileges.
- The installation detects the domain name. If necessary, you can modify the domain name by specifying Windows domain that the Exchange Server resides in.

17. Click Next.

	ough information to s s, click Next to begin		am files. If you are sat	sfied with the
				^
CommServe H Interface Nam Client =audi	ath = C:\Program File Host = mycomputer.m ne = audi.mycompan Path = C:\Program File	ycompany.com y.com ss\JobResults		=
Global Eiltore				~
Global Filters	= Use Cell level polic			>
	= Use Lell level polic			<u>></u>
<	= Use Lell level polic	< Back	Next >	Cancel
<	= Use Lell level polic	< Back	Next >	Cancel

- 18. The install program displays a reminder to verify that Circular Logging is disabled before performing any database backup operations. To verify that Circular Logging is disabled:
 - From Exchange System Manager, navigate to and expand the server that the Database *i*DataAgent is being installed on.
 - Verify that the Circular Logging check box has not been selected for each Storage Group. If Circular Logging has been enabled for a Storage Group, disable it at this time.

Click OK.

- If you are installing the Exchange Agents, then click Configure Exchange Agents Specific Information.
- If you are installing the Exchange Database iDataAgent, skip to Verify Summary of Install Options.

CONFIGURE EXCHANGE AGENTS SPECIFIC INFORMATION

19. Select **Exchange Server Name** and **Exchange Server Version** from drop-down list.

Click Next.

This screen will appear when you are installing $\ensuremath{\mathsf{Exchange}}$ Agents on Non-Exchange Server.

20. Click Next.

Installer		×
Exchange Server Name		
Please provide Exchange serve	er name	
Exc	e Server change Server Name: change_Server change Server Version	-
	change 2007	•
Installer		
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext	> <u>C</u> ancel
Installer		
Summary Summary of install selections		
Setup has enough informat install settings, click Next to	tion to start copying the program files. If yo o begin copying files.	ou are satisfied with the
Destination Path = C:\Prog CommServe Host = mycom Interface Name = audi.myc Client = audi Job Results Path = C:\Prog Global Filters = Use Cell lev	puter.mycompany.com company.com gram Files∖JobResults	
CommServe Host = mycom Interface Name = audi.myc Client =audi Job Results Path = C:\Prog	puter.mycompany.com company.com gram Files∖JobResults	×
CommServe Host = mycom Interface Name = audi.myc Client = audi Job Results Path = C:\Prog Global Filters = Use Cell lev	puter.mycompany.com company.com gram Files∖JobResults	× ×

- **21.** Enter the following Exchange Administrator information then click **Next**.
 - Account Name Domain user account created with the exchange server administrator permissions. Do not include the domain name here.
 - Account Password The password assigned to the domain user.
 - Mailbox Name for this Account Mailbox associated with the user above.
 - **Profile Name** Specify profile name to be created during agent install. This profile is associated with the domain user's mailbox.

• Exchange Server Name - Name of the Exchange Server that the agent will communicate with for data protection and recovery operations.

Enter the Mailbox Role Server name (NetBIOS). After installation configure the roles as described in Configure Mailboxes in Database Availability Group (DAG) Servers.

• **Domain** - The installation detects and enters a domain name. If necessary, modify the domain name by specifying Windows domain that the Exchange Server resides in.

Installer	X
Exchange Administrator Account Information Mailbox and Ptofile information	
Please enter the Exchange account information re the information supplied.	squired below. A new profile will be created with
Account Name:	Profile Name:
Account Password:	Exchange Server Name:
Mailbox Name for this Account:	Domain:
Installer < E	lack Next > Cancel

VERIFY SUMMARY OF INSTALL OPTIONS

22. Click Next.

23. Click Finish.

	\frown
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder	2
Please note: You still need to create a Job Schedule for each iDataAgent that has been installed on this client computer. Job Schedules are required to allow the iDataAgents to perform automated backup and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be accomplished through the CommCell Console administration interface.	
Installer	
Installer	×
Completion Report	
Setup complete	<i>.</i>
	4

S CHOICE

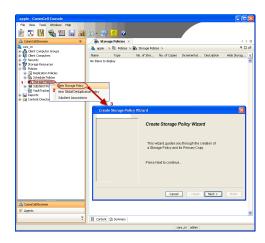
If you already have a storage policy selected in step 14, Click Next > button available at the bottom of the page to proceed to the **Configuration** section.

If you do not have Storage Policy created, continue with the following step.

- 24. Create a Storage Policy:
 - 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to **Policies**.
 - 2. Right-click the Storage Policies and then click New Storage Policy.
 - 3. Follow the prompts displayed in the Storage Policy Wizard. The required options are mentioned below:
 - Select the Storage Policy type as Data Protection and Archiving and click Next.
 - Enter the name in the Storage Policy Name box and click Next.
 - From the **Library** list, click the name of a disk library to which the primary copy should be associated and then click **Next**.

Ensure that you select a library attached to a MediaAgent operating in the current release.

- From the MediaAgent list, click the name of a MediaAgent that will be used to create the primary copy and then click Next.
- For the device streams and the retention criteria information, click Next to accept default values.



- $\circ~$ Select Yes to enable deduplication for the primary copy.
- From the **MediaAgent** list, click the name of the MediaAgent that will be used to store the Deduplication store.

Type the name of the folder in which the deduplication database must be located in the Deduplication Store Location or click the Browse button to select the folder and then click **Next**.

• Review the details and click **Finish** to create the Storage Policy.

25. Enable the following registry key to create job specific profiles:

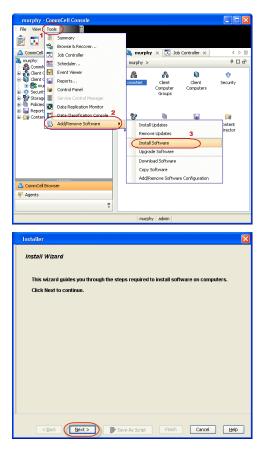
- From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers.
- Right-click the <Client> in which you want to add the registry key, and then click Properties.
- Click the Registry Key Settings tab.
- Click Add.
- Enter CreateProcessSpecificProfile in the Name field.
- Enter MSExchangeMBAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

Enter MSExchangeDMAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

- Enter REG_DWORD in the Type filed.
- Enter 1 to enable and 0 to disable the key in the Value field.
- Click OK.

METHOD 2: INSTALL SOFTWARE FROM COMMCELL CONSOLE

1. From the CommCell Browser, select **Tools**, point to **Add/Remove Software**, and then click **Install Software**.



2. Click Next.

Select Windows.
 Click Next.

4. Select Manually Select Computers. Click Next.

5. Enter the fully qualified domain name of the computer on which you have Exchange Server.

For example: win08ex07.idclab.loc

Click Next.

6. Click Next.

Select how to discover the computers for installing the software
Manualy select computers Software will be installed only on the selected list of computers.
Automatically discover computers
Computers will be discovered when the job runs.
< Back Hent > Save As Script Finish Cancel Help
Installer
Enter the host names of the computers
Please enter the host names of the computers, one per line
ver/08ex07/ddab.loc Import from File Import From Active Directory
Select from existing clients
<bok. next=""> IP Save Ar Sopt Pinch Cancel Hebp</bok.>
Installer
Select Software Cache
To use current Client or Client Group Software Cache settings, click Next. To override Software Cache settings check Override Software Cache and select the Software Cache to be used.
Override Software Cathe
Software Cache: murphy.domain.company.com
<bock moxt=""> Save As Script Finish Cancel Help</bock>

<Back Next> Save As Script Finish Cancel Help

Select the computer's operating system

Windows
 Unix and Linux

Installer

 Specify User Name and Password that must be used to access the computer. Click Next.

	Installer
	Enter Account Information
	The specified account should have administrative access to the computer. If you are installing
	multiple clients, the user should have access to all clients.
	Reuse Active Directory credentials
	User Name:
	Example:domain\username
	Password:
	Confirm Password:
	< Back Next > Save As Script Finish Cancel Help
0.	Installer X
&	Select Package(s) to Install
	C. Starter Obsidgent
	Sybase DataAgent MySQL DataAgent
	Documentum Agent Decumentum Agent Decumentum Agent Decumentum Agent
	Exchange Public Holder KAKaAgenK
	Change Web Folder DotAgent Control of the State
be	Lotus Notes Database DataAgent Lotus Notes Database DataAgent Sawarbant
De	Drankow Drankow Control Conserved Control Conserved Control Control Control Control Control Advante Control Control Control Control Control Control Control Control Control Control Contr
	Chine Context Indexing Chine Context Indexing For Exchange Archive Management
	Arthe Haugement Description Archive Agent Description Archive Agent Description Archive Archive Description Archive Archive
	Exchange Complement Archiver Exchange Verlahmer Adventer Agent Exchange Public Verlahmer Agent Exchange Public Verlahmer Agent
	Exchange Malbox Archiver Agent
	<back next=""> Prob Cancel Heb</back>
	Installer
	Enter Recommended Settings for the selected Software
Backup	Enter Recommended Settings for the selected Software Percommended Settings Client Groups Available: Selected
Backup from the	Enter Recommended Settings for the selected Software Percommended Settings Client Groups Asidor Asidor Asidor Asidor Asidor Asidor Asidor Asidor Asidor Asidor Asidor Asidor Asidor Asidor Asidor Asidor Asidor Asid
Backup from the Laptop User	Enter Recommended Settings for the selected Software
from the	Enter Recommended Settings for the selected Software
from the	Enter Recommended Settings for the selected Software
from the	Enter Recommended Settings for the selected Software
from the	Enter Recommended Settings for the selected Software
from the	Enter Recommended Settings for the selected Software
from the	Enter Recommended Settings for the selected Software
from the	Enter Recommended Sattings for the solected Sattware
from the	Enter Recommended Settings for the selected Software
from the	Enter Recommended Sattings for the solected Software Enter Recommended Sattings Cellent Groups Available: Available: Add Al >> Cellent Groups Add Al >> Cellent Groups Cellent Groups
from the	Enter K accommended Sattings for the selected Software Enter K accommended Sattings Called Sattings Enter the Install Options for the selected Software Enter the Install Options for the selected Software Enter the Install Options for the selected Software
from the	Enter Recommended Settings for the selected Software
from the	Enter Recommended Settings for the selected Software Clenk Groups Available: Selected: Available: Godd Al >> Clenk Groups Available: Godd Al >> Clenk Groups Available: Clenk Groups Available: Configure For Laptop Backup: Concert Parket Dischaps: Storage Fakry to use Concert Parket Market Dischaps: Storage Fakry to use Enter the Install Options for the selected Software Support Socie: Enclampetorve: Information (Dytomal)
from the	Enter Recommended Settings for the selected Software
from the	Enter Recommended Settings for the selected Software
from the	Enter Recommended Settings for the selected Software
from the	Enter Recommended Settings for the selected Software
from the	Enter Recommended Settings for the selected Software
from the	Enter Recommended Settings for the selected Software
from the	
from the	Enter Recommended Settings for the selected Software
from the	Enter Recommended Settings for the selected Software

- To install the Exchange iDataAgents expand Client Modules | Backup & Recovery | Exchange, and select one or more of the following:
 - Exchange Database iDataAgent
 - Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent
 - Exchange Public Folder iDataAgent

Click Next.

For Non-Exchange Server, Exchange Database *i*DataAgent will not be applicable.

- 9. Select Client Group from Available and click Add.
 - Select a **Storage Policy** from the drop-down list. Click **Next**. **NOTES**:
 - Select the Configure for Laptop or Desktop Backup option to install Backup Monitor utility. This utility allows you to view the backup job summary from the client computer without opening the CommCell Console. See Monitor - Laptop User for more information.
- 10. Type the Agent Specific Settings information. Click Next.

11. Click Next.

12. Select Immediate. Click Next.

13. Click Finish.

14. You can track the progress of the job from the **Job Controller** or **Event Viewer** window.

Enter Additional Install Options
I di Brower Incosses (Fragado) Server Incorro Set Server Incorro Set Conde Serves Gringando) Conde Serves Gringando Conde Serves Gringando Server Incorro Set Setud Tecul tog Locoto Setud T
Sing Oracle Services (if required) Services Se
Bit bit dets that are already pert of the Component Attenced Options Optional Status Details from the Indi Detail Status Detail Status Detail Status Detail Status Detail Status Detail Status Detail Status Detail Status Detail Status Detail Status D
Context Packages After Install C Jayour Calerbinet Install C Jayour Calerbinet Install C Jayour Calerbinet Context Context Calerbinet C C
Patal Rest Lig Loadon Deal Alexet Lig Loadon Charles Service Basil Dexctory Pata COL Pata Energy: Pata Coll Pata Energy: Pata Diracid Sectory Ling: Pata Coll Pata Energy: Pata Energy: Pata Coll Pata Energy: Pata
Orload Settings
Heh Heil CO First Heil Eingrachet Heil Install textory Heil Log Fiel Locition Constance Heid Name
COP Part BOD
Exegritient 640 3
Instal Directory Log Fiel Locdon Commiserve Host Name
Considerve Host Name
Cook (Bot) See As Soys Prod. Cook Bbb
< Book Boot Prob. Concol Bob
Installer 🔀
Please Select When To Run The Job
Job Initiation
(Immediate
Run this job now
O Schedule
Configure Schedule Pattern Configure
\frown
< <u>Back</u> (Next >) ► Save As Script Finish Cancel Help
Installer
Summary
Summary Please verify all the selected options and click Firish to run the job immediately or click Save As Script to save the job options as a script.
Summary Hease welfy all the selected uptons and doi. Frish to run the job minedately or diol. Sere As Script to save the job options are a script. Client: Install Option
Please werfy all the selected actors and cld. Firsh to run the job immediately or click Seve Ad Script to save the job options as a script. Client Install Option Select Type Of Installation: Windows
Please verify all the selected options and dok Finish to run the job immediately or dok. Save As Sorpt to save the job options as a sorpt. Clease Install Option
Please wify all the selected potone and doi. French to run the job immediately or dick Serie AG Sopie to serve the job optiones as a cospit. Clenter, Hannall Option Immediately or dick Serie AG Sopie to serve the job optiones are a cospit. Select Type Of Clineat Discovery: Monually refect computer: Select Type Of Clineat Discovery: Monually refect computer: Exclude discovery of computers with SRM agrees alse early installed: Yes Review Active Discovery: Monually refect computer:
Mease wify all the selected potors and dok Freich brunn the job mmediately or dick Serie AG Sort to serie the job options are a sorp t. Clear Lineard Option Select Type Of Installation: Windows Select Type Of Clear Discovery: Manually select computers Exclude discovery of Computers with SRM agents already installed: Yes Reuse Archer Directory credeminals: No Cleart: Authentication for Job
Please wify all the selected potone and doi. French to run the job immediately or dick Serie AG Sopie to serve the job optiones as a sopie. Clease: Install Option Immediately or dick Serie AG Sopie to serve the job optiones are a sopie. Select Type Of Climati Discovery: Monually refect computer: Select Type Of Climati Discovery: Monually refect computer: Exclude: discovery of computers with SRM agrees alse early installed: Yes Review Active Discovery: Monually refect computer:
Please werfy all the selected options and dok Frierh he run the toph inmediately or did. Seare A6 Sopit to save the job options as a sorgit. Termin Install Option Select Type of Cleman Discovery: Manually select computers Select Type of Cleman Discovery: Manually select computers Exclude discovery of computers with RNA agents a laterady installed: Yes Remue Active Directory credentials: No Clemat Automatication for Job Clemat Discovery: Clear Discovery: Manually select Computers Exclude discovery: Automatication for Job Clemat Automatication for Job Clemat Automatication for Job
Please wirfy all the selected options and del Fireh he run the job inmediately or did. Same Ads Sopit to save the job options as a sorgit. Direct in Install Option Image: Install option Image: Imag
Please wify al the selected pattern and deli Frieh thrun the job immediately or did. Seen & Sopit to serv the job options as a sopit. Cherk Initial Option Image: Sopie of Cherk Initial Unitial Windows Select Type Of Initial Discovery: Manually addet computers Exclude discovery of Computers with SRM agents already installed: Yes Resure Arther Directory predeminish: No Image: Directory predeminish: No Cleark Authentication for Job Image: Directory predeminish and predeminish of the predeminish o
Please wify al the selected sphere and dok Freeh to run the job immediately or dick Save A6 Sopie to gave the job options as a sopie. Cirrent Install Option Immediately or dick Save A6 Sopie to gave the job options as a sopie. Select Type Of Cliental Discovery: Manually added computers Select Type Of Cliental Discovery: Manually added computers Exclude discovery of computers with SRM agrees al aneady installed: Yes Recease Active Discovery: Manually added computers Exclude discovery of Computers with SRM agrees al aneady installed: Yes Recease Active Discovery: Manually added computers User Name: ID-CL/B*administrator Peasower: """ Passional: """ Recease Active Discovery: No Recease Active Discovery: No Kill Browser Processes (if required); No Kill Browser Processes (if required); No No
Pleas werfy all the selected options and del. Frierh in run the job inmediately or did. Serie A6 Sopit to serie the job options as a sorgit. Termin Install Option Select Type of Cinenal Discretion: Windows Select Type of Cinenal Discretion: Select Type of Select Type of Cinenal Discretion: Select
Place wirfy all the selected options and del. Frierh in run the sph inmediately or did. Serie Ads Sopiet to serie the pit options as a sorgit. Termin Initial Option Select Type of Climan Discovery: Manually related computers: Exclude discovery of computers with RNA agents a laready installed: Yes Reuse Active Directory remediations: No Climat Automatication for Job Uter Nume: IC-LaBordmanistrator Reusewatt: """ Initial Flags Initial
Please wify al the selected spoore and doi: French to run the poblemedately or did. Same Ad Sore Ho Sore Ho and Option Same and Sore Ho and Honoland Honolan
Place wirfy althe selected getore and del Fieth he run the job investidatly or did. Same A6 Sopit to save the job options as a sorgit. Timeri. Install. Option Image: Solid Society of Comparison of Com
Please wify althe selected schore and del Field hermuthe job inmediately or del Sare & Sopit to gene the job options an acopit. Circuit Initial Option Sole (Type Of Cham Discussive: Wandwy deel computers: Exclude discovery of compaters with SRM agents already installed: Yes Exclude discovery of compaters with SRM agents already installed: Yes Exclude discovery of compaters with SRM agents already installed: Yes Exclude discovery of Compaters with SRM agents already installed: Yes Exclude discovery to Exclude are installed and the selection of the Initial Option User Name : DCLAB administrator Pleasonarit : *** Exclude (if required): No Kull Excover Processes (if required): No Kull Excover Area (and the initial: No Delete Package After Initial: No Delete Schore Only: No Circuit Software Cade: No Delete Schore
Please wify althe nelected sphere and doi: Freeh to run the job inmediately or did. Same & Sopit to gene the job options as a copit. Circuit. Install Option Select Type Of Cliental Discovery: Manually added computer: Exclude discovery of computers with SRM agrees also and justalled: Yes Renner Active Discovery: Manually added computer: Exclude discovery of Computers with SRM agrees also and justalled: Yes Renner Active Discovery: Manually added computer: Exclude discovery of Computers with SRM agrees also and justalled: Yes Renner Active Discovery: Manually added computer: Exclude discovery of Computers with SRM agrees also and justalled: Yes Renner Active Discovery: Manually added to and the discovery of Computers with SRM agrees also and justalled: Yes Renner Active Discovery: Manually added to and the discovery of Computers with SRM agrees also added to a discovery of Computers with SRM agrees and the advectory and the Common Component: No Delete Rencage After Transit: No Extra Composition Covervis Staffers Computer: No Extra Composition Covervis Staffers Code: No
Please wify althe selected schore and del Field hermuthe job inmediately or del Sare & Sopit to gene the job options an acopit. Circuit Initial Option Sole (Type Of Cham Discussive: Wandwy deel computers: Exclude discovery of compaters with SRM agents already installed: Yes Exclude discovery of compaters with SRM agents already installed: Yes Exclude discovery of compaters with SRM agents already installed: Yes Exclude discovery of Compaters with SRM agents already installed: Yes Exclude discovery to Exclude are installed and the selection of the Initial Option User Name : DCLAB administrator Pleasonarit : *** Exclude (if required): No Kull Excover Processes (if required): No Kull Excover Area (and the initial No Delete Package After Initial No Delete Schore Code: No Delete Schore Code: No Delete Schore Code: No Delete Schore Code: No Delete Compotence Delete Compotence Delete Discover Code: No Delete Compotence Delete Compotence Delete Compotence Delete Schore Code: No Delete S
Place wify althe existed actors and del Fireh to run the pib homedately or del Sare AS Sort to gene the pib options an a copt. First Install Option Select Type Of Client Discovery: Manually added computer: Exclude discovery of computers with SRM agrees alteredy installed: Yes Exclude discovery of Client Discovery: Manually added to computer: Exclude discovery of Client Discovery: Manually added to computer: Exclude discovery of Client Discovery: Manually added to computer: Exclude discovery of Client Discovery: Manually added to computer: Exclude discovery of Client Discovery: Manually added to computer: Exclude discovery of Client Discovery: Manually added to computer: Exclude discovery of Client Discovery: Manually added to computer: Exclude discovery of Client Discovery: Manually added to computer: Exclude discovery of Client Discovery: Manually added to computer: Exclude discovery of Client Discovery: Manually added to computer: Exclude discovery of Client Discovery: Manually added to computer: Exclude discovery of Client Discovery: Exclude discovery
Reas worf, althe selected gators and del Freich in run the job invested by or dol. Save A6 Sopit to save the bit gators as a sopit. Select Type Of Cleana Discovery: Manaday select computer: Scheder Type Of Cleana Discovery: Manaday select computer: Exclude discovery: Manaday select computer: Bard Type Of Cleana Discovery: Manaday select computer: Noted Of requiredy: Mo Stage Cleana Select computer: Yes Reduct of requiredy: Mo Stage Cleana Select Complex: No Deleter Beckage Adver Install: Mo Cleak Import Selecter Complex: No Cleak Import Selecter Complex: Mo Cleak Import Selecter Complex: Mo
Rease wirfy al the selected spaces and del Freeh to run the sph meddedly or del Sare AS Sopit to spee the big options as a copit. File: The selected space of Charal Marcu Weakways Select Type of Charal Marcu Weakways Select Type of Charal Marcu Weakways Select Type of Charal Marcu Weakways Select Type of Charal Marcu Weakways Select Type of Charal Marcu Weakways Select Type of Charal Marcu Weakways Marcu
Reas worf, althe selected gators and del Freich in run the job invested by or dol. Save A6 Sopit to save the bit gators as a sopit. Select Type Of Cleana Discovery: Manaday select computer: Scheder Type Of Cleana Discovery: Manaday select computer: Exclude discovery: Manaday select computer: Bard Type Of Cleana Discovery: Manaday select computer: Noted Of requiredy: Mo Stage Cleana Select computer: Yes Reduct of requiredy: Mo Stage Cleana Select Complex: No Deleter Beckage Adver Install: Mo Cleak Import Selecter Complex: No Cleak Import Selecter Complex: Mo Cleak Import Selecter Complex: Mo
Reas worf, althe selected gators and del Fireth in run the pib invested by or dol. Serve A6 Sopie to serve the big options as a sozie. First, Initial Option Select Type Of Clana Discovery: Manually select computers: Scheel Type Of Clana Discovery: Manually select computers: Exchange discovery: Manually select computers: Exchange discovery: Manually select computers: Exchange discovery: Manually select computers: Exchange discovery: Manually select computers: Exchange discovery: Manually select computers: Exchange discovery: Manually select computers: Exchange discovery: Manually select computers: Barter Type Of Clana Discovery: Manually select computers: Exchange discovery: Manually select computers: Barter Type Of Clana Discovery: Manually select computers: No Barter Type Of Clana Discovery: Manually select computers: No Barter Type Of Discovery: Manually select computers: No Barter Type Of Discovery: Manually select computers: No Deleter Beckage After Tratall, Roose After
Please wify al the selected spaces and doi: French to run the pob immediately or did: Same Ad: Sore to great the bid options as a copit. Select Type Of Chemal Discovery: Meanaby redet computers: Eachine discovery or quentizes: with SAM agents already installed: Yes Excluse Adverb Directory credentizes: 10: Care Antonnicitation for Joh User Name: ID:CLAB administrator Pleasenet: "Yes Redets (If required): No Kull Boroscer Processes (If required): No Barres Adverb Taxetory of the Common Cell component: No Delete Pleases Advert Install: No Care Component: No Delete Please Advert Install: No Care Component: No Delete Pleases Advert Install: No Care Component: No
Please wify al the selected spaces and doi: French to run the pob immediately or did: Same Ad: Sore to great the bid options as a copit. Select Type Of Chemal Discovery: Meanaby redet computers: Eachine discovery or quentizes: with SAM agents already installed: Yes Excluse Adverb Directory credentizes: 10: Care Antonnicitation for Joh User Name: ID:CLAB administrator Pleasenet: "Yes Redets (If required): No Kull Boroscer Processes (If required): No Barres Adverb Taxetory of the Common Cell component: No Delete Pleases Advert Install: No Care Component: No Delete Please Advert Install: No Care Component: No Delete Pleases Advert Install: No Care Component: No
Rease werfly al the melectral pattern and dik Frech to run the job mendately or did. Same Ak Sort to gene the job patterns as a cost. Select Type of Cleans Uncenture: Weakway Select Type of Cleans Directory credentials: 1/8: Exclude discovery of computers with SRM application and applications of a Job Clean Name: IDCLAB leadministrator Plannes: IDCLAB leadministrator Readowt (if required): 1/8 Kill Browser: Processes (if required): 1/8 Kill Browser: Non-Cleans 1/8 Kill Browser: Directory of the Common Cleans 1/8 Install Agents Far Restore Only: 1/8 Install Agents Far Restore Only: 1/8 Install Agents Far Restore Code: 1/8 Cleaks Immediate the analysis of the Common Cleans and the analysis of the Common Cleans 1/8 Install Agents Far Restore Code: 1/8 Cleaks Immediate the analysis of the Common Cleans and the analysis of the Common Cleans 1/8 Defense Takenes Cude: 1/8 Cleaks Immediate the analysis of the Common Cleans and the analysis of the Common Cleans 1/8 Defense Takenes Cude: 1/8 Cleaks Immediate the analysis of the Common Cleans and the analysis of the Common Cleans 1/8 Defense Takenes Cude: 1/8 Cleaks Immediate the analysis of the Common Cleans and 1/8 Defense Takenes Cude: 1/8 Cleaks Immediate the analysis of the Common Cleans and 1/8 Defense Takenes Cude: 1/8 Cleaks Immediate the analysis of the Common Cleans and 1/8 Defense Takenes Cude: 1/8 Cleaks Immediate the analysis of the Common Cleans and 1/8 Defense Takenes Cude: 1/8 Cleaks Immediate the analysis of the Common Cleans and 1/8 Defense Immediate the analysis of the Common Cleans and 1/8 Defense Immediate the analysis of the Common Cleans and 1/8 Defense Immediate the analysis of the Common Cleans and 1/8 Defense Immediate the analysis of the Common Cleans and 1/8 Defense Immediate the analysis of the Cleans and 1/8 Defense Immediate the analysis of the Cleans and 1/8 Defense Immediate the analysis of the Cleans and 1/8 Defense Immediate the analysis of the Cleans and 1/8 Defense Immediate the analysis of the Cleans
Rease werfly al the melectral pattern and dik Frech to run the job mendately or did. Same Ak Sort to gene the job patterns as a cost. Select Type of Cleans Uncenture: Weakway Select Type of Cleans Directory credentials: 1/8: Exclude discovery of computers with SRM application and applications of a Job Clean Name: IDCLAB leadministrator Plannes: IDCLAB leadministrator Readowt (if required): 1/8 Kill Browser: Processes (if required): 1/8 Kill Browser: Non-Cleans 1/8 Kill Browser: Directory of the Common Cleans 1/8 Install Agents Far Restore Only: 1/8 Install Agents Far Restore Only: 1/8 Install Agents Far Restore Code: 1/8 Cleaks Immediate the analysis of the Common Cleans and the analysis of the Common Cleans 1/8 Install Agents Far Restore Code: 1/8 Cleaks Immediate the analysis of the Common Cleans and the analysis of the Common Cleans 1/8 Defense Takenes Cude: 1/8 Cleaks Immediate the analysis of the Common Cleans and the analysis of the Common Cleans 1/8 Defense Takenes Cude: 1/8 Cleaks Immediate the analysis of the Common Cleans and the analysis of the Common Cleans 1/8 Defense Takenes Cude: 1/8 Cleaks Immediate the analysis of the Common Cleans and 1/8 Defense Takenes Cude: 1/8 Cleaks Immediate the analysis of the Common Cleans and 1/8 Defense Takenes Cude: 1/8 Cleaks Immediate the analysis of the Common Cleans and 1/8 Defense Takenes Cude: 1/8 Cleaks Immediate the analysis of the Common Cleans and 1/8 Defense Takenes Cude: 1/8 Cleaks Immediate the analysis of the Common Cleans and 1/8 Defense Immediate the analysis of the Common Cleans and 1/8 Defense Immediate the analysis of the Common Cleans and 1/8 Defense Immediate the analysis of the Common Cleans and 1/8 Defense Immediate the analysis of the Common Cleans and 1/8 Defense Immediate the analysis of the Cleans and 1/8 Defense Immediate the analysis of the Cleans and 1/8 Defense Immediate the analysis of the Cleans and 1/8 Defense Immediate the analysis of the Cleans and 1/8 Defense Immediate the analysis of the Cleans
Place wify al the melectral pacer and dik Freh In run the job mendately or did. Same Ad Sort It. Speet He job grotes as a copt. First In Intel Option Select Type Of Chem Directory redentials: 1/k Exclude discovery of computers with SRM agents already installed: Yes Renew Active Directory credentials: 1/k Exclude discovery of computers with SRM agents already installed: Yes Renew Active Directory credentials: 1/k Exclude discovery of computers with SRM agents already installed: Yes Renew Active Directory credentials: 1/k Exclude discovery of computers with SRM agents already installed: Yes Renew Active Directory credentials: 1/k Exclude discovery of computers with SRM agents already installed: Yes Renew Active Directory credentials: 1/k Exclude discovery of computers with SRM agents already installed: Yes Renew Active Directory credentials: 1/k Exclude discovery of computers with SRM agents already installed: Yes Renew Active Directory credentials: 1/k Exclude discovery of computers with SRM agents already installed: Yes Renew Active Install: 1/k Exclude discovery of the Commodell component: 1/k Exclude discovery Commodelle: 1/k Exclude discovery of the Commodell component: 1/k Exclude discovery of the Commodell component: 1/k Exclude discovery Commodelle: 1/k Exclude discovery of the Commodelle: 1/k Exclude discovery of the Commodelle: 1/k Exclude discovery Commodelle: 1/k Exclude discovery of the C

15. Once the job is complete, right-click the **CommServe** computer, click **View** and then click **Admin Job History**.

16. Select Install/Upgrade/Remove Software. Click OK.

- You can view the following details about the job by right-clicking the job: 17.
 - Items that succeeded during the job
 - Items that failed during the job
 - · Details of the job
 - Events of the job
 - Log files of the job
 - Enable the following registry key to create job specific profiles:
 - From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers.
 - Right-click the <Client> in which you want to add the registry key, and then click Properties.
 - Click the Registry Key Settings tab.
 - Click Add.

18.

- Enter CreateProcessSpecificProfile in the Name field.
- Enter MSExchangeMBAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

Enter MSExchangeDMAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

- Enter REG_DWORD in the Type filed.
- Enter 1 to enable and 0 to disable the key in the Value field.
- Click OK.

	om - CommCell Console			
File View Tools Windows				
	I 🔜 😨			
	A DESCRIPTION OF THE OWNER OF THE			
CommCell Browser P	🚴 apple 🗴			4 Þ 🗉 9 🗆 9
All Tasks	💐 apple >			
View 2 >	Job History	0 0	88	D 🔒
Droperties	Admin Job History	Client Security Computers	Storage Resources	Policies 🗸
E OA File System	Users Logged In			4 0 00
Wirtual Server mustang	Schedules			4 C 8
E DA File System	Fl Job ID Operation	Client Co Agent	Type Subclient	Job Type= 1 Phas S
Of Virtual Server Security	21 Data Aging			N/A 🔶
+ R Storage Resources	<			>
Policies Reports	II Pause Playing Runn			
Content Director	F Event Viewer 🗙 👫 Ad	min Job History 🗙		4 ▷ Ⅲ
	Event Viewer		-	400
	Severity Event ID Job II	Date		Computer Ev ⊗ apple 19:
	232	21 08/31/2010 12:00:08	JobManager	apple 19:
🛆 CommCell Browser	231 228	08/31/2010 11:52:42		apple 35:
🗐 Agents		20 08/31/2010 11:46:15 20 08/21/2010 11:46:44		apple 35: apple 68: work co.
÷	Il Pause Playing Informa	tion, Minor, Mator, Critical	Maximum events sho	~
8 object(s)	Hundred Hundred	apple adr		
0 00/ecc(5)		ahhe au		
Admin Job History F	ilter			
Job Type				
() All	🔵 Data Aging	0	Export Media	
Auxiliary Copy	 Inventory 	-	Disaster Recover	Rachup
				y backap
O Data Verification	Offline Content		Erase Media	
 Erase Backup/Archived 	Data O Drive Validation	C	Drive Cleaning	
🔘 Stamp Media	 Install/Remove I 	Jpdates 🔘	Download/Copy 9	ioftware
Install/Upgrade/Remove	Software Disk Library Mair	tenance 🔿	SRM Reports/Acti	ions
O Information Managemen	t O CommCell Expor		CommCell Import	
Media Refreshing	1 O Recover Store	· · · · ·		
U media kerresining	O Recover Score			
Specify Time Range				
Time Zone: (GM	-05:00) Eastern Time (US & Can			×
Time Zone: (GM Start Time	-05:00) Eastern Time (US & Can	End Time		
Start Time		End Time	10	
Start Time Mon 08/30/201		End Time Tue 08/31/20		
Start Time		End Time Tue 08/31/20	10 •	•
Start Time Mon 08/30/201		End Time Tue 08/31/20		
Start Time Mon 08/30/201		End Time Tue 08/31/20		
Start Time Mon 08/30/201	0 77 PM	End Time Tue 08/31/20	07 PM	
Start Time Mon 08/30/201	0 77 PM	End Time Tue 08/31/20		
Start Time Mon 08/30/201	0 77 PM	End Time Tue 08/31/20	07 PM	
Start Time Mon 08/30/201 112 - 11 Job Status O Al Number of Jobs	0 77 PM	End Time Tue 08/31/20	07 PM	× •
Start Time Mon 08/30/201 12 : 10 Job Status Image: All	0 77 PM	End Time Tue 08/31/20	07 PM	
Start Time Mon 08/30/201 112 - 11 Job Status O Al Number of Jobs	Completed	End Time Tue 08/31/20	07 PM	
Start Time Men 08/30/201 122 -0 3db Status O Al Number of Jobs O Vew Al Jobs O Desired Number of	Completed	End Time Tue 08/31/20	07 PM	
Start Time Men 00/30/201 12 - 0 3db Status ③ All Number of Jobs ④ New All Jobs	Completed	End Time Tue 08/31/20 182 : Folied	07 PM	
Start Time Men 08/30/201 122 -0 3db Status O Al Number of Jobs O Vew Al Jobs O Desired Number of	Completed	End Time Tue 08/31/20 182 : Pailed	07 PM	
Start Time Men 08/30/201 12 - 0 30b Status O Al Number of Jobs O Wew Al Jobs O Desired Number of	Completed	End Time Tue 08/31/20 182 : Folied	07 PM	
Start Time Men 08/20/201 112 - 3 306 Status O Al Number of Jobs O Verw Al Jobs O Desired Number of Include Aged Data	Completed	End Time Tue 08/31/20 182 : Pailed	07 PM	
Start Time Men 08/30/201 12 - 0 30b Status O Al Number of Jobs O Wew Al Jobs O Desired Number of	Completed	End Time Tue 08/31/20 182 : Pailed	07 PM	4 10 00
Start Time Men 08/20/201 112 - 3 306 Status O Al Number of Jobs O Verw Al Jobs O Desired Number of Include Aged Data	Completed	End Time Tue 08/31/20 182 : Pailed	Carrel	4 ⊳ m ₽ ⊡ ∂ µal Legal ¥
Start Time Men 08/20/201 12 3 306 Status © All Number of Jobs © Vew Al Jobs © Desred Number of Include Aged Data	Completed	End Time Tue 09/31/20 Faled	O7 PM	 ∢⊳≡ +⊡∂
Start Time Men 08/20/201 12 3 306 Status © All Number of Jobs © Vew Al Jobs © Desred Number of Include Aged Data	Completed	End Time Tue 09/31/20 Faled	Carrel	4 ⊳ m ₽ ⊡ ∂ µal Legal ¥
Start Time Men 08/20/201 12 3 306 Status © All Number of Jobs © Vew Al Jobs © Desred Number of Include Aged Data	Completed	End Time Tue 09/31/20 Faled	Carrel	4 ⊳ m ₽ ⊡ ∂ µal Legal ¥
Start Time Men 08/20/201 12 3 306 Status © All Number of Jobs © Vew Al Jobs © Desred Number of Include Aged Data	Completed	End Time Tue 09/31/20 Faled	Carrel	4 ⊳ m ₽ ⊡ ∂ µal Legal ¥
Start Time Men 08/20/201 12 3 306 Status © All Number of Jobs © Vew Al Jobs © Desred Number of Include Aged Data	Completed	End Time Tue 09/31/20 Faled	Carrel	4 ⊳ m ₽ ⊡ ∂ µal Legal ¥

< Previous) Next >

Install the 64-bit Exchange Agents for Exchange Server 2007 -Clustered Environment

< Previous Next >

Follow the steps given below to install the 64-bit Exchange Agents on Exchange Server 2007 or on Non-Exchange Server in a clustered environment.

WHERE TO INSTALL

The Exchange Agents can be installed in one of two ways:

- Directly onto the Exchange Server. This method is referred to as an on-host installation and is useful if you want to preserve hardware resources.
- On a separate computer with connectivity to the Exchange Server. This method is referred to as an Non-Exchange Server installation and is useful if you want to offload the memory and processing resources required for backups and restores from the Exchange Server.

RELATED TOPICS

Download Software Packages

Provides step-by-step procedure to download the latest packages for software install.

System Requirements

Verify that the computer in which you wish to install the software satisfies the System Requirements.

Firewall

Provides comprehensive information on firewall.

PREREQUISITES

If you are installing the Exchange Agents on a 64-bit off-host proxy computer, perform the following pre-requisite task before installing these agents:

- Ensure that the proxy computer has been added to the same Domain in which the Exchange Server 2007 resides.
- Install Microsoft Outlook 2007 or higher on the off-host proxy computer in order to supply the software drivers necessary for Exchange-based agents to
 function in an off-host proxy configuration.

The below mentioned prerequisites are for Mailbox Agents only. Ensure that you have the following:

- Service account is a member of Exchange Organization Administrators group.
- The mail-enabled user is a member of the Local Administrator Group and have rights to all mailboxes on the server.
- Ensure that you assign full access to all mailboxes on the server. For details, see How do I Assign Full Access to All Mailboxes on a Server.

INSTALL PROCEDURE

1. Log on to the computer using an account with the following privileges:

Select the option to Install Calypso on this 64-bit computer.

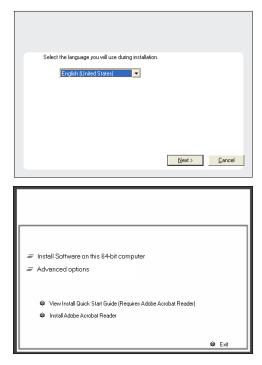
• Your screen may look different from the example shown.

- Administrator of the local computer
- Administrator of the Exchange Server
- 2. Run Setup.exe from the Software Installation Package.
- **3.** Select the required language.

Click Next.

NOTES:

4.



Select I accept the terms in the license agreement. 5. Click Next.

6. Select Configure a Virtual Server. Click Next.

7. Select the disk group in which the virtual server resides. Click Next.

- To install the Exchange iDataAgents expand Client Modules | Backup & 8. Recovery | Exchange, and select one or more of the following:
 - Exchange Database iDataAgent
 - Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent
 - Exchange Public Folder iDataAgent

To install the Exchange Archiver Agents, expand Client Modules | Archive Management, and select one or more of the following:

- Exchange Compliance Archiver
- Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent
- Exchange Public Folder Archiver Agent

Click Next.

For Non-Exchange Server, Exchange Database iDataAgent will not be applicable.

If this computer and the CommServe is separated by a firewall, select the **Configure** 9. firewall services option and then click Next.

For firewall options and configuration instructions, see Firewall Configuration and continue with the installation.

If firewall configuration is not required, click Next.

nstaller 🛛
License Agreement
Please read the following License Agreement. Press the PAGE DOWN key to view the entire agreement.
the PAGE DOWN key to view the entire agreement.
<u>^</u>
End User License and Limited Warranty Agreement
Software Release 9.0.0
(including Microsoft® SQL Server [™] 2008 Enterprise Edition, SQL Server [™] 2008 Express Edition and Windows Pre-Installation Environment)
Fud Hoov I incurs Amount
I accept the terms in the license agreement.
C I do not accept the terms in the license agreement.
Installer <back next=""> Cancel</back>
< Back Next > Cancel
nstaller 🛛
Cluster Type Selection
Configure the Physical Node or a Virtual Server
2
Configuration Options
C Configure the Physical node
C Configure a ⊻intual server
< <u>B</u> ack (<u>Next></u> <u>C</u> ancel
nstaller 🛛 🔀
Virtual Server Selection
Select the virtual server you would like to configure
Channel from the full-state first of state manual
Choose from the following list of disk groups configured on this cluster.
2003Cluster/VMS
< Back Next> Cancel
nstaller 🛛
Select Platforms Select the platforms you want to configure.
Move the pointer over a
Ch. Common Technology Engine Indiferent platform name to see a
Common Technology Engine CommServe Modules
Common Technology Engine plafform name to see a description of the platform and reasons why it may be discription and reasons why it may be discription.
Common Technology Engine Common Technology Engine CommServe Modules CommCell Contole CommCell Contole Comtent Modules Control Modules Comtent Modules
Common Technology Engine Disk Space Di
□ Common Technology Engine platform mane to see a discription of the platform and tescription of tescript
□ Common Technology Engine plafform mane to see a discription of the plafform and teacons why it may be disabled. □ CommGere Modules disabled. □ CommServe Modules disabled. □ Clernt Modules disabled. d
□ Common Technology Engine plafform mane to see a discription of the plafform and to see a discription of the plafform and the section of the plafform and the plafform and the section of the plafform and the p
□ Common Technology Engine plafform mane to see a discription of the plafform and to see a discription of the plafform and the section of the plafform and the plafform and the section of the plafform and the se

Special Registry Keys In Us

Cancel

Installer

Install Agents for Restore Only

< Back

10. Enter the fully qualified domain name of the CommServe Host Name.

Click Next.

Do not use space and the following characters when specifying a new name for the CommServe Host Name:

\|`~!@#\$%^&*()+=<>/?,[]{}:;'"

11. Click Next.

12. Select **Add programs to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List**, to add CommCell programs and services to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List.

Click Next.

This option enables CommCell operations across Windows firewall by adding CommCell programs and services to Windows firewall exclusion list.

It is recommended to select this option even if Windows firewall is disabled. This will allow the CommCell programs and services to function if the Windows firewall is enabled at a later time.

Please specify how connection from her Comm9erve are blo machine, or whethe	Windows Firewall is limiting network traffic. Whether it is possible to open e to a Commõerve's turnel port, whether all connections toward cked, and setup should instead expect Commõerve to connect back to this there is a Proxy in between.	
	a open connection to CommServe on tunnel port	
	open connection toward this machine	
	achable only through a proxy	
Installer		
	Next > Cancel	
nstaller	X	
CommServe Name Specify the CommSer name	e re computer name and host	
CommServe	Client Name	
, Carra Carra	UsedName	
CommServe Hoat Name (Enter a valid, fully-qualified, IP host name; for example: nycomputer.mycompany.com)		
mycompute	r.mycompany.com	
Installer		
	<back next=""> Cancel</back>	
nstaller Communication In Setup will configure th	terface Name e communication paths.	
	Select a client name	
	audi cn	
	Select an interface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe	
	audi.mycompany.com	
	IP Address(es) for the selected host.	
Installer		
	< Back Next > Cancel	
nstaller	X	
Windows Firewall		
Windows Firewall	is ON	
Add programs	to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List	
If you plan on usi exclusion list.	ng Windows Firewall, it is recommended to add the software programs to the	

< Back

Next:

If there is a firewall between this machine and the CommServe, configure firewall services below

Installer Firewall Configuration Configure firewall services

Configure firewall services

Installer

13. Verify the default location for software installation.

Click **Browse** to change the default location.

Click Next.

- Do not install the software to a mapped network drive.
- Do not use the following characters when specifying the destination path:

/:*?"<>|#

Cancel

		Installer
	It is recommended that you use alphanumeric characters only.	Destination Folder Select the destination folder to install the program files.
		Click Next to accept the default location, or click Browse to choose an altern Destination Folder Browse to choose an altern Drive List C 328 MB Installer C 8ack Next>
14.	Select a Client Group from the list.	Installer
	Click Next.	Client Group Selection
	This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the	Select a client group for the client.
	CommCell Console.	The Client Group is a logical grouping of client machines which have the same associations at various levels like Schedule Policy. Activity Control, Security and Reports. Client group: None Selected clien_group Installer
		< Back Next>
15.	Click Next.	Installer
		Schedule Install of Automatic Updates Choose when you want to schedule an install of the downloaded updates.
		✓ Schedule Install of Automatic Updates ○ Once ○ Weekly ○ Wonday ○ Monday ○ Monday ○ Thursday ○ Friday ○ Sunday Installer
16.	Select a Storage Policy.	Installer Storage Policy Selection
	Click Next.	Storage Policy Selection Select a storage policy for the default subclient to be backed up.
		Configure for Laptop or Desktop Backup Select a storage policy from the pull-down list.
		Installer
	If you do not have Storage Policy created, this message will be displayed.	Installer Storage Policy Selection Select a storage policy for the default subclient to be backed up.
	Click OK.	Backed up.
	You can create the Storage Policy later in step 31.	

• If you are installing the Exchange Database iDataAgent on the Exchange Server, click Configure Exchange Database Specific Information.

X

ate location.

Cancel

Cancel

Cancel

Cancel

Cancel

< Back Next >

X

X

• If you are installing the Exchange Agents on the Non-Exchange Server, skip to Configure Exchange Agents Specific Information.

CONFIGURE EXCHANGE DATABASE SPECIFIC INFORMATION

- 17. Select the backup type for Exchange Database backups. Choose either of the following options, then click **Next**.
 - Differential Specifies that each non-full Exchange Database backup secures all data that has changed since the last full backup. Transaction lobs are not purged.
 - **Incremental** Specifies that each non-full Exchange Database backup secures only that data that has changed since the last backup of any type. Committed transaction logs are purged.

Installer	
Exchange Backup Option	
Please select a default backup	type
C 57	
C Differential	Backs up changes in the Information Store and Directory Service since the last Full backup, Does not purge the transaction logs.
	Full backup. Does not purge the transaction loos
	ž
Incremental	Backs up changes in the Information Store and Directory Service since the last
	Full backup or Incremental backup. The
	committed Iransaction logs are then purged.
Installer	
maxanar	<back next=""> Cancel</back>
	X
Enter Administrator acco	
Enter Administrator account info	ormation
Account 1	Jame'
	(unit).
Account F	Passuret
Account	- assword.
Domain:	
EXCH	
· · · ·	
	Next>
Installer	
Summary	
Summary of install selections	
Setup has enough informati	on to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the begin copying files.
install settings, click Next to	begin copying files.
	<u> </u>
Destination Path = C:\Prog CommServe Host = mycom	am Files\ ====================================
Interface Name = audi.myc Client =audi	ompany.com
Job Results Path = C:\Prog	ram FilesWobResults
Global Filters = Use Cell lev	el policy 😪
<	Σ
Installer	
	< Back Next > Cancel
Installer	
Please verify that Gr backup operations.	cular Logging is disabled before performing any database
 Dackup operacións. 	
	ОК

- **18.** Enter the user credentials to access the Exchange Server to perform the backup operation.
 - The User Account must have Exchange Administrator privileges.
 - The installation detects the domain name. If necessary, you can modify the domain name by specifying Windows domain that the Exchange Server resides in.

19. Click Next.

- **20.** The install program displays a reminder to verify that Circular Logging is disabled before performing any database backup operations. To verify that Circular Logging is disabled:
 - From Exchange System Manager, navigate to and expand the server that the Database *i*DataAgent is being installed on.
 - Verify that the Circular Logging check box has not been selected for each Storage Group. If Circular Logging has been enabled for a Storage Group, disable it at this time.

Click OK.

- If you are installing the Exchange Agents, then click Configure Exchange Agents Specific Information.
- If you are installing the Exchange Database iDataAgent, skip to Install Remaining Cluster Nodes.

CONFIGURE EXCHANGE AGENTS SPECIFIC INFORMATION

21. Select Exchange Server Name and Exchange Server Version from drop-down list.

Click Next.

This screen will appear when you are installing Exchange Agents on Non-Exchange Server.

22. Click Next.

- 23. Enter the following Exchange Administrator information then click **Next**.
 - Account Name Domain user account created with the exchange server administrator permissions. Do not include the domain name here.
 - Account Password The password assigned to the domain user.
 - Mailbox Name for this Account Mailbox associated with the user above.
 - **Profile Name** Specify profile name to be created during agent install. This profile is associated with the domain user's mailbox.
 - Exchange Server Name Name of the Exchange Server that the agent will communicate with for data protection and recovery operations.
 - **Domain** The installation detects and enters a domain name. If necessary, modify the domain name by specifying Windows domain that the Exchange Server resides in.

Installer	X
Exchange Serve	er Name
	change server name
Fiease provide Exc	anange server name
	Exchange Server
	Exchange Server Name:
	Exchange_Server
	Exchange Server Version
	Exchange 2007
Installer	
	< Back <u>N</u> ext > <u>C</u> ancel
Installer	
mstatter	
Summary	
Summary of install	selections
Setup has eno	ugh information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the
install settings,	click Next to begin copying files.
	<u></u>
Destination Pat	th = C:\Program Files\ ost = mycomputer.mycompany.com
CommServe Ho	pst = mycomputer.mycompany.com e = audi.mycompany.com
Client = audi	; = adatniyoonipariy.com
Job Results Pa	th = C:\Program Files\JobResults
Global Filters =	Use Cell level policy 🧓
<	5
Installer	
	<back next=""> Cancel</back>
Installer	
	inistrator Account
Information	
Mailbox and Profile	e information
Plance enter the F	xchange account information required below. A new profile will be created with
the information sup	conange account information required below. A new profile will be created with polied.
Account Name:	Profile Name:
Account Password	t: Exchange Server Name:
Maillan Mars (thi decount Decoviry
Mailbox Name for t	this Account: Domain:
Installer	
Installer	< Back Next> Cancel
Installer	< Back Next > Cancel

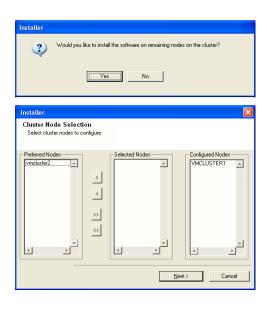
INSTALL REMAINING CLUSTER NODES

24. To install the software on the remaining nodes of the cluster, click Yes.To complete the install for this node only, click No.

25. Select cluster nodes from the **Preferred Nodes** list and click the arrow button to move them to the **Selected Nodes** list.

Once you complete your selections, click Next.

- The list of **Preferred Nodes** displays all the nodes found in the cluster; from this list you should only select cluster nodes configured to host this cluster group server.
- Do not select nodes that already have multiple instances installed.



- 26. Specify User Name and Password for the Domain Administrator account Information to perform the remote install on the cluster nodes you selected in the previous step.
 - Click Next.

27. The progress of the remote install for the cluster nodes is displayed; the install can be interrupted if necessary.

Click **Stop** to prevent installation to any nodes after the current ones complete.

Click Advanced Settings to specify any of the following:

- Maximum number of nodes on which Setup can run simultaneously.
- Time allocated for Setup to begin executing on each node, after which the install attempt will fail.
- Time allocated for Setup to complete on each node, after which the install attempt will fail.

If, during the remote install of a cluster node, setup fails to complete or is interrupted, you must perform a local install on that node. When you do, the install begins from where it left off, or from the beginning if necessary. For procedures, see Manually Installing the Software on a Passive Node.

28. Read the summary for remote installation to verify that all selected nodes were installed successfully.

Click Next.

- If any node installation fails, you must manually install the software on that node once the current installation is complete. See Manually Installing the Software on a Passive Node for step-by-step instructions.
- The message displayed on your screen will reflect the status of the selected nodes, and may look different from the example.

29. Click Next.

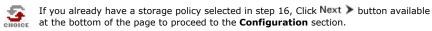
	User Name [<domain\user>]:</domain\user>
	LAB\Administrator
	Account Password:
	< <u>Back</u> Next> Cancel
Install	er
You	can stop remote install at any time. Installed clients will not be uninstalled. Clients in ress will continue installation, but their results will not show correctly.
prog	cos will contracte installation, but their results will not a low conectly.
Ci	ent Name Client Status Start Time End Time Result Description
rea	12
1	
	alled successfully: 0 Left to install: 1 ed to install: 0 In progress: 0 Max: 1 🚟
	osed time: Osec Estimated time left: 10 min Osec
	Installer
A	dvanced Settings Stop
	ime to wait for Setup to complete on each remote machine: 15 🛨 minutes
	ime to wait for Setup to complete on each remote machine: 15 🚊 minutes
nstalle	о <u>к</u>
nstalle Resu	о <u>к</u>
nstalle Resu	Jr (
<mark>nstalle</mark> Resu Ren	Jr (
nstalle Resu Ren Sur	
nstalle Resu Ren Sur The	
nstalle Resu Ren Sur The	
nstalle Resu Ren Sur The	
nstalle Resu Ren Sur The	
nstalle Resu Ren Su The REJ	TC CK The content of the selected to be installed: + CommCell L2: Install succeeded.
nstalle Resu Ren Sur The	T Its note install results rfollowing software (Version) were selected to be installed:
nstalle Resu Ren Su The REJ	IT IS Innary of remote install stolowing software (Version) were selected to be installed: + CommCell L2: Install succeeded.
nstalle Resu Ren Su The REJ	DK Its Note initial results following software (Version) were selected to be installed: + CommCal AL2: Initial succeeded.
nstalle Resu Ren Su The REJ	
nstalle Resu Ren Su The RE	r The solve install results Tolowing solverse (Version) were selected to be installed: + Commell AL2: Install succeeded. T Lule Reminder
nstalle Resu Ren Su The RE	r Its Note initial results r following software (Version) were selected to be installed: + Commodel L2 Initial succeeded
nstalle Resu Ren Su The RE	r The solve install results Tolowing solverse (Version) were selected to be installed: + Commell AL2: Install succeeded. T Lule Reminder
nstalla Resu Fer Su The REJ I schec Job s	r The solve install results Tolowing solverse (Version) were selected to be installed: + Commell AL2: Install succeeded. T Lule Reminder
nstalle Resu Sur The REJ The Schec Job s	
Installi Resu Ren The REJ	
nstalld Resu Ren Su The REJ The REJ	
Installa Resu Ferr Suu The REJ Schee Job s	

Domain administrator account information

Please provide domain admin

Domain Account Information

Software i	nstallation completed successfully.	
Visit the w	ebsite below to download latest Updates and Service Packs.	
Click Finis	h to complete Setup.	



If you do not have Storage Policy created, continue with the following step.

- 31. Create a Storage Policy:
 - 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Policies.
 - 2. Right-click the Storage Policies and then click New Storage Policy.
 - 3. Follow the prompts displayed in the Storage Policy Wizard. The required options are mentioned below:
 - Select the Storage Policy type as Data Protection and Archiving and click Next.
 - $\circ~$ Enter the name in the Storage Policy Name box and click Next.
 - From the **Library** list, click the name of a disk library to which the primary copy should be associated and then click **Next**.

Ensure that you select a library attached to a MediaAgent operating in the current release.

- From the MediaAgent list, click the name of a MediaAgent that will be used to create the primary copy and then click Next.
- For the device streams and the retention criteria information, click Next to accept default values.
- $\circ~$ Select Yes to enable deduplication for the primary copy.
- From the **MediaAgent** list, click the name of the MediaAgent that will be used to store the Deduplication store.

Type the name of the folder in which the deduplication database must be located in the Deduplication Store Location or click the Browse button to select the folder and then click **Next**.

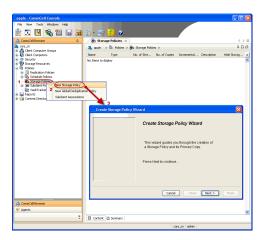
Review the details and click **Finish** to create the Storage Policy.

32. Enable the following registry key to create job specific profiles:

- From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers.
- Right-click the <Client> in which you want to add the registry key, and then click Properties.
- Click the Registry Key Settings tab.
- Click Add.
- Enter CreateProcessSpecificProfile in the Name field.
- Enter MSExchangeMBAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

Enter MSExchangeDMAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

- Enter REG_DWORD in the Type filed.
- Enter 1 to enable and 0 to disable the key in the Value field.
- Click OK.



Previous Next >

Install the 32-bit Exchange Agents for Exchange Server 2010 or 2007



Follow the steps given below to install Exchange Agents on one of the following:

- 64-bit Exchange Server 2010
- 64-bit Exchange Server 2007
- 64-bit Non-Exchange Server

WHERE TO INSTALL

The Exchange Agents can be installed in one of two ways:

- Directly onto the Exchange Server. This method is referred to as an on-host installation and is useful if you want to preserve hardware resources.
- On a separate computer with connectivity to the Exchange Server. This method is referred to as an Non-Exchange Server installation and is useful if you want to offload the memory and processing resources required for backups and restores from the Exchange Server.

Install the Exchange Agents on all the nodes on which backups have to be run in a DAG configuration.

INSTALLATION

The software can be installed using one of the following methods:

METHOD 1: INTERACTIVE INSTALL

Use this procedure to directly install the software from the installation package or a **System Requirements** network drive.

METHOD 2: INSTALL SOFTWARE FROM COMMCELL CONSOLE

Use this procedure to remotely install the software on a client computer.

RELATED TOPICS

Download Software	Packages		
Provides step-by-step p packages for software i	procedure to nstall.	download	the latest

Verify that the computer in which you wish to install the software satisfies the System Requirements.

Firewall

Provides comprehensive information on firewall.

PREREQUISITES

If you are installing the Exchange Agents on a 64-bit off-host proxy computer, perform the following pre-requisite task before installing these agents:

- Ensure that the proxy computer has been added to the same Domain in which the Exchange Server 2007 resides.
- Install Microsoft Outlook 2007 or higher on the off-host proxy computer in order to supply the software drivers necessary for Exchange-based agents to function in an off-host proxy configuration.

The below mentioned prerequisites are for Mailbox Agents only. Ensure that you have the following:

FOR EXCHANGE SERVER 2010

- Ensure that the service account is a member of Organization Management group.
- Ensure that the mail-enabled user is a member of the Local Administrator Group and have rights to all mailboxes on the server.
- To assign full access follow the steps given below:
- Using ADSIEDIT navigate to Configuration | Services | Microsoft Exchange.
- Right-click your organization name, click Properties | Securities and click the Advanced tab.
- Click Edit to modify the permissions set for Organization Management group.
- Click to select Full Control, Receive As and Send As permissions and wait for replication.
- Click the Effective Permission tab and Select the name of the backup account.
- The backup account should display the following as selected:

Full Control

All Extended Rights

Send As

Receive As

• Start the PowerShell and type the following to add the backup account so it has full control over all the databases:

Get-MailboxDatabase -server (server name) | Add-ADPermission -user "backup account" -ExtendedRights Receive-As

Run the above PowerShell every time a new database is added.

• Navigate to the Exchange Management Console, right-click the <mailbox> and click Manage Full Access Permissions to view the mailbox listed under Full Access Permissions.

FOR EXCHANGE SERVER 2007

- Service account should be a member of Exchange Organization Administrators group.
- Ensure that the mail-enabled user is a member of the Local Administrator Group and have rights to all mailboxes on the server.

METHOD 1: INTERACTIVE INSTALL

INSTALL THE EXCHANGE DATABASE /DATAAGENT

The Exchange Database iDataAgent must be installed first. Follow the steps described below to install Exchange Database iDataAgent.

- **1.** Log on to the computer using an account with the following privileges:
 - Administrator of the local computer
 - Administrator of the Exchange Server

2. Run Setup.exe from Software Installation Package.

3. Select the required language.

Click Next.

4.	Select the option t	o Install	Calvpso on	this	64-bit	computer
-TI	Sciect the option t	.o miscun	cutypso on	cinita i		compater

Your screen may look different from the example shown.

5.	$eq:select_sele$
	Click Next.

	Select the language you will use during installation.
	English (United States)
	,
	Next > Cancel
	<u>N</u> ext > <u>C</u> ancel
_	
	Install Software on this 64-bit computer
	Advanced options
	View Install Quick Start Guide (Requires Adobe Acrobat Reader)
	Install Adobe Acrobat Reader
	 Install Adobe Actobal meader
	🖨 Exit
Insta	aller 🛛
	aller 2
Lic Pl	cense Agreement lease read the following License Agreement. Press
Lic Pl	cense Agreement
Lic	cense Agreement lease read the following License Agreement. Press
Lic Pl	cense Agreement lease read the following License Agreement. Press
Lic	Rease Agreement Rease read the following License Agreement. Press the PAGE DOWN key to view the entire agreement.
Lic Pl	cense Agreement lease read the following License Agreement. Press
Lic Pl	Rease Agreement Rease read the following License Agreement. Press the PAGE DOWN key to view the entire agreement.
Lic Pl	Tense Agreement Tease read the following License Agreement. Press the PAGE DOWN key to view the entire agreement. End User License and Limited Warranty Agreement Software Release 9.0.0
Lic Pl	Tense Agreement Tense read the following License Agreement. Press the PAGE DOWN key to view the entire agreement. End User License and Limited Warranty Agreement
Lic Pl	ense Agreement lease read the following License Agreement. Press the PAGE DOWN key to view the entire agreement. End User License and Limited Warranty Agreement Software Release 9.0.0 (including Microsoft® SQL Server™ 2008 Enterprise Edition, SQL Server™
Lic Pl th	ense Agreement lease road the following License Agreement. Press the PAGE DOWN key to view the entire agreement. End User License and Limited Warranty Agreement Software Release 9.0.0 (including Microsoft@ SQL Server™ 2008 Enterprise Edition, SQL Server™ 2008 Express Edition and Windows Pre-Installation Environment)
Lic Pi th	Lease Agreement lease read the following License Agreement. Press the PAGE DOWN key to view the entire agreement. End User License and Limited Warranty Agreement Software Release 9.0.0 (including Microsoft® SQL Servert ¹⁴ 2008 Enterprise Edition, SQL Servert ¹⁴ 2008 Express Edition and Windows Pre-Installation Environment)
Lic Pi th	tense Agreement tesse read the following License Agreement. Press te PAGE DOWN key to view the entire agreement. End User License and Limited Warranty Agreement Software Release 9.0.0 (including Microsoft% SQL Server TM 2008 Enterprise Edition, SQL Server TM 2008 Express Edition and Windows Pre-Installation Environment) Colored Toos Viscon Associated Colored Toos Vi

6. Expand Client Modules | Backup & Recovery | Exchange | File System and select Exchange Database *i*DataAgent.

	Installer
	Select Platforms Select the platforms you want to configure.
	□ Common Technology Engine ⊥::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::
	□ Clent Modules Disk Space □ Backup & Recovvey Disk Space □ D. Content Indexing and Search (Reg/Recommended) □ □ Web Based Search & Browse Installation Folder.
	Archive Management OMB/ 0 MB On/inucurDataRepicator SRM SRM Supporting Modules
	B Totaler OMB/0 MB OMB/0 MB Special Registry Keys In Use
	Install Agents for Restore Only Kext> Cancel Cancel
this computer and the CommServe is separated by a firewall, select the Config rewall services option and then click Next .	ure Installer Eirewall Configuration
or firewall options and configuration instructions, see Firewall Configuration and ontinue with the installation.	Configure firewall services
firewall configuration is not required, click Next .	If there is a frewall between this machine and the CommServe, configure frewall services below.
	Please specify how Windows Frewall is limiting network traffic. Whether it is possible to open connection from here to a CommServe's tunnel pott, whether all connections toward CommServe are blocked, and setup should instead expect CommServe to connect back to this machine, or whether there is a Proving in between.
	This machine can open connection to CommServe on turnel port CommServe can open connection toward this machine
	C. CommServe is reachable only through a proxy
	Installer Cancel
nter the fully qualified domain name of the CommServe Host Name.	Installer 🛛
ick Next .	CommServe Name Specify the CommServe computer name and host
Do not use space and the following characters when specifying a new name for the CommServe Host Name:	name CommServe Client Name
\ `~!@#\$%^&*()+=<>/?,[]{}:;'"	CommServe Host Name
	(Enter a valid, fully-qualified, IP host name; for example: mycomputer.mycompany.com) mycomputer.mycompany.com
	Installer < Back Next > Cancel
lick Next.	Installer
	Communication Interface Name Setup will configure the communication paths.
	Select a client name
	Select an interface name that this computer will use to
	Select an interface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe audi mycompany.com

8. Enter the fully qualified domain name of the CommServe Ho Click Next.

9. Click Next.

7.

Select Add programs to the Windows Firewall Exclusion 10. programs and services to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List.

Click Next.

This option enables CommCell operations across Windows firewall by adding CommCell programs and services to Windows firewall exclusion list.

It is recommended to select this option even if Windows firewall is disabled. This will allow the CommCell programs and services to function if the Windows firewall is enabled at a later time.

11.

12.

13.

	Instatter
	Windows Firewall Exclusion List Allow programs to communicate through Windows Firewall
	Windows Firewall is ON
	Add programs to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List
	If you plan on using Windows Firewall, it is recommended to add the software programs to the exclusion list.
	Installer Cancel
Verify the default location for software installation.	Installer
Click Browse to change the default location.	Destination Folder Select the destination folder to install the program files.
Click Next.	
 Do not install the software to a mapped network drive. 	Click Next to accept the default location, or click Browse to choose an alternate location.
 Do not use the following characters when specifying the destination path: 	Destination Folder
/:*?"<> #	
It is recommended that you use alphanumeric characters only.	Drive List C: 928 MB Space Required / Recommended 1334 MB / 1670 MB
	Installer Kext Cancel
Select a Client Group from the list.	Installer
Click Next.	Client Group Selection
	Select a client group for the client.
This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the CommCell Console.	The Client Group is a logical grouping of client machines which have the same associations at various levels like Schedule Policy, Activity Control, Security and Repots.
	Client group:
	None Selected
	cient_group
	Installer Kext> Cancel
Click Next.	Installer
	Schedule Install of Automatic Updates Choose when you want to schedule an install of the downloaded updates.
	I⊄ Schedule Install of Automatic Updates
	C Once
	♥ Weekly ♥ Weekly ♥ Monday ♥ Tuesday
	C Wednesday C Thursday
	C Friday C Saturday
	⊂ Sunday
	Installer
	< Back Next > Cancel

14. Select a Storage Policy. Click Next.

X

Storage Policy Selection Select a storage policy for the default subclient to be backed up. 🔲 Configure for Laptop or Desktop Backup Select a storage policy from the pull-down list. -Unassigned Installe < Back Next> Cancel If you do not have Storage Policy created, this message will be displayed. nillo rage Policy Selection Select a storage policy for the default suboli backed up. ent to be Click OK. Configure for Laptop or Desktop Backup You can create the Storage Policy later in step 21. Next > Cancel Select the backup type for Exchange Database backups. Choose either of the 15. Installe following options, then click Next. Exchange Backup Options Please select a default backup type • Differential - Specifies that each non-full Exchange Database backup secures all data that has changed since the last full backup. Transaction lobs are not purged. • Incremental - Specifies that each non-full Exchange Database backup secures Backs up changes in the Information Store and Directory Service since the last Full backup. Does not purge the transaction logs. C Differential only that data that has changed since the last backup of any type. Committed transaction logs are purged. Incremental p changes in the financiau id Directory Service since the las kup or Incremental backup. The ed transaction logs are then Installer <Back Next> Cancel 16. Enter the user credentials to access the Exchange Server to perform the backup operation. Enter Administrator account information Enter Administrator account information • The User Account must have Exchange Administrator privileges. • The installation detects the domain name. If necessary, you can Account Name modify the domain name by specifying Windows domain that the Exchange Server resides in. Account Passwo Cancel 17. Click Next. Installer Summary Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. ^ Destination Path = C:\Program Files\ CommServe Host = mycomputer.mycompany.com Interface Name = audi.mycompany.com Client = audi Job Results Path = C:\Program Files\JobResults Global Filters = Lise Cell level notice * Installer < Back Next > Cancel

Installer

18. The install program displays a reminder to verify that Circular Logging is disabled before performing any database backup operations. To verify that Circular Logging is

×

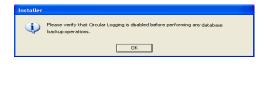
disabled:

- From Exchange System Manager, navigate to and expand the server that the Database *i*DataAgent is being installed on.
- Verify that the Circular Logging check box has not been selected for each Storage Group. If Circular Logging has been enabled for a Storage Group, disable it at this time.

Click OK.

19. Click Next.

20. Click Finish.



Installer	×
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder	
Please note: You still need to create a Job Schedule for each iD ataAgent that has been installed on this client computer. Job Schedules are required to allow the iD ataAgents to perform automated backup and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be accomplished through the CommCell Console administration interface.	
Installer	-
Installer	X
Completion Report Setup complete	
Software installation completed successfully. 2 Visit the website below to download latest Updates and Service Packs. Click Finish to complete Setup.	2
Installer Technical Support Website <u>Frish</u>	

If you already have a storage policy selected in step 14, Click Next > button available at the bottom of the page to proceed to the **Configuration** section.

If you do not have Storage Policy created, continue with the following step.

21. Create a Storage Policy:

5

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to **Policies**.
- 2. Right-click the Storage Policies and then click New Storage Policy.
- 3. Follow the prompts displayed in the Storage Policy Wizard. The required options are mentioned below:
 - Select the Storage Policy type as Data Protection and Archiving and click Next.
 - $\circ~$ Enter the name in the Storage Policy Name box and click Next.
 - From the Library list, click the name of a disk library to which the primary copy should be associated and then click Next.

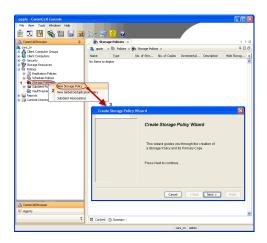
Ensure that you select a library attached to a MediaAgent operating in the current release.

- From the MediaAgent list, click the name of a MediaAgent that will be used to create the primary copy and then click Next.
- For the device streams and the retention criteria information, click Next to accept default values.
- Select **Yes** to enable deduplication for the primary copy.
- From the **MediaAgent** list, click the name of the MediaAgent that will be used to store the Deduplication store.

Type the name of the folder in which the deduplication database must be located in the Deduplication Store Location or click the Browse button to select the folder and then click **Next**.

 $\circ~$ Review the details and click Finish to create the Storage Policy.

• If you want to install Exchange Agents (such as Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent, Exchange Public Folder iDataAgent, Exchange Mailbox Archiver



and/or Exchange Public Folder Archiver), click Create the Registry Keys.

 If you are installing the Exchange Database iDataAgent, click Next > button available at the bottom of the page to proceed to the Configuration section.

CREATE THE REGISTRY KEYS

Create the bAllowMultiInstances and bAllow32BitInstallOn64Bit registry keys.

22. Create the bAllowMultiInstances registry key.

To create the registry key, see the following steps:

- 1. Start the Registry Editor (Regedit.exe or Redegt32.exe)
- Locate the directory under which you want to create a key, e.g., HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\.
- 3. Right click the SOFTWARE and click New -> Key.
- 4. Name the key as GalaxyInstallerFlags.
- 5. Right click the GalaxyInstallerFlags and select New -> DWORD value, name it as ballowMultiInstances and by double clicking the ballowMultiInstances key modify the Value data to 1.

To create the registry key, see the following steps:

- 1. Start the Registry Editor (Regedit.exe or Regedit32.exe)
- Locate the directory under which you want to create a key, e.g., HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Wow6432Node.
- 3. Right click the SOFTWARE and click New -> Key.
- 4. Name the key as GalaxyInstallerFlags.
- 5. Right click the GalaxyInstallerFlags and select New > DWORD value, name it as bAllow32BitInstallOn64Bit and by double clicking the bAllow32BitInstallOn64Bit key modify the Value data to 1.

Select the language you will use during installation. (English lUmited States)	Next > Cancel
	Teres
≓ Software install options ₹ 32-bit Software install options	🗢 Exit

24. Run Setup.exe from Software Installation Package.

Create the bAllow32BitInstallOn64Bit registry key.

25. Select the required language. Click Next.

23.

26. Select the Calypso 32-bit Software install options to install software.
NOTES

• This screen will only appear when the bAllow32BitInstallOn64Bit registry key has been created and enabled on this computer.

27. Select I accept the terms in the license agreement. Click Next. **28.** Select **Create a new instance** option to install the Exchange Agents on separate instance.

NOTES

- This screen will appear when the bAllowMultiInstances registry key has enabled on this computer.
- This screen will not appear if no other software components are installed on the computer.
- 29. To install the Exchange iDataAgents expand Client Modules | Backup & Recovery | Exchange, and select one or more of the following:
 - Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent
 - Exchange Public Folder iDataAgent

To install the **Exchange Archiver Agents**, expand **Client Modules | Archive Management**, and select one or more of the following:

- Exchange Compliance Archiver
- Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent
- Exchange Public Folder Archiver Agent

Click Next.

Note that the Exchange Database *i*DataAgents must be installed on the Exchange Server, see Install the Exchange Database *i*DataAgent for stepby-step procedure.

30. If this computer and the CommServe is separated by a firewall, select the **Configure firewall services** option and then click **Next**.

For firewall options and configuration instructions, see Firewall Configuration and continue with the installation.

If firewall configuration is not required, click **Next**.

Inty Agreement e Edition, SQL ServerM ation Environment) Mext> Cancel Next> Cancel Next> Cancel Next> Cancel Disk Space
Next > Cancel
Next > Cancel
Next > Cancel
Next > Cancel
Next > Cancel
Next > Cancel Inded] Inded] Next > Cancel Next > Cancel Next > Cancel
nded) Next> Cancel Next> Cancel A Move the pointer over a platform arms to see a disabled.
nded) Next> Cancel Next> Cancel
nded) Next> Cancel Next> Cancel
nded) Next> Cancel Next> Cancel
Next > Cancel Move the pointer over a platform name to see a dirabled
Next > Cancel Next > Cancel Next > Cancel A Move the pointer over a platform name to see a disabled
Next > Cancel Next > Cancel Next > Cancel A Move the pointer over a platform name to see a disabled
Next > Cancel Next > Cancel Next > Cancel A Move the pointer over a platform name to see a disabled
Next > Cancel Move the pointer over a platform name to see a dirabled
Next > Cancel Move the pointer over a platform name to see a dirabled
Next > Cancel Move the pointer over a platform name to see a dirabled
Next > Cancel Next > Cancel Next > Cancel A Move the pointer over a platform name to see a disabled
Next > Cancel Next > Cancel Next > Cancel A Move the pointer over a platform name to see a disabled
Move the pointer over a platform name to see a description of the platform are disabled
Move the pointer over a platform name to see a description of the platform are disabled
Move the pointer over a platform name to see a description of the platform are disabled
Move the pointer over a platform name to see a description of the platform are disabled
Move the pointer over a platform name to see a description of the platform are disabled
Move the pointer over a platform name to see a description of the platform are treators why may be disabled
Move the pointer over a platform name to see a description of the platform ar treators w/y Amy be disabled
Move the pointer over a platform name to see a description of the platform ar treators w/y Amy be disabled
Move the pointer over a platform name to see a description of the platform ar treators w/y Amy be disabled
Move the pointer over a platform name to see a description of the platform are treators why may be disabled
platform name to see a description of the platform ar reasons why it may be disabled.
platform name to see a description of the platform ar reasons why it may be disabled.
platform name to see a description of the platform an reasons why it may be disabled.
platform name to see a description of the platform an reasons why it may be disabled.
platform name to see a description of the platform an reasons why it may be disabled.
platform name to see a description of the platform an reasons why it may be disabled.
platform name to see a description of the platform an reasons why it may be disabled.
reasons why it may be disabled.
disabled.
Disk Space
Disk Space
(Req/Recommended)
Installation Folder: 0 MB/ 0 MB
Temporary on C: drive:
0 MB/ 0 MB
Special Registry Keys In Use
Special Registry Keys In Use Next> Cancel
In

Installer

31. Enter the fully qualified domain name of the **CommServe Host Name**.

Click Next.

Do not use space and the following characters when specifying a new name for the CommServe Host Name:

\|`~!@#\$%^&*()+=<>/?,[]{}:;'"

Next>

Cance

32. Click Next.

If there is any other instance installed on the computer, make sure that the host name does not match the client name entered in the **Select a client name** field in the previous instance.

33. Select Add programs to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List, to add CommCell programs and services to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List.

Click Next.

This option enables CommCell operations across Windows firewall by adding CommCell programs and services to Windows firewall exclusion list.

It is recommended to select this option even if Windows firewall is disabled. This will allow the CommCell programs and services to function if the Windows firewall is enabled at a later time.

34 Verify the default location for software installation.

Click **Browse** to change the default location.

Click Next.

- Do not install the software to a mapped network drive.
- Do not use the following characters when specifying the destination path:

/:*?"<>|#

It is recommended that you use alphanumeric characters only.

35. Select a Client Group from the list.

Click Next.

This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the CommCell Console.

nstaller	
CommServe Nam	-
	e rve computer name and host
name	re computer name and new
CommServe	e Client Name
	S CIER I Valid
J	
CommServe	e Host Name
(Enter a vai mycomputer	iid, fully-qualified, IP host name; for example: «.mycompany.com)
mycompute	er.mycompany.com
,	
l stellar	
Installer	
	< Back Next > Cancel
staller	
ommunication I	nterface Name
	he communication paths.
	Select a client name
	audi_cn
	Select an interface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe
	Communicate manage common ro
	audi.mycompany.com
	IP Address(es) for the selected host.
Installer	
	< Back Next > Cancel
ıstaller	
Windows Firewal	
Allow programs to con	initial color direction of the color of the
Allow programs to cor Firewall	
Allow programs to cor Firewall	
Allow programs to cor Firewall Windows Firewal	
Firewall	
Firewall Windows Firewal	l is ON
Firewall Windows Firewal	
Firewall Windows Firewal	I is ON s to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List
Firewall Windows Firewal K Add programs	l is ON
Firewall Windows Firewal	I is ON s to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List
Firewall Windows Firewal Add programs	I is ON s to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List
Firewall Windows Firewal Add programs	I is ON s to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List
Firewall Windows Firewal Add programs	I is ON s to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List
Firewall Windows Firewal Add programs	I is ON s to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List
Firewall Windows Firewal Add programs	I is ON s to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List
Firewall Windows Firewal Add programs	I is ON s to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List
Firewall Windows Firewal K dd program If you plan on usi exclusion list.	II is DN s to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List ing Windows FirewalL it is recommended to add the software programs to the
Firewall Windows Firewal K dd program If you plan on usi exclusion list.	I is ON s to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List
Firewall Windows Firewal Firew	II is DN s to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List ing Windows FirewalL it is recommended to add the software programs to the
Firewal Windows Firewal Vadd program: If you plan on usi exclusion list.	II is DN s to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List ing Windows FirewalL it is recommended to add the software programs to the
Frewal Windows Frewal Windows Frewal F Add program: If you plan on usi exclusion list. Installer Installer	I is DN s to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List ing Windows Firewall, it is recommended to add the software programs to the < Back. Next Cancel
Frewal Windows Firewal Windows Firewal V dd program If you plan on us exclusion list. Installer Installer Destination Folde	II is DN s to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List ing Windows Firewall, it is recommended to add the software programs to the < Back
Frewal Windows Firewal Windows Firewal V dd program If you plan on us exclusion list. Installer Installer Destination Folde	I is DN s to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List ing Windows Firewall, it is recommended to add the software programs to the < Back. Next Cancel
Frewal Windows Firewal Windows Firewal V dd program If you plan on us exclusion list. Installer Installer Destination Folde	II is DN s to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List ing Windows Firewall, it is recommended to add the software programs to the < Back
Firewall Windows Firewal Windows Firewal F Add programs If you plan on us exclusion list. Installer Installer Destination Folde	II is DN s to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List ing Windows Firewall, it is recommended to add the software programs to the < Back
Firewall Windows Firewal Windows Firewal F Add programs If you plan on us exclusion list. Installer Installer Installer Destination Folde	II is DN s to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List ing Windows Firewall, it is recommended to add the software programs to the < Back
Frewall Windows Firewal Windows Firewal Windows Firewal Windows Firewal Installer Installer Pstaller Destination Folde Select the destination	II is DN s to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List ing Windows Firewall, it is recommended to add the software programs to the < Back
Frewall Windows Firewal Windows Firewal Windows Firewal Windows Firewal Installer Installer Pstaller Destination Folde Select the destination	II is DN s to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List ing Windows Firewall, it is recommended to add the software programs to the < < Back
Firewall Vindows Firewal Vindows Firewal Vindows Firewal Vindows Firewal Vindows Firewal Vindows Firewal Installer Installer Installer Pestination Folde Select the destination	I is DN s to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List ing Windows Firewall, it is recommended to add the software programs to the c Back. Next > Cancel c Cancel r r r folder to install the program files. at the default location, or click Browse to choose an alternate location.
Firewall	I is DN s to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List ing Windows Firewall, it is recommended to add the software programs to the < <pre></pre>
Firewall Windows Firewal Windows Firewal Windows Firewal I vou plan on usi exclusion list. Installer Installer Destination Folde Select the destination Click Next to accept	I is DN s to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List ing Windows Firewall, it is recommended to add the software programs to the < <pre></pre>
Firewall Windows Firewal Windows Firewal Add program: If you plan on usi exclusion list. Installer Installer Destination Folde Click Next to accep Destination Folde	I is DN s to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List ing Windows Firewall, it is recommended to add the software programs to the < <pre></pre>
Frewall Vundows Frewal Vundows Frewal Vundows Frewal Vundows Frewal Vundows Frewal Installer Installer Destination Folde Click Next to accept Destination Folde Click Next to accept Destination Folde Click Next to accept	I is DN s to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List ing Windows Firewall, it is recommended to add the software programs to the < <pre></pre>
Frewall Windows Firewal Windows Firewal Add program If you plan on usi exclusion list. Installer Destination Folde Click Next to accep Destination Folde Destination Folde Dirive List Dirive List	I is DN s to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List ing Windows Firewall, it is recommended to add the software programs to the c Back. Next> Cancel c Cancel r r the default location, or click Browse to choose an alternate location. Browse Browse Space Required / Recommended
Frewall Windows Frewal Windows Frewal Add program: I you plan on usi exclusion list. Installer Installer Destination Folde Click Next to accept Destination Folde	I is DN s to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List ing Windows Firewall, it is recommended to add the software programs to the < <pre></pre>
Frewall Windows Firewal Windows Firewal Add program If you plan on usi exclusion list. Installer Destination Folde Click Next to accep Destination Folde Destination Folde Dirive List Dirive List	I is DN s to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List ing Windows Firewall, it is recommended to add the software programs to the c Back. Next> Cancel c Cancel r r the default location, or click Browse to choose an alternate location. Browse Browse Space Required / Recommended
Frewal Windows Firewal Windows Firewal Add program If you plan on us exclusion list. Installer Installer Destination Folde Click Next to accep Destination Folde Destination Folde Destination Folde Dirive List	I is DN s to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List ing Windows Firewall, it is recommended to add the software programs to the c Back. Next> Cancel c Cancel r r the default location, or click Browse to choose an alternate location. Browse Browse Space Required / Recommended

< Back

Next>

Cancel

36. Click Next.

37. Select a Storage Policy. Click Next.

If you do not have Storage Policy created, this message will be displayed. Click ${\bf OK}.$

You can create the Storage Policy later in step 43.

38. Select **Exchange Server Name** and **Exchange Server Version** from drop-down list.

Click Next.

This screen will appear when you are installing $\ensuremath{\mathsf{Exchange}}$ Agents on Non-Exchange Server.

Installer	le l	×
Client Group Sele Select a client group fo		
Jeieu a ciient group h	on one one office	
The L which	Tient Group is a logical grouping of client machines n have the same associations at various levels like dule Policy, Activity Control, Security and Reports.	
Schei	dule Policy, Activity Control, Security and Heports.	
	Client group:	
	None Selected client_group	
Installer		-
	<back next=""> Cancel</back>	
Installer	E	×
	of Automatic Updates Int to schedule an install of the	
downloaded updates.	in to schedule an install of the	
Schodulo Insta	all of Automatic Updates	
	a of Automatic opdates	
C Once		
Weekly	Time: 08:31:12 PM	
	Monday C Tuesday	
	C Wednesday C Thursday	
	C Friday C Saturday	
	C Sunday	
Installer		
	< Back Next > Cancel	
		_
Installer		×
Storage Policy Se	election	
Select a storage polic	cy for the default subclient to be	
backed up.		
Configure for I	aptop or Desktop Backup	
j coniguo loi c		
Select a stora	ge policy from the pull-down list.	
	Unassigned 🔽	
Installer		
	< Back Next > Cancel	
		_
Installer Storage Policy Se	election	×
	cy for the default subclient to be	
Configure for I	Laptop or Desktop Backup	
Installer	< Back Next > Cancel	1
Testallor		
Installer Exchange Server		×
Please provide Excha		
Γ	Exchange Server	
	Exchange Server Name: Exchange_Server	
	,	
	Exchange Server Version	
	Exchange 2007	
Installer		
	< Back Next > Cancel	

- **40.** Enter the following Exchange Administrator information then click **Next**.
 - Account Name Domain user account created with the exchange server administrator permissions. Do not include the domain name here.
 - Account Password The password assigned to the domain user.
 - Mailbox Name for this Account Mailbox associated with the user above.
 - Profile Name Specify profile name to be created during agent install. This profile is associated with the domain user's mailbox.
 - Exchange Server Name Name of the Exchange Server that the agent will communicate with for data protection and recovery operations.

Enter the Mailbox Role Server name (NetBIOS). After installation configure the roles as described in Configure Mailboxes in Database Availability Group (DAG) Servers.

- Domain The installation detects and enters a domain name. If necessary, modify the domain name by specifying Windows domain that the Exchange Server resides in.
- 41. Click Next.

42. Click Finish.

	×	
Summary		
Summary of install selections		
Cature has a success information to al	and an entry the entry of the life out and a state of the life of the	
install settings, click Next to begin	copying the program nes. If you are satisfied with the copying files.	
	<u>^</u>	
Destination Path = C:\Program File		
CommServe Host = mycomputer.m Interface Name = audi.mycompan	ycompany.com v.com	
Client =audi		
Global Filters = Use Cell level polic	y 🗸	
×		
Installer		
	< Back Next> Lancel	
Installer		
	int	
Mailbox and Profile information		
Please enter the Exchange account in the information sunnlied	formation required below. A new profile will be created with	
	Durfle Mener	
Account Name:	Pronie Name:	
Account Password:	Exchange Server Name:	
I	I	
Mailbox Name for this Account:	Domain:	
Installer		
	< Back Next> Lancel	
-		
A		
Installer Sebedule Remindee	×	
Installer Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder		
Schedule Reminder	×	
Schedule Reminder		
Schedule Reminder		
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sci	redule for each iDataAgent that has been installed on	
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note:	redule for each iDataAgent that has been installed on	
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all		
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operations.	ow the iDataAgents to perform automated backup	
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operations.	ow the iDataAgents to perform automated backup	
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You util need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be ac	ow the iDataAgents to perform automated backup	
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You util need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be ac	ow the iDataAgents to perform automated backup	
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You util need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be ac	ow the iDataAgents to perform automated backup	
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be ac administration interface.	ow the iDataAgents to perform automated backup	
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be ac administration interface.	ow the iDataAgents to perform automated backup	
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be ac edministration interface.	ow the iDataAgents to perform automated backup	
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be ac administration interface.	ow the iDataAgents to perform automated backup	
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be ac edministration interface.	ow the iDataAgents to perform automated backup	
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operation. Job Schedule creation can be ac administration interface.	ow the iDataAgents to perform automated backup	
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be ac administration interface.	ow the iDataAgents to perform automated backup complished through the CommCell Console <u>Next></u>	
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be ac administration interface. Installer Installer Completion Report Setup complete	ow the iDataAgents to perform automated backup complished through the CommCell Console	
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be ac administration interface. Installer Installer Completion Report Setup complete Software installation completed success Visit the website below to download late	ow the iDataAgents to perform automated backup complished through the CommCell Console	
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be ac administration interface. Installer Installer Completion Report Setup complete	Summary of initial selections Setup has enough information to stat copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the Destination Path = C-VProgram Files' Commonwer Host = meconomytein mycomeany com Interface Above and Profile information Debto Filters = Use Cell level policy Installer	
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be ac administration interface. Installer Installer Completion Report Setup complete Software installation completed success Visit the website below to download late	ow the iDataAgents to perform automated backup complished through the CommCell Console	
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be ac administration interface. Installer Installer Completion Report Setup complete Software installation completed success Visit the website below to download late	ow the iDataAgents to perform automated backup complished through the CommCell Console	
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be ac administration interface. Installer Installer Completion Report Setup complete Software installation completed success Visit the website below to download late	ow the iDataAgents to perform automated backup complished through the CommCell Console	
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be ac administration interface. Installer Installer Completion Report Setup complete Software installation completed success Visit the website below to download late	ow the iDataAgents to perform automated backup complished through the CommCell Console	
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be ac administration interface. Installer Installer Completion Report Setup complete Software installation completed success Visit the website below to download late	ow the iDataAgents to perform automated backup complished through the CommCell Console	
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be ac administration interface. Installer Installer Completion Report Setup complete Software installation completed success Visit the website below to download late	ow the iDataAgents to perform automated backup complished through the CommCell Console	
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operation. Job Schedule creation can be ac administration interface. Installer Completion Report Setup complete Software installation completed succes Visit the website below to download lat Click Finish to complete Setup.	ow the iDataAgents to perform automated backup complished through the CommCell Console Next > stully: est Updates and Service Packs.	

If you already have a storage policy selected in step 37, Click Next > button available at the bottom of the page to proceed to the **Configuration** section.

If you do not have Storage Policy created, continue with the following step.

43. Create a Storage Policy:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to **Policies**.
- 2. Right-click the Storage Policies and then click New Storage Policy.
- 3. Follow the prompts displayed in the Storage Policy Wizard. The required options

are mentioned below:

- Select the Storage Policy type as Data Protection and Archiving and click Next.
- Enter the name in the Storage Policy Name box and click Next.
- From the Library list, click the name of a disk library to which the primary copy should be associated and then click Next.

Ensure that you select a library attached to a MediaAgent operating in the current release.

- From the MediaAgent list, click the name of a MediaAgent that will be used to create the primary copy and then click Next.
- $\circ\;$ For the device streams and the retention criteria information, click Next to accept default values.
- $\circ~$ Select Yes to enable deduplication for the primary copy.
- From the **MediaAgent** list, click the name of the MediaAgent that will be used to store the Deduplication store.

Type the name of the folder in which the deduplication database must be located in the Deduplication Store Location or click the Browse button to select the folder and then click **Next**.

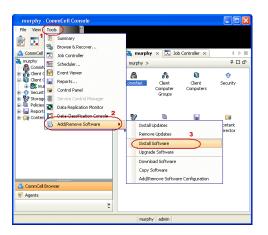
- Review the details and click **Finish** to create the Storage Policy.
- 44. Enable the following registry key to create job specific profiles:
 - From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers.
 - Right-click the <Client> in which you want to add the registry key, and then click Properties.
 - Click the Registry Key Settings tab.
 - Click Add.
 - Enter CreateProcessSpecificProfile in the Name field.
 - Enter MSExchangeMBAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

 $\ensuremath{\mathsf{Enter}}$ MSExchangeDMAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

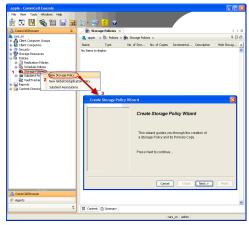
- Enter REG_DWORD in the Type filed.
- Enter 1 to enable and 0 to disable the key in the Value field.
- Click OK.

METHOD 2: INSTALL SOFTWARE FROM COMMCELL CONSOLE

 From the CommCell Browser, select Tools, point to Add/Remove Software, and then click Install Software.



2. Click Next.



3. Select Windows. Click Next.

4. Select Manually Select Computers. Click Next.

5. Enter the fully qualified domain name of the computer on which you have Exchange Server.

For example: win08ex07.idclab.loc

Click Next.

install Wizard
This wizard guides you through the steps required to install software on computers.
Click Next to continue.
< Back Next > Save As Script Finish Cancel Help
Installer
Select the computer's operating system
Windows
() Windows
O Unix and Linux
]
<back (next="">) Save As Script Finish Cancel Help</back>
Installer
Installer
Installer X
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software the software the software of the software o
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software the software the software of the software o
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software the software the software of the software o
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software the software the software of the software o
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software the software the software of the software o
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software the software select computers Software will be installed only on the selected kk of computers. Automatically discover computers
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software the software select computers Software will be installed only on the selected kk of computers. Automatically discover computers
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software the software select computers Software will be installed only on the selected kk of computers. Automatically discover computers
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software the software select computers Software will be installed only on the selected kk of computers. Automatically discover computers
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software the software select computers Software will be installed only on the selected kk of computers. Automatically discover computers
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software the software select computers Software will be installed only on the selected kk of computers. Automatically discover computers
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software the software select computers Software will be installed only on the selected kk of computers. Automatically discover computers
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software the software select computers Software will be installed only on the selected kk of computers. Automatically discover computers
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software • Installing the software • Installed only on the selected list of computers. • Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs.
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software • Installing the software • Installed only on the selected list of computers. • Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs.
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software by the select computers Software will be installed only on the selected lak of computers. Automatically discovered when the job runs. Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Cegach Lexts - Software Computers Cegach Lexts - Software Computers Fresh Lexts - Letters
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Software will be hatsled only on the selected lat of computers. Automatically discovered when the job runs. Computers will be discovered when the job runs.
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software by the select computers Software will be installed only on the selected lak of computers. Automatically discovered when the job runs. Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Cegach Lexts - Software Computers Cegach Lexts - Software Computers Fresh Lexts - Letters
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Shuke will be installed only on the selected lat of computers Automatically discovered when the job runs. Automatically discovered when the job runs. Ceputers will be discovered when the job runs. Ceputer will be discovered when the job runs. Ceputer will be discovered when the job runs. Ceputer will be discovered when the job runs. Ceputers will be discovered when the job runs. Ceputers will be discovered when the job runs.
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Shuthy select computers Shuthy select computers Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Center the discovered when the job runs. Center the host names of the computers Research that runs of the runs of
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Shuthy select computers Shuthy select computers Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Center the discovered when the job runs. Center the host names of the computers Research that runs of the runs of
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Shuthy select computers Shuthy select computers Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Center the discovered when the job runs. Center the host names of the computers Research that runs of the runs of
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Shuthy select computers Shuthy select computers Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Center the discovered when the job runs. Center the host names of the computers Research that runs of the runs of
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Shuthy select computers Shuthy select computers Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Center the discovered when the job runs. Center the host names of the computers Research that runs of the runs of
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Shuthy select computers Shuthy select computers Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Center the discovered when the job runs. Center the host names of the computers Research that runs of the runs of
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Shuthy select computers Shuthy select computers Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Center the discovered when the job runs. Center the host names of the computers Research that runs of the runs of
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Shuthy select computers Shuthy select computers Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Center the discovered when the job runs. Center the host names of the computers Research that runs of the runs of
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Shuthy select computers Shuthy select computers Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Center the discovered when the job runs. Center the host names of the computers Research that runs of the runs of
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Shuthy select computers Software will be natabaled only on the selected lat of computers. Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Cancel Lepp Sever Au Scope Presh Cancel Lepp Externet the host names of the computers Revealed the runs of the computers Revealed to the runs of
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Shuthy select computers Software will be natabaled only on the selected lat of computers. Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Cancel Lepp Sever Au Scope Presh Cancel Lepp Externet the host names of the computers Revealed the runs of the computers Revealed to the runs of

6. Click Next.

 Specify User Name and Password that must be used to access the computer. Click Next.

- To install the Exchange iDataAgents expand Client Modules | Backup & Recovery | Exchange, and select one or more of the following:
 - Exchange Database iDataAgent
 - Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent
 - Exchange Public Folder iDataAgent

Click Next.

For Non-Exchange Server, Exchange Database iDataAgent will not be applicable.

9.

- Select Client Group from Available and click Add.
 - Select a **Storage Policy** from the drop-down list. Click **Next**.

NOTES:

 Select the Configure for Laptop or Desktop Backup option to install Backup Monitor utility. This utility allows you to view the backup job summary from the client computer without opening the CommCell Console. See Monitor - Laptop User for more information.

Select S	Software Cache	
To use i	current Client or Client Group Softw le Software Carbe and select the Si	are Cache settings, click Next. To override Software Cache settings check oftware Cache to be used.
	Override Software Cache	
1000	ftware Cache: murphy.domain	.company.com
	< Back	xt > Save As Script Finish Cancel Heb
Installe	97	
Enter	. Annount informatio	
Enter	r Account Informatio	1
The : multi	specified account should hav iple clients, the user should h	e administrative access to the computer. If you are installing ave access to all clients.
ſ	- Reuse Active Directory	credentials
	User Name:	
		Example:domain\username
	Password:	
	Confirm Password:	
< <u>B</u> ack	k Next >	Save As Script Finish Cancel Help
	K Mext >	Save As Script Filibil Calicel Delp
Installer		
	ckage(s) to install	
	SQL Server iDataAgent SAP for Oracle	
	SQL Server (DataAgent SAP for Oracle	
	SQL Server IDetaAgent SAP for Oracle SAP for Oracle Sybase DataAgent NySQL DataAgent NySQL DataAgent Documentum Agent	
Select Pac	SQL Server DataApent SAP for Orade SAP for Not08 System DataApent MrSQL DataApent Documentum Apent Dicharge DataBase DataApent Excharge DataBase DataApent Excharge DataBase DataApent Excharge Nallow: DataApent Excharge Nallow: DataApent	
Solect Pac	SG, Server Debalgert SAP for Oracle SAP for Oracle SAP for MonOB Shares Conserved Shares Conserved MySCL DataAgent Documentum Agent Change Database IbstaAgent Exchange Mallow: DataAgent Exchangent Exchange Mallow: DataBent Exc	
Select Pac	Source Dedaget Source Dedaget Source Dedaget Source Dedaget Source Dedaget Source Detaget	
Select Pac	Softwer Diedogen Soft	
Solect Pac	Scherren Deskagert Schere Deskagert Schere Deskagert Schere Deskagert Schere Deskagert Schere Deskagert Control (Station)	
Solect Pac	Scherren Deskagert Schere Deskagert Schere Deskagert Schere Deskagert Schere Deskagert Schere Deskagert Control (Station)	
	Scherre Diebegen Scher Constagen Scher Constagen Scher Constagen Scher Constagen Decommunity Schere Decommun	
	Scherre Diebegen Scher Constagen Scher Constagen Scher Constagen Scher Constagen Decommunity Schere Decommun	
	Sofe of costs Sofe of	
	Scherr Detakger Scher Detakger Scher Detakger Scher Detakger Scher Detakger Scher Detakger De	
	Scherr Detakger Scher Detakger Scher Detakger Scher Detakger Scher Detakger Scher Detakger De	97 Det. Text > Print Gardt Heb
Sciect Pac	Serre Distalger Seree Distalger Seree Distalger Seree Distalger S	27
Sciect Pace	Barre Datager Sarre D	27
Soloct Pace	Barr Datager Sarr Datager S	27
Select Pace	Barre Datager Sarre D	27 27 27 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20
Select Pace	Berner Detakger Ster für detakger Ster Ster detakger	29 105 Bet> Productor Productore 105 Bet>
Select Pace	Berner Detakger Serrer Detakger S	99 Book Events Solar Produit Concol Hole Solated Software Add > Lepto Solar Concol Hole
Select Pace	Berner Detakger Serrer Detakger S	29 Bods New X (See A Scient Prod.) Concer Hebe Experimentary (See A Scient P
Solect Pace	Some Obsequer Some Ob	99 Bod Marks State Prob Conce Hete Selected Software Selected Software
Solect Pace	Berner Detakger Serrer Detakger S	29 Bed Net2 Path Carol He Add 2 Selected Software
Select Pace	Some Obsequer Some Ob	99 Bod Marks State Prob Conce Hete Selected Software Selected Software
Select Pace	Berner Detaktionen Server Detaktione	99 Bod Marks State Prob Conce Hete Selected Software Selected Software
Select Pace	Configure For Laplace Configure Configure Configure Configure Configure	29 Bok Net2 Path Corol Net Selected Software Cargo Selected Selecte
Select Pace	Configure For Laplace Configure Configure Configure Configure Configure	29 Bok Net2 Path Corol Net Selected Software Cargo Selected Selecte
Select Pace	Barr Detadger Sorre Det	29 Bok Net2 Path Corol Net Selected Software Cargo Selected Selecte

Installer

X

10. Type the Agent Specific Settings information. Click **Next**.

11. Click Next.

12. Select Immediate. Click Next.

13. Click Finish.

Agent Specific Settings		
Components		
ExchangeServer In		
Server Name win03e		
Exchange Profile (User Account IDCLAB)		ed
Malbox Name		5
Profile Name		
😑 Exchange Databas		
User Account IDCLAB		rd
 Differential Backup Incremental Backup 		
() a kreite ka babop		
	< gock gext > Save As Script Pinish Cancel	
taller		
nter Additional Install Opti	ans	
Installer Flags		
Install Updates		
Reboot (if required)	res incl	
Ignore Running Jobs	roqui lou)	
Stop Oracle Services (if r	required)	
Skip clients that are alread	ady part of the CommCell component	
Advanced Options		
Delete Packages After In		
Ignore Client/Host Name		
Install Result Log Location		
Optional Settings		
Job Result Direct	ory	
Path		
CVD Port		840
Evingrc Part Install Directory		840
Log File Location		
CommServe Host Name		
	< Back Bank > Save As Script Pinish Cancel	ה ר
nstaller		Received
Please Select Wh	en To Run The Job	
Job Initiation		
(Immediate	<u> </u>	
Run this job) NOW	
C Schedule	Schedule Pattern Configure	
	Contrigence	
	contrigen e	
	ennige e	

- **14.** You can track the progress of the job from the **Job Controller** or **Event Viewer** window.
- 15. Once the job is complete, right-click the **CommServe** computer, click **View** and then click **Admin Job History**.

16. Select Install/Upgrade/Remove Software. Click OK.

- **17.** You can view the following details about the job by right-clicking the job:
 - Items that succeeded during the job
 - Items that failed during the job
 - Details of the job

Select Type Of Installation: Windows Select Type Of Client Discovery: Manually select computers Exclude discovery of computers with SRM agents already installed: Yes Reuse Active Directory credentials: N_0 Client Authentication for Job User Name: IDCLAB/administrator Password: **** Install Flags Initial Plagi Initial Plagi Initial Updates: Yes Robot (ff required): No Egnore Running, Adot: No Stop Oracle Services (ff required): No Stop Cate Services (ff required): No Delse Packages After Initial: No Ignore ClearchForts Name Catflict: Yes Initial Agents For Sestore Only: No Client Composition Override Software Cache: No Salast Time Of Installation: C <Back Ment > Save As Script Finish Cancel Help C Pause Playing St Adm M Job ID Date wing Information, Mro. 🆻 🖪 🖳 🗞 🖾 📓 🕏 ð6 🚴 apple > P 🗆 I 2 . Nier 0 Storage Admin Job H Log Files Users Logged In Schedules Fl... Job ID Operat 21 Data Agi Pause Playing Run 🛛 😥 Event Viewer 🗴 🎆 Admin Job History 🗙 19:1 19:1 35:: 68:1 apple apple apple Playing Information, Minor, Major, Critical, Maxim 30 ¥ onle admi Admin Job History Filter loh Ty O All O Data Aging O Export Media O Disaster Recovery Backup O Auxiliary Copy O Inventory O Data Verification Offline Content Indexing 🔿 Erase Media O Erase Backup/Archi O Drive Validation O Drive Cleaning Stamp Media Install/Remove Update: O Download/Copy Software Install/Upgrade/Remove Software Disk Library Maintenance O SRM Reports/Actions O CommCell Export O CommCell Import 1 O Recover Store Media Refreshing Specify Time Range Start Time End Tir ÷ Job Stab

ase verify all the selected options and click Finish to run the job immediately or click Save As Script to save the job options as a script.

Summary

• All

Number of Jobs

View All Jobs

Desired Number of Jobs

O Completed

O Failed

◯ Killed

2 OK Cancel Help

Client Install Option

- Events of the job
- Log files of the job

Job Type	Job ID	Status	Start Time	End Time	User N	Error C	Storag	Auton	Legal	Legal	
Install Software	20	S Complete	View Job Details	11.	, admin			NIA.	N/A	N/A	
			Resubmit Job								
			View Events								
			View Content In	dex 🔸							
			View Logs								
			Send Logs								

18.

Enable the following registry key to create job specific profiles:

- From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers.
- Right-click the <Client> in which you want to add the registry key, and then click Properties.
- Click the Registry Key Settings tab.
- Click Add.
- Enter CreateProcessSpecificProfile in the Name field.
- Enter MSExchangeMBAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

 $\ensuremath{\mathsf{Enter}}$ MSExchangeDMAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

- Enter REG_DWORD in the Type filed.
- Enter 1 to enable and 0 to disable the key in the Value field.
- Click OK.



Install the 32-bit Exchange Agents on Exchange Server 2007/2010 or 64-bit Non-Exchange Server - Clustered Environment

Previous Next >

The Exchange Agents are designed to protect an entire Exchange Server database. Follow the steps given below to install the 64-bit Exchange Agents on Exchange Server 2007/2010 or on Non-Exchange Server.

WHERE TO INSTALL

The Exchange Agents can be installed in one of two ways:

- Directly onto the Exchange Server. This method is referred to as an on-host installation and is useful if you want to preserve hardware resources.
- On a separate computer with connectivity to the Exchange Server. This method is referred to as an Non-Exchange Server installation and is useful if you want to offload the memory and processing resources required for backups and restores from the Exchange Server.

Make sure the computer satisfies the minimum requirements specified in the System Requirements.

RELATED TOPICS

Download Software Packages

Provides step-by-step procedure to download the latest packages for software install.

System Requirements

Verify that the computer in which you wish to install the software satisfies the System Requirements.

Firewall

Provides comprehensive information on firewall.

PREREQUISITES

The below mentioned prerequisites are for Mailbox Agents only. Ensure that you have the following:

FOR EXCHANGE SERVER 2010

- Ensure that the service account is a member of Organization Management group.
- Ensure that the mail-enabled user is a member of the Local Administrator Group and have rights to all mailboxes on the server.

To assign full access follow the steps given below:

- Using ADSIEDIT navigate to Configuration | Services | Microsoft Exchange.
- Right-click your organization name, click Properties | Securities and click the Advanced tab.
- Click Edit to modify the permissions set for Organization Management group.
- Click to select Full Control, Receive As and Send As permissions and wait for replication.
- Click the Effective Permission tab and Select the name of the backup account.
- The backup account should display the following as selected:

Full Control

All Extended Rights

Send As

Receive As

• Start the PowerShell and type the following to add the backup account so it has full control over all the databases:

Get-MailboxDatabase -server (server name) | Add-ADPermission -user "backup account" -ExtendedRights Receive-As

Run the above PowerShell every time a new database is added.

 Navigate to the Exchange Management Console, right-click the <mailbox> and click Manage Full Access Permissions to view the mailbox listed under Full Access Permissions.

FOR EXCHANGE SERVER 2007

- Service account should be a member of Exchange Organization Administrators group.
- Ensure that the mail-enabled user is a member of the Local Administrator Group and have rights to all mailboxes on the server.

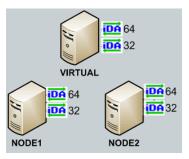
EXCHANGE AGENTS IN X64 CLUSTERS

When installing 32-bit agents on a x64 virtual server, the 32-bit File System *i*DataAgent must be installed on each physical node in the cluster prior to installing the 32-bit agents on the virtual server.

For example, to support a two-node cluster with one Exchange virtual server instance supporting both x64 and 32-bit Agents, a minimum of two installation instances (one 32-bit

and one x64) are required on the virtual server and each physical node. This configuration will result in six client objects in the CommCell console; three x64 instances and three 32-bit instances.

The sample image shown on the right illustrates the required configuration for installing 32-bit Exchange Agents in an x64 cluster.



INSTALL THE EXCHANGE DATABASE *i*DATAAGENT

The Exchange Database iDataAgent must be installed first. Follow the steps described below to install Exchange Database iDataAgent.

- Log on to the computer using an account with the following privileges:
 - Administrator of the local computer
 - Administrator of the Exchange Server
- 2. Run Setup.exe from Software Installation Package.
 - Select the required language.

Click Next.

1.

з.

4.	Select the option to Install Calypso on this 64-bit computer.
	NOTES:

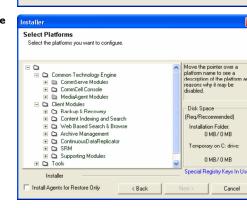
• Your screen may look different from the example shown.

5. Click Next.

6. Click OK.

Select the language you will use during installation.
English (United States)
Next > Cancel
 Install Software on this 64-bit computer Advanced options
View Install Quick Start Guide (Requires Adobe Acrobat Reader)
Install Adobe Acrobat Reader
🖨 Exit
Installer 🛛
Installer Welcome The Installer will guide you through the setup process for Software
Welcome The Installer will quide you through the
Welcome The Installer will guide you through the setup process for Software This program will install Software on your computer. It is strongly recommended that you exit all Windows programs before running this
Welcome The Installer will guide you through the setup process for Software This program will install Software on your computer.
Welcome The Installer will guide you through the setup process for Software This program will install Software on your computer. It is strongly recommended that you exit all Windows programs before running this Setup program. Dick Cancel to guit Setup and then close any programs ou have running. Lick
Welcome The Installer will guide you through the setup process for Software This program will install Software on your computer. It is strongly recommended that you exit all Windows programs before running this Setup program. Elick Cancel to guid Setup and then close any programs you have running. Elick Next to continue with Setup.
Welcome The Installer will guide you through the setup process for Software This program will install Software on your computer. It is strongly recommended that you exit all Windows programs before running this Setup program. Dick Cancel to quid Setup and then close any programs you have running. Dick Next to continue with Setup. WARNING: This program is protected by copyright law and international treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this program, and with environd on its may result in servere civit and criminal penalises, and will be program.
Welcome The Installer will guide you through the setup process for Software This program will install Software on your computer. It is strongly recommended that you exit all Windows programs before running this Setup program. Click Cancel to quil Setup and then close any programs you have running. Click Next to continue with Setup. WARNING: This program is protected by copyright law and international treaties. Unablight thorized reproduction or distribution of this program, or any portion of it, may result in servere civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.
Welcome The Installer will guide you through the setup process for Software This program will install Software on your computer. It is storgly recommended that you exit all Windows programs before running this Setup program. Dick Cancel to guid Setup and then close any programs you have running. Elick Next to continue with Setup. WARNING: This program is protected by copyright law and international treaties. Unsult in servere civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law. Installer
Welcome The Installer will guide you through the setup process for Software This program will install Software on your computer. It is strongly recommended that you exit all Windows programs before running this Setup program. Click Cancel to guid Setup and then close any programs you have running. Click Next to continue with Setup. WARNING: This program is protected by copyright law and international treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this program. or any portion of it. may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law. Installer
Welcome The Installer will guide you through the setup process for Software This program will install Software on your computer. It is strongly recommended that you exit all Windows programs before running this Setup program. Elick Cancel to guid Setup and then close any programs you have running. Elick Next to continue with Setup. WARNING: This program is protected by copyright law and international treates. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this program. or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law. Installer Installer

7. Select I accept the terms in the license agreement. License Agreement Click Next. Please read the following License Agreement. Press the PAGE DOWN key to view the entire agreement. End User License and Limited Warranty Agreement Software Release 9.0.0 (including Microsoft® SQL Server™ 2008 Enterprise Edition, SQL Server™ 2008 Express Edition and Windows Pre-Installation Environment) Fud Hoan I lanuas Ages • Laccept the terms in the license agreement. C I do not accept the terms in the license agreement Installer Next > Cancel < Back 8. Select Configure a Virtual Server. Cluster Type Selection Configure the Physical Node or a Virtual Server Click Next to continue. - Configuration Options C Configure the Physical node ○ Configure a ⊻irtual server < Back Cancel 9. Select the disk group in which the cluster group resides. nstalle Click Next to continue. Virtual Server Selection Select the virtual server you would like to configure Choose from the following list of disk groups configured on this cluster. 2003ClusterVMS -<<u>B</u>ack <u>N</u>ext> <u>C</u>ancel 10. Expand Client Modules | Exchange | File System and select Exchange Database iDataAgent. Select Platforms Select the platforms you want to configure.



11. If this computer and the CommServe is separated by a firewall, select the Configure firewall services option and then click Next.

For firewall options and configuration instructions, see Firewall Configuration and continue with the installation.

If firewall configuration is not required, click **Next**.

^

12. Enter the fully qualified domain name of the **CommServe Host Name**.

Click Next.

Do not use space and the following characters when specifying a new name for the CommServe Host Name:

\|`~!@#\$%^&*()+=<>/?,[]{}:;'"

13. Click Next.

14. Select Add programs to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List, to add CommCell programs and services to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List.

Click Next.

This option enables CommCell operations across Windows firewall by adding CommCell programs and services to Windows firewall exclusion list.

It is recommended to select this option even if Windows firewall is disabled. This will allow the CommCell programs and services to function if the Windows firewall is enabled at a later time.

15.	Click	Next
15.	Click	Next

NOTES

• It is recommended to select the Download latest update pack(s) option to automatically install the available updates during installation.

	ration
Configure firewall ser	
If there is a farmer of	which are the second the Course Course Course Course Town
in there is a firewall b	etween this machine and the CommServe, configure firewall services below.
Configure firewa	Il services
Connection from h	 Windows Firewall is limiting network traffic. Whether it is possible to open ere to a CommServe's tunnel port, whether all connections toward ocked, and setup should instead expect CommServe to connect back to this
CommServe are bl machine, or wheth	ocked, and setup should instead expect CommServe to connect back to this er there is a Proxy in between.
	an open connection to CommServe on tunnel port
	open connection toward this machine
C CommServe is n	eachable only through a proxy
Installer	
	Next > Cancel
staller	
ommServe Narr	
Specify the CommSe name	rve computer name and host
hane	
CommSarv	e Client Name
Commonia	
J	
CommServ (Enter a va	e Host Name Ilid, fully-qualified, IP host name; for example:
mycompute	er.mycompany.com)
mycompul	er. mycompany. com
Internet	
Installer	
in istalion	
staller	< Back Next> Cancel
staller ommunication I	
staller ommunication I	nterface Name
staller ommunication I	nterface Name
staller ommunication I	nterface Name he communication paths.
staller ommunication I	nterface Name he communication paths.
staller ommunication I	Interface Name the communication paths. Select a client name Select an interface name that this computer will use to
staller ommunication I	nterface Name he communication paths. Select a client name
staller ommunication I	Select a client name select a client name select a ninterface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe
staller ommunication I	he communication paths. Select a client name Select a client name Select an interface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe audi.mycompany.com
staller ommunication I	Select a client name select a client name select a ninterface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe
staller ommunication I	Select a client name Select a client name Select an interface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe audi.mycompany.com
staller ommunication I Setup will configure I	Select a client name Select a client name Select an interface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe audi.mycompany.com
staller ommunication I	terface Name the communication paths. Select a client name Select an interface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe audi.mycompany.com
staller ommunication I Setup will configure I	Select a client name Select a client name Select an interface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe audi.mycompany.com
staller ommunication I Setup will configure I	terface Name the communication paths. Select a client name Select an interface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe audi.mycompany.com
staller ommunication I Setup will configure I Setup will configure I	terface Name the communication paths. Select a client name Determined Select an intelface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe audi.mycompany.com
staller ommunication I Setup will configure I Setup will configure I Installer	te communication paths. Select a client name Select an interface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe audi.mycompany.com IP Address(es) for the selected host. < Back Next > Cancel
staller ommunication I Setup will configure I Installer Installer	terface Name the communication paths. Select a client name Select an interface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe audi.mycompany.com IP Address(es) for the selected host. Cancel Exclusion List
staller ommunication I Setup will configure I Installer Installer	te communication paths. Select a client name Select an interface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe audi.mycompany.com IP Address(es) for the selected host. < Back Next > Cancel
staller ommunication I Setup will configure I Installer Installer Staller Aindows Firewa Allow programs to co	
staller ommunication I Setup will configure I Installer Installer Staller Aindows Firewa Allow programs to co	terface Name the communication paths. Select a client name Select an interface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe audi.mycompany.com IP Address(es) for the selected host. Cancel Exclusion List mmunicate through Windows
staller ommunication I Setup will configure I Setup will configure I Installer Installer	terface Name the communication paths. Select a client name Select an interface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe audi.mycompany.com IP Address(es) for the selected host. Cancel Exclusion List mmunicate through Windows
staller ommunication I Setup will configure I Installer Installer Staller Findows Firewai Windows Firewa	te communication paths. Select a client name Select an interface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe audi.mycompany.com IP Address(es) for the selected host. Cancel Exclusion List mmunicate through Windows
staller ommunication I Setup will configure I Installer Installer Staller Findows Firewai Windows Firewa	Iterface Name the communication paths. Select a client name Select an interface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe audi.mycompany.com IP Address[ee] for the selected host. Iterface Interface Name Iterface
staller ommunication I Setup will configure I Setup will configure I Installer Installer Findows Firewa Mindows Firewa Windows Firewa Windows Firewa I vou plan on ur	Iterface Name the communication paths. Select a client name Select an interface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe audi.mycompany.com IP Address[ee] for the selected host. Iterface Interface Name Iterface
staller ommunication I Setup will configure I Setup will configure I Installer Installer Aldows Firewa Aldow Firewa Vindows Firewa	
staller ommunication I Setup will configure I Setup will configure I Installer Installer Findows Firewa Mindows Firewa Windows Firewa Windows Firewa I vou plan on ur	
staller ommunication I Setup will configure I Setup will configure I Installer Installer Findows Firewa Mindows Firewa Windows Firewa Windows Firewa I vou plan on ur	
staller ommunication I Setup will configure I Setup will configure I Installer Installer Findows Firewa Mindows Firewa Windows Firewa Windows Firewa I vou plan on ur	
staller ommunication I Setup will configure I Setup will configure I Installer Installer Findows Firewa Mindows Firewa Windows Firewa Windows Firewa I vou plan on ur	
staller ommunication I Setup will configure I Setup will configure I Installer Findows Firewa Alow programs to co Firewall Windows Firewa Windows Firewa I wou plan on us exclusion list.	
staller ommunication I Setup will configure I Setup will configure I Installer Installer Findows Firewa Mindows Firewa Windows Firewa Windows Firewa I vou plan on ur	Iterface Name the communication paths. Select a client name Select an interface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe aud.mycompany.com IP Address(ee) for the selected host. IP Address(ee) for the selected host. If Exclusion List mmunicate through Windows all is DN as to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List aing Windows Firewall. It is recommended to add the software programs to the
staller ommunication I Setup will configure I Setup will configure I Installer Findows Firewa Alow programs to co Firewall Windows Firewa Windows Firewa I wou plan on us exclusion list.	Iterface Name the communication paths. Select a client name Select an interface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe audi.mycompany.com IP Address(es) for the selected host. IER Address(es) for the selected host.

16.

17.

18.

	Installer
	Download and Install Latest Update Packs Download and Install the latest service pack and post pack from the software provider website.
	Download latest update pack(s) Make sure you have internet connectivity at this time. This process may take son depending on download speed.
	Installer CBack Next>
Verify the default location for software installation.	Installer
Click Browse to change the default location.	Destination Folder Select the destination folder to install the program files.
Click Next.	
 Do not install the software to a mapped network drive. Do not use the following characters when specifying the destination path: 	Click Next to accept the default location, or click Browse to choose an alternate Destination Folder
/:*?"<> #	
It is recommended that you use alphanumeric characters only.	Drive List C: \$28 MB Space Required / Recommended 1394 MB / 1570 MB
	Installer < BackNext >
Select a Client Group from the list.	Installer
Click Next.	Client Group Selection Select a client group for the client.
Click Next . This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the CommCell Console.	
This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the	Select a client group for the client. The Client Group is a logical grouping of client machines which have the same associations at various levels like
This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the	Select a client group for the client. The Client Group is a logical grouping of client machines which have the same associations at various levels like Schedule Policy. Activity Control, Security and Reports. Client group: None Selected clien_group Installer
This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the	Select a client group for the client. The Client Group is a logical grouping of client machines which have the same associations at various levels like Schedule Policy, Activity Control, Security and Reports. Client group: None Selected client_group
This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the	Select a client group for the client. The Client Group is a logical grouping of client machines which have the same associations at various levels like Schedule Policy. Activity Control, Security and Reports. Client group: None Selected clien_group Installer
This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the CommCell Console.	Select a client group for the client. The Client Group is a logical grouping of client machines which have the same associations at various levels like Schedule Policy, Activity Control, Security and Reports. Client group: None Selected client_group Installer
This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the CommCell Console.	Select a client group for the client. The Client Group is a logical grouping of client machines which have a secciations at various levels like Schedule Policy, Activity Control, Security and Reports. Client group: None Selected client_group Installer Installer Installer Schedule Install of Automatic Updates Choose when you want to schedule an install of the downloaded updates. Schedule Install of Automatic Updates
This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the CommCell Console.	Select a client group for the client. The Client Group is a logical grouping of client machines which have the same associations at various levels like Schedule Policy, Activity Control, Security and Reports. Client group: Installer Installer Installer Schedule Install of Automatic Updates Chocke when you want to schedule an install of the downloaded updates.
This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the CommCell Console.	Select a client group for the client. The Client Group is a logical grouping of client machines which have the same associations at various levels like Schedule Policy, Activity Control, Security and Reports. Client group: None Selected Client_group Installer Installer Installer Schedule Install of Automatic Updates Choose when you want to schedule an install of the downloaded updates. Schedule Install of Automatic Updates Conce C
This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the CommCell Console.	Select a client group for the client. The Client Group is a logical grouping of client machines which have associations at various levels like Schedule Policy. Activity Control, Security and Reports. Client group: Installer Installer Installer Installer Installer Installer Schedule Install of Automatic Updates Conce Con

19. Select a Storage Policy. Click Next.

X

e tim

Cancel

Cancel

Cancel

Cancel

X

		Storage Policy Selection
		Select a storage policy for the default subclient to be backed up.
		Configure for Laptop or Desktop Backup
		Select a storage policy from the pull-down list.
		Unassigned
		Installer Kenter Cancel Cancel
	If you do not have Storage Policy created, this message will be displayed.	Installar: Storage Policy Selection Select a plorage policy for the detault subolient to be
	Click OK .	Configure for Laptop or Desktop Backup
	You can create the Storage Policy later in step 31.	
		Installer Cancel
20.	Select the backup type for Exchange Database backups. Choose either of the	Installer
	following options, then click Next .	Exchange Backup Options Please select a default backup type
	• Differential - Specifies that each non-full Exchange Database backup secures all data that has changed since the last full backup. Transaction lobs are not purged.	
	 Incremental - Specifies that each non-full Exchange Database backup secures only that data that has changed since the last backup of any type. Committed transaction logs are purged. 	C Differential Backs up changes in the Information Store and Directory Service since the last Full backup, Does not purge the transaction logs.
		C Incremental Backs up changes in the Information Store and Directory Service ance the last Full backup on Incremental backup. The
		committed transaction logs are then purged.
		Installer Cancel
21.	Enter the user credentials to access the Exchange Server to perform the backup operation.	Enter Administrator account information Enter Administrator account information
	• The User Account must have Exchange Administrator privileges.	
	 The installation detects the domain name. If necessary, you can modify the domain name by specifying Windows domain that the 	Account Name:
	Exchange Server resides in.	Account Password:
		l Domain
		EXCH
		<u>Next</u> >
22.	Click Next.	Installer 🛛
		Summary Summary of install selections
		Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files.
		<u></u>
		Destination Path = C:Program Files CommSeve Host = mycomparty.com Interface Name = audi.mycompany.com Cient = audi Job Result: Path = C:Program Files/JobResults Global Files = U Se Cell evel policy
		Installer
		< Back Next> Cancel

23. The install program displays a reminder to verify that Circular Logging is disabled before performing any database backup operations. To verify that Circular Logging is

disabled:

- From Exchange System Manager, navigate to and expand the server that the Database *i*DataAgent is being installed on.
- Verify that the Circular Logging check box has not been selected for each Storage Group. If Circular Logging has been enabled for a Storage Group, disable it at this time.

Click OK.

24. To install the software on the remaining nodes of the cluster, click **Yes**.

To complete the install for this node only, click No.

25. Select cluster nodes from the **Preferred Nodes** list and click the arrow button to move them to the **Selected Nodes** list.

Once you complete your selections, click Next.

- The list of **Preferred Nodes** displays all the nodes found in the cluster; from this list you should only select cluster nodes configured to host this cluster group server.
- Do not select nodes that already have multiple instances installed.
- 26. Specify User Name and Password for the Domain Administrator account Information to perform the remote install on the cluster nodes you selected in the previous step.

Click Next.

27. The progress of the remote install for the cluster nodes is displayed; the install can be interrupted if necessary.

Click Stop to prevent installation to any nodes after the current ones complete.

Click **Advanced Settings** to specify any of the following:

- Maximum number of nodes on which Setup can run simultaneously.
- Time allocated for Setup to begin executing on each node, after which the install attempt will fail.
- Time allocated for Setup to complete on each node, after which the install attempt will fail.

If, during the remote install of a cluster node, setup fails to complete or is interrupted, you must perform a local install on that node. When you do, the install begins from where it left off, or from the beginning if necessary. For procedures, see Manually Installing the Software on a Passive Node.

Would you	like to install the softw	are on remaining noo	les on the cluster?	
~	Yes	No		
Installer				
Cluster Node Select Select cluster nodes to c				
Preferred Nodes	Selected	Nodes	Configured Node	
ymchates2 A	> < ~ ~ ~	× *	VMCLUSTER1	×
		N	ext > Ca	ncel
la stallar				
Installer Domain administrat		nation		
Please provide domain a	administrator account			
Domain Account I User Name [<d0 [LAB\Administrat Account Passwo</d0 	IMAIN\USER>]:			
	<u>8</u> a	ck <u>N</u> ext	> Cance	91 J
Installer				
You can stop remote ins	stall at any time. Installe	d clients will not be u	ininstalled. Clients in	
progress will continue in	stallation, but their resu	its will not show com	ecuy.	
Client Name Clie real2	ent Status 🔰 Sta	art Time End Tim	e Result Descripti	on
•				▶
Installed successfully: Failed to install:	0	Left to install: In progress:	1 0 Max 1	<u>_</u>
		Estimated		
Elapsed time: 0 sec			Stop	
Installer]			
Installer				

Please verify that Orcular Logging is disabled before perfor backup operations.

ОК

ng any database

28. Read the summary for remote installation to verify that all selected nodes were

installed successfully.

Click Next.

staller	×
Results	
Remote install results	
Summary of remote install	
The following software (Version) were s	elected to be installed:
+ CommCell	
REAL2: Install succeeded.	
न	▼ ▶
	Einish
staller	X
chedule Reminder	
Job schedule creation reminder	
Please note:	
You still need to create a Joh Schedu	le for each iDataAgent that has been installed on
this client computer.	
Job Schedules are required to allow th	he iDataAgents to perform automated backup
and restore operations.	and a second second
lah Cahadula anatian ang ka arawa	plished through the CommCell Console
administration interface.	pisited a rough are connices console
Installer	
	[Next>]
	_
taller	× * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * *
ompletion Report	
Setup complete	
Software installation completed successfully	<i>.</i>
/isit the website below to download latest U	Ipdates and Service Packs.
Click Finish to complete Setup.	
and the second second	
	<u>*</u>
	_
Installer Technical Support Website	Existe

29. Click Next.

30. Click Finish.



If you already have a storage policy selected in step 19, Click Next > button available at the bottom of the page to proceed to the **Configuration** section.

If any node installation fails, you must manually install the software on that node once the current installation is complete. See Manually Installing the Software on a Passive Node for step-by-step instructions.
The message displayed on your screen will reflect the status of the selected nodes, and may look different from the example.

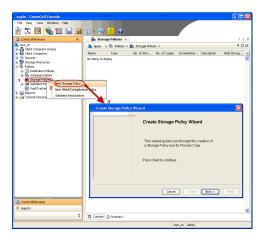
If you do not have Storage Policy created, continue with the following step.

31. Create a Storage Policy:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to **Policies**.
- 2. Right-click the Storage Policies and then click New Storage Policy.
- 3. Follow the prompts displayed in the Storage Policy Wizard. The required options are mentioned below:
 - Select the Storage Policy type as Data Protection and Archiving and click Next.
 - Enter the name in the Storage Policy Name box and click Next.
 - From the **Library** list, click the name of a disk library to which the primary copy should be associated and then click **Next**.

Ensure that you select a library attached to a MediaAgent operating in the current release.

- From the **MediaAgent** list, click the name of a MediaAgent that will be used to create the primary copy and then click **Next**.
- For the device streams and the retention criteria information, click Next to accept default values.
- $\circ~$ Select Yes to enable deduplication for the primary copy.
- From the **MediaAgent** list, click the name of the MediaAgent that will be used to store the Deduplication store.



Type the name of the folder in which the deduplication database must be located in the Deduplication Store Location or click the Browse button to select the folder and then click **Next**.

 $\circ~$ Review the details and click Finish to create the Storage Policy.

32.

- Enable the following registry key to create job specific profiles:
 - From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers.
 - Right-click the <Client> in which you want to add the registry key, and then click
 - Properties.Click the Registry Key Settings tab.
 - Click Add.
 - Enter CreateProcessSpecificProfile in the Name field.
 - Enter MSExchangeMBAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).
 Enter MSExchangeDMAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox
 - iDataAgent).
 - Enter REG_DWORD in the Type filed.
 - Enter 1 to enable and 0 to disable the key in the Value field.
 - Click OK.

INSTALL THE EXCHANGE AGENTS

The Windows File System iDataAgent must be first installed onto all of the physical nodes of the cluster. See Install the Microsoft Windows File System iDataAgent if you have not installed it on all of the physical nodes.

Once it has been installed onto the physical nodes, the Exchange Agents (such as Exchange Mailbox *i*DataAgent, Exchange Public Folder *i*DataAgent, Exchange Mailbox Archiver and/or Exchange Public Folder Archiver) and Windows File System *i*DataAgent can be installed from the active node to the virtual server using the following steps described below to install Exchange Agents.

The software can also be automatically installed on all available passive nodes when the software is installed onto the virtual server, or you can choose to install any passive node(s) separately.

CREATE THE REGISTRY KEYS

Before installing the Exchange Agents, create the bAllowMultiInstances and bAllow32BitInstallOn64Bit registry keys.

1. Create the bAllowMultiInstances registry key.

To create the registry key, see the following steps:

- 1. Start the Registry Editor (Regedit.exe or Redegt32.exe)
- Locate the directory under which you want to create a key, e.g., HKEY LOCAL MACHINE\SOFTWARE\.
- 3. Right click the SOFTWARE and click **New -> Key**.
- 4. Name the key as GalaxyInstallerFlags.
- 5. Right click the GalaxyInstallerFlags and select New -> DWORD value, name it as bAllowMultiInstances and by double clicking the bAllowMultiInstances key modify the Value data to 1.

2. Create the bAllow32BitInstallOn64Bit registry key.

- To create the registry key, see the following steps:
- 1. Start the Registry Editor (Regedit.exe or Regedit32.exe)
- Locate the directory under which you want to create a key, e.g., HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Wow6432Node.
- 3. Right click the SOFTWARE and click New -> Key.
- 4. Name the key as GalaxyInstallerFlags.
- 5. Right click the GalaxyInstallerFlags and select New -> DWORD value, name it as bAllow32BitInstallOn64Bit and by double clicking the bAllow32BitInstallOn64Bit key modify the Value data to 1.

INSTALL PROCEDURE

Log on to the computer using an account with the following privileges:
 Administrator of the local computer

- Administrator of the Exchange Server
- 2. Run **Setup.exe** from Software Installation Package.
- Select the required language.
 Click Next.

- 4. Select the Calypso 32-bit Software install options to install software.
 NOTES
 - This screen will only appear when the bAllow32BitInstallOn64Bit registry key has been created and enabled on this computer.

5. Click Next.

- 6. Click OK.
- 7. Select I accept the terms in the license agreement. Click Next.

8. Select **Create a new instance** option to install the Exchange Agents on separate instance.

Administration Guide - Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent

NOTES

- This screen will appear when the bAllowMultiInstances registry key has enabled on this computer.
- This screen will not appear if no other software components are installed on the computer.

Select Configure a Virtual Server.
 Click Next to continue.

 Select the disk group in which the cluster group resides. Click Next to continue.

- 11. To install the Exchange *i*DataAgents expand Client Modules | Exchange, and select one or more of the following:
 - Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent
 - Exchange Public Folder iDataAgent

To install the **Exchange Archiver Agents**, expand **Client Modules | Archive Management**, and select one or more of the following:

- Exchange Compliance Archiver
- Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent
- Exchange Public Folder Archiver Agent

Click Next.

Note that the Exchange Database *i*DataAgents must be installed on the Exchange Server, see Install the Exchange Database *i*DataAgent for step-by-step procedure.

 If this computer and the CommServe is separated by a firewall, select the Configure firewall services option and then click Next.

For firewall options and configuration instructions, see Firewall Configuration and continue with the installation.

If firewall configuration is not required, click Next.

Installer	
	ce Selection the instance you want to use during
	Instance Selection
	Create a new instance (Not recommended)
	C Install to existing instance
	Select an installed instance.
	×
	Client Name
	Client Host Name
	CommServe Name
	Commonwervervanie
Install	fr
mada	<pre></pre>
Installer	▲
Cluster Type Configure the	Selection Physical Node or a Virtual Server
Cor	figuration Options
0	Configure the Physical node
	Configure a Virtual server
-	
	< Back (Next> Cancel
Installer	\mathbf{X}
Virtual Serv	rer Selection
Select the vir	tual server you would like to configure
	Choose from the following list of disk groups
	configured on this cluster.
	2003ClusterVMS
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext> <u>C</u> ancel
Installer	
	IIIIS
Select Platfo	ITTTS forms you want to configure.
Select Platfo	
Select Platfo Select the plat	forms you want to configure.
Select Platfo Select the plat	forms you want to configure. Move the pointer over a platform name to see a consortierum Mont dee
Select Platfo Select the plat	forms you want to configure. Move the pointer over a platform name to see a commServe Modules commSel Console disabled.
Select Platfo Select the plat	forms you want to configure. Imon Technology Engine CommServe Modules CommServe Modules CommCell Console Modelsagert Modules
Select the plat	forms you want to configure. Imon Technology Engine CommServe Modules CommCell Controle ModeAgent Modules th Modules Rockup & Recovery Disk Space
Select Platfo Select the plat C Con C Con	forms you want to configure.
Select Platfic Select the plat	forme you want to configure. Move the pointer over a platform name to see a description of the platform and reactine. mon Technology Engine CommServe Modules Move the pointer over a platform name to see a description of the platform and reactine. CommCell Console Mediakagent Modules Move the pointer over a platform name to see a description of the platform and reactine. Backup A Recovery Disk Space Content Indexing and Search Disk Space Web Based Search & Browne Archive Management Installation Folder: A Mol
Select Platfic Select the plat © Con 0 Con	torms you want to configure. Move the pointer over a platform name to see a description of the platform name to see a description of the platform and the diaAgent Modules CommCell Connole MediaAgent Modules Redurp & Recovery Centern Indesing and Search Web Based Search & Browce Installation Folder: OMB/0 MB

Installer

Install Agents for Restore Only

< Back

Special Registry Keys In Use

Cancel

13.	Enter t	ne ruily	qualified	domain	name	or the	CommServe	HOST	Name.

Enter the fully Click **Next**.

. .

Do not use space and the following characters when specifying a new name for the CommServe Host Name:

c . . .

~

.......

\|`~!@#\$%^&*()+=<>/?,[]{}:;'"

1.6.1.1

14. Click Next.

If there is any other instance installed on the computer, make sure that the host name does not match the client name entered in the **Select a client name** field in the previous instance.

15. Select **Add programs to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List**, to add CommCell programs and services to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List.

Click Next.

This option enables CommCell operations across Windows firewall by adding CommCell programs and services to Windows firewall exclusion list.

It is recommended to select this option even if Windows firewall is disabled. This will allow the CommCell programs and services to function if the Windows firewall is enabled at a later time.

	mServe are bloc hine, or whether	ked, and setup s there is a Proxy i	hould instead expe n between.		nect back to this
			to CommServe on		
			toward this machine		
O D	ommServe is rea		igh a proxy		
	Installer			Next>	Cancel
Installe					
	Serve Name				
Specify		; e computer name	e and host		
name					
	CommServe	Client Name			
	CommServe	Host Name	^o host name; for exa		
	(Enter a valic mycomputer.	t, fully-qualified, IF mycompany.com	^o host name; for exa I	ample:	
		r. mycompany. con			
	Ingeomparei				
	Installer		< Back	Next>	Cancel
				HGM7	
Installe					×
		terface Name e communication			
		Salact a client :	ame		
		Select a client r	name	•	
		audi_on		•	
		audi_on			
		audi on Select an interf- communicate w	ace name that this (ith the CommServe	computer will use to	
		audi_on	ace name that this (ith the CommServe		
		audi_cn Select an interficommunicate w	ace name that this (ith the CommServe	computer will use to	
		audi_cn Select an interficommunicate w	ace name that this i ith the CommServe ty.com	computer will use to	
		audi_cn Select an interficommunicate w	ace name that this i ith the CommServe ty.com	computer will use to	
	Installer	audi_cn Select an interficommunicate w	ace name that this with the CommServe w.com for the selected hos	computer will use to	Carrel
	Installer	audi_cn Select an interficommunicate w	ace name that this i ith the CommServe ty.com	computer will use to	Cancel
		audi_cn Select an interficommunicate w	ace name that this with the CommServe w.com for the selected hos	computer will use to	Cancel
Installer	,	Jaudi en Select an interf. communicate w Jaudi.mycompar IP Address(es)	ace name that this the CommServe y, com for the selected hos < Back	computer will use to	Cancel
Windo	, ws Firewall	Euclien Select an interf. communicate w eucli.mycompar IP Address(es) Exclusion Lit	ace name that this with the CommServe y.com for the selected hos < Back	computer will use to	Cancel
Windo	, ws Firewall	Jaudi en Select an interf. communicate w Jaudi.mycompar IP Address(es)	ace name that this with the CommServe y.com for the selected hos < Back	computer will use to	Cancel
Windo Allow p Firewa	ws Firewall Inograms to com	Exclusion Lit	ace name that this with the CommServe y.com for the selected hos < Back	computer will use to	Cancel
Windo Allow p Firewa	, ws Firewall	Exclusion Lit	ace name that this with the CommServe y.com for the selected hos < Back	computer will use to	Cancel
Windo Allow p Firewa	y ws Firewall programs to com II	Exclusion Limunicate through	ace name that this with the CommServe y.com for the selected hos < Back	t.	Cancel
Windo Allow p Firewa	ws Firewall rograms to com I indows Firewall Add programs	Exclusion IP Address(es) Exclusion Lit municate through is ON to the Windows I	ace name that this, with the CommServe y, com for the selected hose of the selected hose st Windows	st	
Windo Allow p Firewa	ws Firewall rograms to com I indows Firewall Add programs	Exclusion IP Address(es) Exclusion Lit municate through is ON to the Windows I	ace name that this, with the CommServe y, com for the selected hose of the selected hose st Windows	t.	
Windo Allow p Firewa	ws Firewall rograms to com I indows Firewall Add programs	Exclusion IP Address(es) Exclusion Lit municate through is ON to the Windows I	ace name that this, with the CommServe y, com for the selected hose of the selected hose st Windows	st	
Windo Allow p Firewa	ws Firewall rograms to com I indows Firewall Add programs	Exclusion IP Address(es) Exclusion Lit municate through is ON to the Windows I	ace name that this, with the CommServe y, com for the selected hose of the selected hose st Windows	st	
Windo Allow p Firewa	ws Firewall rograms to com I indows Firewall Add programs	Exclusion IP Address(es) Exclusion Lit municate through is ON to the Windows I	ace name that this, with the CommServe y, com for the selected hose of the selected hose st Windows	st	
Windo Allow p Firewa	ws Firewall wograms to com i indows Firewall Add programs you plan on usin clusion list.	Exclusion IP Address(es) Exclusion Lit municate through is ON to the Windows I	ace name that this, with the CommServe y, com for the selected hose of the selected hose st Windows	st	
Windo Allow p Firewa	ws Firewall rograms to com I indows Firewall Add programs	Exclusion IP Address(es) Exclusion Lit municate through is ON to the Windows I	ace name that this is the ConnServe w.com for the selected hos est Windows	t.	s programs to the
Windo Allow p Firewa	ws Firewall wograms to com i indows Firewall Add programs you plan on usin clusion list.	Exclusion IP Address(es) Exclusion Lit municate through is ON to the Windows I	ace name that this, with the CommServe y, com for the selected hose of the selected hose st Windows	st	

If there is a firewall between this machine and the CommServe, configure firewall services below.

Installer Firewall Configuration Configure firewall services

Configure firewall services

16. Click Next.

17.

18.

19.

	Installer
	Download and Install Latest Update Packs Download and Install the latest service pack and post pack from the software provider website.
	Download latest update pack(s) Make sure you have internet connectivity at this time. This process may take som depending on download speed.
	Installer < Back Next >
Verify the default location for software installation.	Installer
Click Browse to change the default location.	Destination Folder Select the destination folder to install the program files.
Click Next.	
 Do not install the software to a mapped network drive. Do not use the following characters when specifying the destination path: 	Click Next to accept the default location, or click Browse to choose an alternate Destination Folder
/:*?"<> #	
It is recommended that you use alphanumeric characters only.	Drive List C: 928 MB Installer
	< Back Next >
Select a Client Group from the list.	Installer
Click Next.	Client Group Selection Select a client group for the client.
This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the CommCell Console.	The Client Group is a logical grouping of client machines which have the same associations at various levels like Schedule Policy, Activity Control, Security and Reports.
	None Selected client_group
	Installer
Click Next.	Installer
	Schedule Install of Automatic Updates Choose when you want to schedule an install of the downloaded updates.
	✓ Schedule Install of Automatic Updates
	C Once Time: 08:31:12 PM *
	Weekly Monday C Tuesday
	C Wednesday C Thursday C Friday C Saturday
	C Sunday
	Installer Kack Next >

20. Select a Storage Policy. Click Next.

Cancel

Cancel

Cancel

Cancel

X

in.

To install the software on the remaining nodes of the cluster, click $\ensuremath{\textbf{Yes}}$.

24.

		Installer
		Storage Policy Selection
		Select a storage policy for the default subclient to be backed up.
		Configure for Laptop or Desktop Backup
		Select a storage policy from the pull-down list.
		Unassigned 🔽
		Installer
		< Back Next > Cancel
	If you do not have Storage Policy created, this message will be displayed.	Installer Storage Policy Selection
	Click OK .	Select a storage policy for the default subclient to be backed up.
		Configure for Laptop or Desktop Backup
	You can create the Storage Policy later in step 31.	
		Installer < Back Next > Cancel
21	Colort Evaluation Convex Name and Evaluation Convex Version from dran down	Installer
21.	Select Exchange Server Name and Exchange Server Version from drop-down list.	Exchange Server Name
	Click Next.	Please provide Exchange server name
	This screen will appear when you are installing Exchange	
	Agents on Non-Exchange Server.	Exchange Server
		Exchange Server Name:
		Exchange_Server
		Exchange Server Version
		Exchange 2007
		Installer (Back Next) Cancel
		Installer <u>Cancel</u>
22.	Click Next .	
22.	Click Next .	<u> < ₿ack</u> <u>N</u> ext> <u>C</u> ancel
22.	Click Next.	Kext > Cancel Installer Summary Summary Summary of install selections
22.	Click Next.	< <u>Back</u> <u>Next></u> <u>Cancel</u> Installer Summary
22.	Click Next .	Kext > Cancel Installer Cancel Summary Summary Summary Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the
22.	Click Next.	Kext> Cancel Installer Summary Summary Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files.
22.	Click Next.	Kext> Cancel Installer Summary Summary Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files.
22.	Click Next.	Kext> Cancel Installer Summary Summary Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. Destination Path = C-Vprogram Files.h CommServe Host = repromputer reprompany.com Interface Name = aud.mycompany.com
22.	Click Next.	Kext> Cancel Installer Summary Summary Summary Summary Summary Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. Destination Path = C.\Program Files\ CommSorve Host = mpcomputer mpcompary.com Interface Name = audit mpcompary.com
22.	Click Next.	<
22.	Click Next.	< Back
		< Back Next> Cancel Installer Summary Summary of install selections Subp has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying lifes. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying lifes. Destination Path = C:\Program Files\ CommServe Host = impcomputer.mpcompary.com Interface Name = audi.mpcompary.com Use Herse = Use Cell evel policy Image: Cancel Installer < Back Next> Cancel
22.	Enter the following Exchange Administrator information then click Next .	< Back Next> Cancel Installer Summary Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. Destination Path = C:\Program Files\ CommServe Host = mycomputer mycompany.com Interface Name = audi.mycompany.com Lick Texts Click Texts Click Texts Click Texts Job Pesuits Path = C:\Program Files\UobResuits Click Texts Click Texts Lick Texts Click Texts Click Texts Click Texts Installer Eack Next> Cancel
	Enter the following Exchange Administrator information then click Next . • Account Name - Domain user account created with the exchange server	<back< td=""> Next> Cancel Installar Summary Summary of install selections Subscription Sature has enough information to start copping the program files. If you are satisfied with the install seletings, click Next to begin copping lite. If you are satisfied with the install selections Destination Path = C.\Program Files\ CommServe Host = mycomputer.mycompany.com Interface Name = audi.mycompany.com Destination Path = C.\Program Files\ Company Files\ Image Callelevel policy Ubert = audi Job Results Path = C.\Program Files\ Image Installer < Back Next> Cancel Installer < Back Next> Cancel Exchange Administrator Account Information Information Information</back<>
	 Enter the following Exchange Administrator information then click Next. Account Name - Domain user account created with the exchange server administrator permissions. Do not include the domain name here. 	< Back Next> Cancel Installer Summary Summary Summary Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to stat copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. Destination Path = C-QProgram Files/A Commission Heath = repromptive mycompany.com Licent = aud Job Results Path = C-VProgram Files/AbDRiesults Global Filters = Use Cell level policy Installer < Back Next> Installer Cancel
	 Enter the following Exchange Administrator information then click Next. Account Name - Domain user account created with the exchange server administrator permissions. Do not include the domain name here. Account Password - The password assigned to the domain user. 	<back< td=""> Next> Cancel Installer Summary Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. Destination Path = C.\Program Files\ CommServe Host = mycomputer.mycom Interface Name = audi mycompany.com Client = audi Job Results Path = C.\Program Files\UbDResults Clichal Filets = Use Cell level policy Installer Change Administrator Account Information Malibox and Profile information Please enter the Exchange account Information required below. A new profile will be created with</back<>
	 Enter the following Exchange Administrator information then click Next. Account Name - Domain user account created with the exchange server administrator permissions. Do not include the domain name here. Account Password - The password assigned to the domain user. Mailbox Name for this Account - Mailbox associated with the user above. 	<back< td=""> Next> Cancel Installer Summary Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. Destination Path = C.\Program Files\ CommServe Host = mycomputer.mycom lineface. Next to begin copying files. Destination Path = C.\Program Files\ Destination Path = C.\Program Files\ Destination Path = C.\Program Files\UobFilesults Diob Filest Path - C.\Program Files\UobFilesults Diob Filest Path - C.\Program Files\UobFilesults Dioba Filest Path - C.\Program Files\UobFilesults Mailbox and Profile information Mailbox and Profile information Please enter the Exchange account information required below. A new profile wi</back<>
	 Enter the following Exchange Administrator information then click Next. Account Name - Domain user account created with the exchange server administrator permissions. Do not include the domain name here. Account Password - The password assigned to the domain user. 	<back< td=""> Next> Cancel Installar Summary Summary of install selections Support of the sensitive of the program files. If you are satisfied with the install selections Destination Path = C.\Program Files\ CommServe Host = mycomputer.mycompary.com Interface Name = audi mycompary.com Thereface Name = audi mycompary.com Ubertination Path = C.\Program Files\ CommServe Host = mycomputer.mycompary.com Destination Files = Use Cell level policy Image: Cancel Installer < Back</back<>
	 Enter the following Exchange Administrator information then click Next. Account Name - Domain user account created with the exchange server administrator permissions. Do not include the domain name here. Account Password - The password assigned to the domain user. Mailbox Name for this Account - Mailbox associated with the user above. Profile Name - Specify profile name to be created during agent install. This profile is associated with the domain user's mailbox. Exchange Server Name - Name of the Exchange Server that the agent will 	<back< td=""> Next> Cancel Installer Summary Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. Destination Path = C.\Program Files\ CommServe Host = mycomputer.mycom lineface. Next to begin copying files. Destination Path = C.\Program Files\ Destination Path = C.\Program Files\ Destination Path = C.\Program Files\UobFilesults Diob Filest Path - C.\Program Files\UobFilesults Diob Filest Path - C.\Program Files\UobFilesults Dioba Filest Path - C.\Program Files\UobFilesults Mailbox and Profile information Mailbox and Profile information Please enter the Exchange account information required below. A new profile wi</back<>
	 Enter the following Exchange Administrator information then click Next. Account Name - Domain user account created with the exchange server administrator permissions. Do not include the domain name here. Account Password - The password assigned to the domain user. Mailbox Name for this Account - Mailbox associated with the user above. Profile Name - Specify profile name to be created during agent install. This profile is associated with the domain user's mailbox. 	<back< td=""> Next> Cancel Installer Summary Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. Destination Path = C-VProgram Files/ CommSorve Host = nycomputer mycompany.com If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. Use Results Path = C-VProgram Files/VoOBFeults Client = audi If you are satisfied with the information Piles VoOBFeults Use Results Path = C-VProgram Files/VoOBFeults Client = audi If you are satisfied with the information Installer Sack Next> Cancel Installer Sack Next> Cancel Mailoxs and Prolie information Pilease enter the Exchange account information required below. A new profile will be created with the information supplied. Account Name: Account Name: <</back<>
	 Enter the following Exchange Administrator information then click Next. Account Name - Domain user account created with the exchange server administrator permissions. Do not include the domain name here. Account Password - The password assigned to the domain user. Mailbox Name for this Account - Mailbox associated with the user above. Profile Name - Specify profile name to be created during agent install. This profile is associated with the domain user's mailbox. Exchange Server Name - Name of the Exchange Server that the agent will communicate with for data protection and recovery operations. For Exchange Server 2010, enter the Client Access Role. After installation 	<back< td=""> Next> Cancel Installer Summary Summary of install selections Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. Destination Path = C-VProgram Files/ CormoServe Host = mocmputer, mycompary.com Client = audi Job Results Path = C-VProgram Files/VobResults Client = audi Verogram Files/VobResults Client = C-VProgram Files/VobResults Cancel Installer Verogram Files/VobResults Clobal Filters = Use Cell level policy Verogram Files/VobResults Malbox and Police information Malbox and Police information Malbox and Police information Provide Name: Provide Name: Provide Name:</back<>
	 Enter the following Exchange Administrator information then click Next. Account Name - Domain user account created with the exchange server administrator permissions. Do not include the domain name here. Account Password - The password assigned to the domain user. Mailbox Name for this Account - Mailbox associated with the user above. Profile Name - Specify profile name to be created during agent install. This profile is associated with the domain user's mailbox. Exchange Server Name - Name of the Exchange Server that the agent will communicate with for data protection and recovery operations. For Exchange Server 2010, enter the Client Access Role. After installation configure the roles as described in Configure Mailboxes in Database Availability 	<back< td=""> Next> Cancel Installer Summary Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. Destination Path = C-VProgram Files/ CommSorve Host = nycomputer mycompany.com If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. Use Results Path = C-VProgram Files/VoOBFeults Client = audi If you are satisfied with the information Piles VoOBFeults Use Results Path = C-VProgram Files/VoOBFeults Client = audi If you are satisfied with the information Installer Sack Next> Cancel Installer Sack Next> Cancel Mailoxs and Prolie information Pilease enter the Exchange account information required below. A new profile will be created with the information supplied. Account Name: Account Name: <</back<>
	 Enter the following Exchange Administrator information then click Next. Account Name - Domain user account created with the exchange server administrator permissions. Do not include the domain name here. Account Password - The password assigned to the domain user. Mailbox Name for this Account - Mailbox associated with the user above. Profile Name - Specify profile name to be created during agent install. This profile is associated with the domain user's mailbox. Exchange Server Name - Name of the Exchange Server that the agent will communicate with for data protection and recovery operations. For Exchange Server 2010, enter the Client Access Role. After installation 	<back< td=""> Next> Cancel Installer Summary Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. Destination Path = C-VProgram Files/ CommSorve Host = nycomputer mycompany.com If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. Use Results Path = C-VProgram Files/VoOBFeults Client = audi If you are satisfied with the information Piles VoOBFeults Use Results Path = C-VProgram Files/VoOBFeults Client = audi If you are satisfied with the information Installer Sack Next> Cancel Installer Sack Next> Cancel Mailoxs and Prolie information Pilease enter the Exchange account information required below. A new profile will be created with the information supplied. Account Name: Account Name: <</back<>

X

×

×

To complete the install for t	this node only, click No .
-------------------------------	-----------------------------------

25. Select cluster nodes from the **Preferred Nodes** list and click the arrow button to move them to the **Selected Nodes** list.

Once you complete your selections, click Next.

- The list of **Preferred Nodes** displays all the nodes found in the cluster; from this list you should only select cluster nodes configured to host this cluster group server.
- Do not select nodes that already have multiple instances installed.

Yes	No
Installer Cluster Node Selection Select cluster nodes to configure	
Preferred Nodes Selected N vmckuter2 > <	odes Configured Nodes

Would you like to install the software on remaining nodes on the cluster?

2

26. Specify User Name and Password for the Domain Administrator account Information to perform the remote install on the cluster nodes you selected in the previous step.

Click Next.

27.	The progress of the remote install for the cluster nodes is displayed; the install can be
	interrupted if necessary.

Click **Stop** to prevent installation to any nodes after the current ones complete.

Click **Advanced Settings** to specify any of the following:

- Maximum number of nodes on which Setup can run simultaneously.
- Time allocated for Setup to begin executing on each node, after which the install attempt will fail.
- Time allocated for Setup to complete on each node, after which the install attempt will fail.

If, during the remote install of a cluster node, setup fails to complete or is interrupted, you must perform a local install on that node. When you do, the install begins from where it left off, or from the beginning if necessary. For procedures, see Manually Installing the Software on a Passive Node.

ostal	le e	

Domain administrator account information

Please provide domain admir

LAB \Administrator

Domain Account Information

mstatter					· (_
	te install at any time. Ins ue installation, but their				
Client Name	Client Status	Start Time	End Time	Result Description	
real2				F	
				•	
Installed successfi Failed to install:	ully: 0		oinstall: 🛛	1 0 Max 1 🚔	
Elapsed time:	0 sec	F	- Stimated time	left 10 min 0 sec	
Installer					
Advanced Settin	igs			Stop	
nstaller					
Number of	simultaneous remote m	hachines to run	Setup: 10	machines	
Time to wa	it for Setup to start on	each remote m	achine: 2	÷ minutes	
Time to wait for	r Setup to complete on	each remote m	achine: 15	÷ minutes	
		<u>K</u>]			

< <u>B</u>ack

Cancel

28. Read the summary for remote installation to verify that all selected nodes were installed successfully.

Click Next.

- If any node installation fails, you must manually install the software on that node once the current installation is complete. See Manually Installing the Software on a Passive Node for step-by-step instructions.
- The message displayed on your screen will reflect the status of the selected nodes, and may look different from the example.

29. Click Next.

30. Click Finish.

Installer	X
Results	
Remote install results	
Summary of remote install	
The following software (Version) were selected to be installed:	A
+ CommCell	<u></u>
REAL2: Install succeeded.	
	-
1	
	(<u>E</u> inish
	~
istaller	
Schedule Reminder	
Job schedule creation reminder	
Please note:	
You still need to create a Job Schedule for each iD ataAgent that ha	s been installed on
this client computer.	
Job Schedules are required to allow the iDataAgents to perform auto and restore operations.	mated backup
Job Schedule creation can be accomplished through the CommCell administration interface.	Console
Installer	
	[<u>N</u> ext >
nstaller	
Completion Report Setup complete	
a a sub a a sub a a a	
Software installation completed successfully.	<u></u>
Visit the website below to download latest Updates and Service Packs.	
Click Finish to complete Setup.	
	+
1	<u> </u>
Installer	
Technical Support Website	Einish

3

If you already have a storage policy selected in step 20, Click Next > button available at the bottom of the page to proceed to the **Configuration** section.

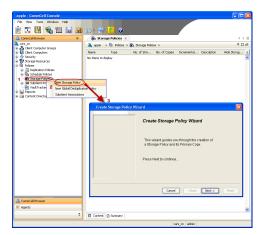
If you do not have Storage Policy created, continue with the following step.

31. Create a Storage Policy:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to **Policies**.
- 2. Right-click the Storage Policies and then click New Storage Policy.
- 3. Follow the prompts displayed in the Storage Policy Wizard. The required options are mentioned below:
 - Select the Storage Policy type as Data Protection and Archiving and click Next.
 - Enter the name in the Storage Policy Name box and click Next.
 - From the **Library** list, click the name of a disk library to which the primary copy should be associated and then click **Next**.

Ensure that you select a library attached to a MediaAgent operating in the current release.

- From the **MediaAgent** list, click the name of a MediaAgent that will be used to create the primary copy and then click **Next**.
- For the device streams and the retention criteria information, click Next to accept default values.
- $\circ~$ Select Yes to enable deduplication for the primary copy.
- From the **MediaAgent** list, click the name of the MediaAgent that will be used to store the Deduplication store.



Type the name of the folder in which the deduplication database must be located in the Deduplication Store Location or click the Browse button to select the folder and then click ${\bf Next}.$

 $\circ\;$ Review the details and click Finish to create the Storage Policy.

32.

- Enable the following registry key to create job specific profiles:
 - From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers.
 - Right-click the <Client> in which you want to add the registry key, and then click Properties.
 - Click the Registry Key Settings tab.
 - Click Add.
 - Enter CreateProcessSpecificProfile in the Name field.
 - Enter MSExchangeMBAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

 $\ensuremath{\mathsf{Enter}}$ MSExchangeDMAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

- Enter REG_DWORD in the Type filed.
- Enter 1 to enable and 0 to disable the key in the Value field.
- Click OK.

Previous Next >

Install the 32-bit Exchange Agents on a Non-Exchange Server

< Previous Next >

The following procedure describes the steps involved in installing the 32-bit Exchange Agents on 32-bit Non-Exchange Server computer.

WHERE TO INSTALL

The 32-bit Exchange Agents can be installed on a separate computer with connectivity to the Exchange Server. This method is referred to as an Non-Exchange Server installation and is useful if you want to offload the memory and processing resources required for backups and restores from the Exchange Server.

INSTALLATION

The software can be installed using one of the following methods:

METHOD 1: INTERACTIVE INSTALL

Use this procedure to directly install the software from the installation package or a **System Requirements** network drive.

METHOD 2: INSTALL SOFTWARE FROM COMMCELL CONSOLE

Use this procedure to remotely install the software on a client computer.

RELATED TOPICS

Download Software Packages Provides step-by-step procedure to download the latest packages for software install.

System Requirements Verify that the computer in which you wish to install the software satisfies the System Requirements.

Firewall

Provides comprehensive information on firewall.

PREREQUISITES

The below mentioned prerequisites are for Mailbox Agents only. Ensure that you have the following:

- Service account is a member of Exchange Organization Administrators group.
- The mail-enabled user is a member of the Local Administrator Group and have rights to all mailboxes on the server.
- Ensure that you assign full access to all mailboxes on the server. For details, see How do I Assign Full Access to All Mailboxes on a Server.

METHOD 1: INTERACTIVE INSTALL

- 1. Log on to the computer using an account with the following privileges:
 - Administrator of the local computer
 - Administrator of the Exchange Server
- 2. Run Setup.exe from Software Installation Package.
- 3. Select the required language.

Click Next.

Select the language you will use during installation.	
English (United States)	
Next >	Cancel
Install Software on this computer	
Advanced options	
View documentation website	
View Install Quick Start Guide (Requires Adobe Acrobat Reader)	
Install Adobe Acrobat Reader	
	⊜ Exit

- 4. Select the option to Install Calypso on this computer. NOTES:
 - Your screen may look different from the example shown.

5. Select I accept the terms in the license agreement. Click Next. 6. Select **Create a new instance** option to install the Exchange Agents on separate instance for the purpose of different Exchange Servers.

NOTES

- This screen will appear when the bAllowMultiInstances registry key has enabled on this computer.
- This screen will not appear if no other software components are installed on the computer.
- 7. To install the **Exchange** *i***DataAgents** expand **Client Modules | Exchange**, and select one or more of the following:
 - Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent
 - Exchange Public Folder iDataAgent

To install the **Exchange Archiver Agents**, expand **Client Modules | Archive Management**, and select one or more of the following:

- Exchange Compliance Archiver
- Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent
- Exchange Public Folder Archiver Agent

Click Next.

8. If this computer and the CommServe is separated by a firewall, select the **Configure firewall services** option and then click **Next**.

For firewall options and configuration instructions, see Firewall Configuration and continue with the installation.

If firewall configuration is not required, click Next.

		\mathbf{X}
License Agre	eement	
Please read the the PAGE DOV	e following License Agreement. Press //N key to view the entire agreement.	
	-	_
	2	
End	l User License and Limited Warranty Agreement	
	Software Release 9.0.0	
(includin:	g Microsoft® SQL Server™ 2008 Enterprise Edition, SQL Server™	
2008	Express Edition and Windows Pre-Installation Environment)	
	Fud Hoav I inawaa Agunawawt	
I accept	the terms in the license agreement.	
🔘 I do not a	accept the terms in the license agreement.	
Installe	er	-
	< Back Next > Cancel	
Installer		\mathbf{X}
Install Instan		
Please specity install.	the instance you want to use during	
	Instance Selection	
	 Create a new instance (Not recommended) 	
	C Install to existing instance	
	Select an installed instance.	
	V	
	Client Name	
	Client Host Name	
	CommServe Name	
Installe		Ξ,
	< Back Next > Cancel	
Installer		
Installer Sologt Platfo	rmo	×
Select Platfo		X
Select Platfo	rms forms you want to configure.	
Select Platfo Select the platf	forms you want to configure.	X
Select Platfo Select the platf	forms you want to configure. Move the pointer over a platform name to see a	
Select Platfo Select the platf	forms you want to configure. mon Technology Engine CommServe Modules	and
Select Platfo Select the platf	forms you want to configure. Move the pointer over a platform name to see a commServe Modules commCell Console	and
Select Platfo Select the platf	forms you want to configure. mon Technology Engine CommServe Modules CommServe Modules MediaAgent Modules Thodules Dittle Serve	and
Select Platfo Select the platf	forms you want to configure.	and
Select Platfo Select the platfo Com Com Com Com Com Cler Cler Cler	forms you want to configure. mon Technology Engine CommCell Console MediaAgent Modules At Modules Reckup & Recovery Content Indexing and Search Web Based Search & Browse	and
Select Platfo Select the platfo Com Com Com Com Com Com Com Com Com Co	forms you want to configure. mon Technology Engine CommSell Console MediaAgent Modules an Modules Rackup & Recovery Content Indexing and Search Web Based Search Web Based Search & Browse Archive Management Content Defendemt	and
Select Platfo Select the platfo C Com C Co	forms you want to configure.	and
Select Platfo Select the platfo © C Com © C Co	torms you want to configure. mon Technology Engine CommCell Concole MediaAgert Modules Control Laboration of the platform name to see a description of the platform mane to see a description of the platform description of the platform mane to see a description of the platform description of the platform description of the platform description descripti	and
Select Platfo Select the platfo © 0 Com © 0 Com © 0 Cier © 0 Cier	torms you want to configure.	
Select Platfo Select the platfo © _ ©	torms you want to configure.	
Select Platfo Select the platfo Com Com Com Com Com Com Com Com Com Co	torms you want to configure.	
Select Platfo Select the platfo Com Com Com Com Com Com Com Com Com Co	torms you want to configure.	
Select Platfo Select the platf Comment	torms you want to configure.	
Select Platfo Select the platfo Come of the platform Come of the platfor	torms you want to configure.	
Select Platfo	torms you want to configure.	
Select Platfo Select the platfo Com Com Com Com Com Com Com Com Com Co	torms you want to configure.	
Select Platfo Select the platfo Com Com Com Com Com Com Com Com Com Co	torms you want to configure.	se
Select Platfo Select the platf Select the platf Com Com Com Com Com Com Com Com Com Com	torms you want to configure.	se
Select Platfo Select the platf Select the platf Com Select the platf Select the platf Select the platf Select the select Select the platf Select the select the select the platf Select the select the	forms you want to configure.	se
Select Platfo Select the platf Select the platf Comment Select the platf Select the select the se	torms you want to configure.	se
Select Platfo Select the platf Select the platf Comment Select the platf Comment Select the platf Select the	torms you want to configure. the configure of the configure of the platform mame to see a description of the platform mame to see a description of the platform mame to see a description of the platform and to be a description of the platform and the platform and to be a description of the platform and to be a description of the platform and be added Disk Space (Rev/Recommended) Instalation Folder Disk Space (Rev/Recommended) Instalation In	se
Select Platfo Select the platfo Come Come Come Compared Installer Flowall Con Configure Flowall Con Configure Flowall Con Configure	torms you want to configure. the set of the configure of the configure of the platform mame to see a description of the platform mame to see a description of the platform mane to see a description of the platform mame to see a description of the platform description d	se
Select Platfo Select the platfo Com Com Com Com Com Com Com Com Com Co	torms you want to configure.	se
Select Platfo Select the platf Select the platf Composition Composition Composition Configure free If there is a fire Configure free If these specific Configure free Configure free Configure free Configure free Configure free Configure free Configure free Configure free Configure free Configure free	torms you want to configure.	se
Select Platfo Select the platf Select the platf Composition Select the platf Composition Select the platf Select the platf Select the select Select the select the select Select the select the	toms you want to configure.	*
Select Platfo Select the platf Select the platf Composition Select the platf Composition Select the platf Select the platf Select the select Select the select the select Select the select the	torms you want to configure.	*
Select Platfo Select the platf Select the platf Comparison Select the platform Select the platform Select the platform Select the select Select the select the select Select the select the select Select the select the	toms you want to configure.	*
Select Platfo Select the platf Select the platf Composition Select the platf Composition Select the platf Select the platf Select the select Select the select the select Select the select the	torms you want to configure.	*
Select Platfo Select the platfo Select the platfo Com Configure 1 Install Agents Installer Firewall Con Configure 1 Plass specifications Configure 1 Plass specifications Configure 1 Configure 1 Conf	toms you want to configure.	*

9. Enter the fully qualified domain name of the **CommServe Host Name**.

Click Next.

Do not use space and the following characters when specifying a new name for the CommServe Host Name:

\|`~!@#\$%^&*()+=<>/?,[]{}:;'"

		CommServe Host Name [Enter a vaid, fully-qualified, IP host name; for mycomputer.mycompany.com
		Installer < Back
10.	Click Next . If there is any other instance installed on the computer, make sure that the host name does not match the client	Installer Communication Interface Name Setup will configure the communication paths.
	name entered in the Select a client name field in the previous instance.	Select a client name such an Select an interface name that th communicate with the CommSer such mycompany.com
		IP Address(es) for the selected t Installer Key
11.	Select Add programs to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List, to add CommCell programs and services to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List.	Installer
	Click Next.	Windows Firewall Exclusion List Allow programs to communicate through Windows Firewall
	This option enables CommCell operations across Windows firewall by adding CommCell programs and services to Windows firewall exclusion list.	Windows Firewall is DN
	It is recommended to select this option even if Windows firewall is disabled. This will allow the CommCell programs and services to function if the Windows firewall is enabled at a later time.	If you plan on using Windows Firewall, it is recomme exclusion list.
		Installer < Back
12.	Verify the default location for software installation.	Installer
	Click Browse to change the default location. Click Next .	Destination Folder Select the destination folder to install the program files.
	 Do not install the software to a mapped network drive. Do not use the following characters when specifying the destination path: /:*?"<> # 	Click Next to accept the default location, or click Brow Destination Folder

CommServe Name Specify the CommServe computer name and host name

CommServe Client Name

xample

Next>

-

•

nded to add the software programs to the

Next >

e to choose an alternate location

Space Required / Recommended

1394 MB / 1670 MB

Next >

Drive List

C: 928 MB

Installer

-

< Back

Browse.

Next >

l iel

Cancel

Cancel

Cancel

X

s computer will use to

Cancel

It is recommended that you use alphanumeric characters only.

13. Select a Client Group from the list.

Click Next.

This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the CommCell Console.

14. Click Next.

15. Select a Storage Policy. Click Next.

If you do not have Storage Policy created, this message will be displayed. Click ${\bf OK}.$

You can create the Storage Policy later in step 21.

16. Select Exchange Server Name and Exchange Server Version from drop-down list. Click Next.

nstatter	
Client Group Selection	
Select a client group for the cli	
The Client Gro which have th	up is a logical grouping of client machines ie same associations at various levels like cy, Activity Control, Security and Reports.
Schedule Poli	cy, Activity Control, Security and Reports.
Client g	roup:
None Si	elected
client_g	roup
,	
Installer	
	< Back Next> Cancel
notallar	X
nstaller	
Schedule Install of Auto Choose when you want to sch	
downloaded updates.	
🔽 Schedule Install of Aut	matic Undates
C Once	
Weekly	Time: 08:31:12 PM
· woony	Monday C Tuesday
	C Wednesday C Thursday
	C Friday C Saturday
	C Sunday
Installer	
	< Back Next > Cancel
Installer	
Storage Policy Selectio	n
Select a storage policy for the backed up.	e default subclient to be
Configure for Laptop or	Desktop Backup
Select a storage policy	/ from the pull-down list.
Unas	signed
,	
lastel ^a	
Installer	<back next=""> Cancel</back>
	Cancel
Installer Storage Policy Selectio	
Select a storage policy for the backed up.	
Configure for Laptop of	r Desktop Backup
Installer	< Back Next > Cancel
	< Back Next > Cancel
nstaller	×
Exchange Server Name	
Please provide Exchange serv	/er name
Exchance	ge Server
	change Server Name:
Ex	change Server Name: change_Server
Ex Ex	change_Server

17. Click Next.

<<u>Back N</u>ext> Cancel

- **18.** Enter the following Exchange Administrator information then click **Next**.
 - Account Name Domain user account created with the exchange server administrator permissions. Do not include the domain name here.
 - Account Password The password assigned to the domain user.
 - Mailbox Name for this Account Mailbox associated with the user above.
 - **Profile Name** Specify profile name to be created during agent install. This profile is associated with the domain user's mailbox.
 - Exchange Server Name Name of the Exchange Server that the agent will communicate with for data protection and recovery operations.

Enter the Mailbox Role Server name (NetBIOS). After installation configure the roles as described in Configure Mailboxes in Database Availability Group (DAG) Servers.

- Domain The installation detects and enters a domain name. If necessary, modify the domain name by specifying Windows domain that the Exchange Server resides in.
- 19. Click Next.

20. Click Finish.

Installer	X
Summary	
Summary of install selections	
Setup has enough information to st install settings, click Next to begin	art copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the
instal sottings, older Hole to begin	oopynig nee.
	i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i
Destination Path = C:\Program File CommServe Host = mycomputer.m	/2
Interface Name = audi.mycompan;	y.com
Client =audi Job Results Path = C:\Program File	
Global Filters = Use Cell level polic;	y 💌
<	
Installer	
	< Back Next > Cancel
Installer	X
Exchange Administrator Accou	int
Information	
Mailbox and Profile information	
Please enter the Evolvance account in	formation required below. A new profile will be created with
the information supplied.	construct required below. A new prone will be created with
Account Name:	Profile Name:
Account Password:	, Exchange Server Name:
Account Password:	Exchange Server Name.
Mailbox Name for this Account:	Domain:
Installer	
	< Back Next > Cancel
Installer	X
Schedule Reminder	
	X
Schedule Reminder	X
Schedule Reminder	
Schedule Reminder	
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch	redule for each iD ataAgent that has been installed on
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note:	redule for each iD ataAgent that has been installed on
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all	redule for each iDateAgent that has been installed on withe iDateAgents to perform automated backup
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Plesse note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operations.	w the iDataAgents to perform automated backup
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be ac	
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Plesse note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operations.	w the iDataAgents to perform automated backup
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be ac	w the iDataAgents to perform automated backup
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be ac administration interface.	w the iDataAgents to perform automated backup
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be ac	w the iDataAgents to perform automated backup complished through the CommCell Console
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be ac administration interface.	w the iDataAgents to perform automated backup
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be ac administration interface.	w the iDataAgents to perform automated backup complished through the CommCell Console
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be ac administration interface.	w the iDataAgents to perform automated backup complished through the CommCell Console
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operations. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operations can be ac administration interface.	w the iDataAgents to perform automated backup complished through the CommCell Console
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be ac administration interface.	w the iDataAgents to perform automated backup complished through the CommCell Console
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operation. Job Schedule creation can be ac administration interface.	w the iDataAgents to perform automated backup complished through the CommCell Console
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be ac administration interface.	w the DataAgents to perform automated backup complished through the CommCell Console
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be ac administration interface.	ow the DataAgents to perform automated backup complished through the CommCell Console
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be ac administration interface.	ow the DataAgents to perform automated backup complished through the CommCell Console
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be ac administration interface.	ow the DataAgents to perform automated backup complished through the CommCell Console
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be ac administration interface.	ow the DataAgents to perform automated backup complished through the CommCell Console
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be ac administration interface.	ow the DataAgents to perform automated backup complished through the CommCell Console
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be ac administration interface.	ow the DataAgents to perform automated backup complished through the CommCell Console
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be ac administration interface.	sw the IDataAgents to perform automated backup complished through the CommCell Console
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be ac administration interface.	ow the DataAgents to perform automated backup complished through the CommCell Console
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be ac administration interface.	sw the IDataAgents to perform automated backup complished through the CommCell Console
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedule serequired to all and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be ac administration interface. Installer Installer Setup complete Visit the website below to download lat Click Finish to complete Setup. Installer Install	sw the DataAgents to perform automated backup complished through the CommCell Console stully. stully. stullpdates and Service Packs.
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Sch this client computer. Job Schedules are required to all and restore operations. Job Schedule creation can be ac administration interface. Installer Installer Completion Report Setup complete Software installation completed succes Visit the website below to download lat Click Finish to complete Setup.	sw the DataAgents to perform automated backup complished through the CommCell Console

If you already have a storage policy selected in step 15, Click Next > button available at the bottom of the page to proceed to the **Configuration** section.

If you do not have Storage Policy created, continue with the following step.

21. Create a Storage Policy:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to **Policies**.
- 2. Right-click the Storage Policies and then click New Storage Policy.
- 3. Follow the prompts displayed in the Storage Policy Wizard. The required options

are mentioned below:

- Select the Storage Policy type as Data Protection and Archiving and click Next.
- Enter the name in the Storage Policy Name box and click Next.
- From the Library list, click the name of a disk library to which the primary copy should be associated and then click Next.

Ensure that you select a library attached to a MediaAgent operating in the current release.

- From the MediaAgent list, click the name of a MediaAgent that will be used to create the primary copy and then click Next.
- $\circ\;$ For the device streams and the retention criteria information, click Next to accept default values.
- $\circ~$ Select Yes to enable deduplication for the primary copy.
- From the **MediaAgent** list, click the name of the MediaAgent that will be used to store the Deduplication store.

Type the name of the folder in which the deduplication database must be located in the Deduplication Store Location or click the Browse button to select the folder and then click **Next**.

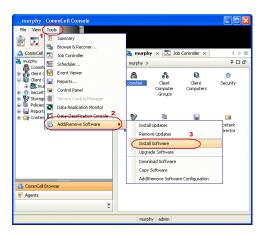
- Review the details and click **Finish** to create the Storage Policy.
- 22. Enable the following registry key to create job specific profiles:
 - From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers.
 - Right-click the <Client> in which you want to add the registry key, and then click Properties.
 - Click the Registry Key Settings tab.
 - Click Add.
 - Enter CreateProcessSpecificProfile in the Name field.
 - Enter MSExchangeMBAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

 $\ensuremath{\mathsf{Enter}}$ MSExchangeDMAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

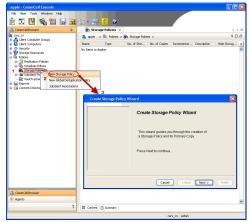
- Enter REG_DWORD in the Type filed.
- Enter 1 to enable and 0 to disable the key in the Value field.
- Click OK.

METHOD 2: INSTALL SOFTWARE FROM COMMCELL CONSOLE

1. From the CommCell Browser, select **Tools**, point to **Add/Remove Software**, and then click **Install Software**.



2. Click Next.



3. Select Windows. Click Next.

4. Select Manually Select Computers. Click Next.

5. Enter the fully qualified domain name of the computer on which you have Exchange Server.

For example: win08ex07.idclab.loc

Click Next.

Installer
instali Wizard
This wizard guides you through the steps required to install software on computers.
Click Next to continue.
< Back Next > Save As Script Finish Cancel Help
Installer
Select the computer's operating system
(Windows
O Unix and Linux
< Back (Next >) Save As Script Finish Cancel Help
Installer
Installer X
Installer Select how to discover the computers for installing the software
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software (•) Manualy select computers Software will be installed only on the selected list of computers.
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Select how to discover the computers
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Select how to discover the computers
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Select how to discover the computers
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Select how to discover the computers
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Select how to discover the computers
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Select how to discover the computers
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Select how to discover the computers
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Select how to discover the computers
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Select how to discover the computers
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Select how to discover the computers
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Select how to discover the computers
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software • Structure will be notabled only on the selected list of computers. • Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs.
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Image: Select computers Image: Select computers Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Red: Street As Script Parcel Street As Script Parcel
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Antonatically select computers Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Cegact C
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Automatically select computers Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. (gack (gack (gack) (gack)
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Antonatically select computers Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Cegact C
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Astematically select computers Atomatically decover on the selected lat of computers Atomatically decover of when the job runs. Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Cancel Cancel Ender Ender Ender Ender Ender Ender
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Manualy select computers Software will be notabled only on the selected list of computers. Automatically decover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Cancel Legack L
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Select how to discover the computers Manually select computers Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Center the host names of the computers Rease set the host names of the computers Rease set the host names of the computers Rease set the host names of the computers Manually select computers Rease set the host names of the computers Manually select computers Manua
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Select how to discover the computers Manually select computers Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Center the host names of the computers Rease set the host names of the computers Rease set the host names of the computers Rease set the host names of the computers Manually select computers Rease set the host names of the computers Manually select computers Manua
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Select how to discover the computers Manually select computers Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Center the host names of the computers Rease set the host names of the computers Rease set the host names of the computers Rease set the host names of the computers Manually select computers Rease set the host names of the computers Manually select computers Manua
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Select how to discover the computers Manually select computers Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Center the host names of the computers Rease set the host names of the computers Rease set the host names of the computers Rease set the host names of the computers Manually select computers Rease set the host names of the computers Manually select computers Manua
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Select how to discover the computers Manually select computers Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Center the host names of the computers Rease set the host names of the computers Rease set the host names of the computers Rease set the host names of the computers Manually select computers Rease set the host names of the computers Manually select computers Manua
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Select how to discover the computers Manually select computers Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Automatically discovered when the job runs. Center the host names of the computers Rease set the host names of the computers Rease set the host names of the computers Rease set the host names of the computers Manually select the co
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Select how to discover the computers Manually select computers Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Automatically discovered when the job runs. Center the host names of the computers Rease set the host names of the computers Rease set the host names of the computers Rease set the host names of the computers Manually select the co
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Select how to discover the computers Manually select computers Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Automatically discovered when the job runs. Center the host names of the computers Rease set the host names of the computers Rease set the host names of the computers Rease set the host names of the computers Manually select the co
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Select how to discover the computers Manually select computers Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Automatically discovered when the job runs. Center the host names of the computers Rease set the host names of the computers Rease set the host names of the computers Rease set the host names of the computers Manually select the co
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Select how to discover the computers Manually select computers Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Automatically discovered when the job runs. Center the host names of the computers Rease set the host names of the computers Rease set the host names of the computers Rease set the host names of the computers Manually select the co
Select how to discover the computers for installing the software Select how to discover the computers Manually select computers Automatically discover computers Computers will be discovered when the job runs. Automatically discovered when the job runs. Center the host names of the computers Rease set the host names of the computers Rease set the host names of the computers Rease set the host names of the computers Manually select the co

6. Click Next.

 Specify User Name and Password that must be used to access the computer. Click Next.

- To install the Exchange iDataAgents expand Client Modules | Backup & Recovery | Exchange, and select one or more of the following:
 - Exchange Database iDataAgent
 - Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent
 - Exchange Public Folder iDataAgent

Click Next.

For Non-Exchange Server, Exchange Database iDataAgent will not be applicable.

9.

- Select Client Group from Available and click Add.
 - Select a **Storage Policy** from the drop-down list. Click **Next**.

NOTES:

 Select the Configure for Laptop or Desktop Backup option to install Backup Monitor utility. This utility allows you to view the backup job summary from the client computer without opening the CommCell Console. See Monitor - Laptop User for more information.

Select Software Cache
To use current Client or Client Group Software Cache settings, click Next. To override Software Cache settings check Override Software Cache and select the Software Cache to be used.
Override Software Cache
Software Cashe: murphy.domain.company.com
<back next=""> Save As Script Finish Cancel Help</back>
Installer
Entre Annual (cfermention
Enter Account Information
The specified account should have administrative access to the computer. If you are installing multiple clients, the user should have access to all clients.
Reuse Active Directory credentials
User Name:
Example:domain\username
Password:
Confirm Password:
< Back Next > Save As Script Finish Cancel Help
< Back Next > Save As Script Finish Cancel Help
Installer Select Package(s) to Install
Installer Solect Package() to Install U U Solect Package() to
Select Package(\$) to Install A
Installer (Solicit Zeklagel() to Install Solicit Zeklagel() to In
Installer Solect Package(\$) to Install Solect Package(\$) to Install Solect Package(\$) to Install Solect Package(\$) Solec
Installer Select Peckage(s to Install Sele
Installer Solicet Peckage(c) to Install Solicet Peckage(c) t
Installer E Select Person Sig Smort Relations Sig Smort Relations Sig Smort Relations
Installer Science Package(s) to Install Science Package(s) to Install 55, sime 0 chadgert
Installer Stelect Peckage(t) for install Select Peckage(t) for install
Installer Stelect Peskage(s) for install Select Peskage(s) for install 94 for Oxids 94 for Oxids 94 for Oxids
Installer Stelect Peskage(s) for install Select Peskage(s) for install 94 for Oxids 94 for Oxids 94 for Oxids
Installer Stelect Peckage(t) for install Select Peckage(t) for install
Installer Stelect Peskage(s) for install Select Peskage(s) for install 94 for Oxids 94 for Oxids 94 for Oxids
Installer Cashe Sector Passage(r) for straul • Sector Passage(r) • Secto
Image: Control (Control) Control (Control) Sector Personage(V) for Install Sector Personage(V) for Install Sector Personage(V) for Install Sector Personage(V) for Install Sector Personage(V) for Install Sector Personage(V) for Install Sector Personage(V) for Install Sector Personage(V) for Install Sector Personage(V) for Install Sector Personage(V) for Install Sector Personage(V) for Install Sector Personage(V) for Install for Install Sector Personage(V) for Install for Install Sector Personage(V) for Install for Install Sector Personage(V) for Install for Install Sector Personage(V) for Install for Install Sector Personage(V) for Install for Install Sector Personage(V) for Install for Install Sector Personage(V) for Install for Install Sector Personage(V) for Install for Install Sector Personage(V) for Install for Insta
Inteller Control Select Passage() to install Select Passage() to install Select Passage() to install
Installer (************************************
Inteller Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passb
Installer (************************************
Installer Control Select Personagely to Install Image: Select Personagely to Install Image: Select Personagely to Install Image: Select Personagely to Install Image: Select Personagely to Install Image: Select Personagely to Install Image: Select Personagely to Install Image: Select Personagely to Install Image: Select Personagely to Install Image: Select Personagely to Install Image: Select Personagely to Installer Image: Select Personagely to Installer Image: Select Personagely to Installer Image: Select Personagely to Installer Image: Select Personagely to Installer Image: Select Personagely to Installer Image: Select Personagely to Installer Image: Select Personagely to Installer Image: Select Personagely to Installer Image: Select Personagely to Installer Image: Select Personagely to Installer Image: Select Personagely to Installer Image: Select Personagely to Installer Image: Select Personagely to Installer Image: Select Personagely to Installer Image: Select Personagely to Installer Image: Select Personagely to Installer Image: Select Personagely to Installer Image: Select Personagely to Installer Image: Select Personagely to Installer Image: Select Personagely to Installer Image: Select Personagely to Installer Image: Select Personagely to Installer Image: Select Personagely to Installer
Installer Control Select Package(s) for install Select Package(s) Select Package(s) Se
Inteller Select Parslagely to Install Select Parslagely to Install Select Parslagely to Instal
Inteller Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passbaget (d) to install Select Passb
Inteller Select Parslagely to Install Select Parslagely to Install Select Parslagely to Instal
Inteller Select Passbaget (d) to insult Select Passbaget (d) to insult Select Passbaget (d) to insult Select Passbaget (d) to insult Select Passbaget (d) to insult Select Passbaget (d) to insult Select Passbaget (d) to insult Select Passbaget (d) to insult Select Passbaget (d) to insult Select Passbaget (d) to insult Select Passbaget (d) to insult Select Passbaget (d) to insult Select Passbaget (d) to insult Select Passbaget (d) to insult Select Passbaget (d) to insult Select Passbaget (d) to insult Select Passbaget (d) to insult Select Passbaget (d) to insult Select Passbaget (d) to insult Select Passbaget (d) to insult Select Passbaget (d) to insult Select Passbaget (d) to insult Select Passbaget (d) to insult Select Passbaget (d) to insult Select Passbaget (d) to insult Select Passbaget (d) to insult Select Passbaget (d) to insult Select Passbaget (d) to insult Select Passbaget (d) to insult Select Passbaget (d) to insult Select Passbaget (d) to insult Select Passbaget (d) to insult Select Passbaget (d) to insult Select Passbaget (d) to insult Select Passbaget (d) to insult Select Passbaget (d) to insult Select Passbaget (d) to insult Select Passbaget (d) to insult Select Passbaget (d) to insult
Inteller Sector Parsbagely to Install Sector Parsbagely to Install Sector Parsbagely to Instal
Inteller Sector Parsbagely to Install Sector Parsbagely to Install Sector Parsbagely to Instal
Inteller Sector Parsbagely to Install Sector Parsbagely to Install Sector Parsbagely to Instal

X

10. Type the Agent Specific Settings information. Click Next.

11. Click Next.

12. Select Immediate. Click Next.

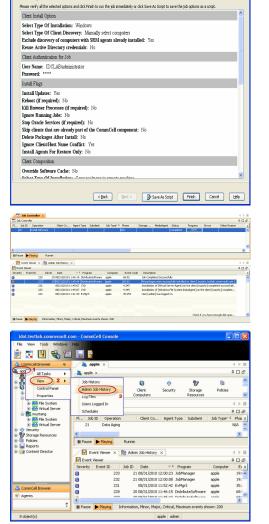
13. Click Finish.

Components	
 Ексhange5 Server Name 	erver Information (Optional)
	vin08e:2k7 rofile (Optional)
	IDCLA8)administrator Configure Password
Maibox Name	
Profile Name	
 Exchange D User Account 	Instabase (Optional) IDCLAP/schinistrator Configure Password
Oser Account	
 Incrementa 	
	<book bent=""> ■ Save As Script Pinch Cancel</book>
taller	
nter Additional Insta	Il Options
😑 Installer Flags	
✓ Install Updates	
🗌 Reboot (if requir	ed)
Kill Browser Proc	esses (if required)
Ignore Running	
Stop Orade Sen	
	are already part of the CommCell component
Advanced Option	
Delete Packages Jgnore Client/Ho	
Instal Result Log Loc	
🛄 Install Agents Fo	r Restore Only
Optional Settings	
😑 Job Resul	Directory
Path CVD Port	
Evingric Port	840
Install Directory	
Log File Location	Name
Log File Location Commiserve Host	
	< Book (Boot>) Save As Sorpt Finds Concol (
	(get [get2] ● law As Sopt Prink Careet [
	(gat gent) Prive is Sopt Frenh Canal (
Commiserve Hoat	
Commiserve Hoat	Cash Bart Provide State Trade Concel (
Commiserve Host	
Constance Host Installer Piease Select Job Initiation	When To Run The Job
Constanter Hot	When To Run The Job
Considence Host	edute
Considerve Host Installer Please Select Job Initiation	edute
Considence Hood	edute
Considerve Host Installer Please Solect Job Initiation Run t © Sche	When To Run The Job edute his job now

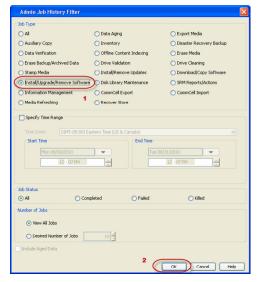
- **14.** You can track the progress of the job from the **Job Controller** or **Event Viewer** window.
- 15. Once the job is complete, right-click the **CommServe** computer, click **View** and then click **Admin Job History**.

16. Select Install/Upgrade/Remove Software. Click OK.

- 17. You can view the following details about the job by right-clicking the job:
 - Items that succeeded during the job
 - Items that failed during the job
 - Details of the job



Summary



- Events of the job
- Log files of the job

Job Type	Job ID	Status	Start Time	End Time	User N	Error C	Storag	Auton	Legal	Legal	
Install Software	20	S Complete	View Job Details	11.	, admin			NIA.	N/A	N/A	
			Resubmit Job								
			View Events								
			View Content In	dex 🔸							
			View Logs								
			Send Logs								

18.

Enable the following registry key to create job specific profiles:

- From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers.
- Right-click the <Client> in which you want to add the registry key, and then click Properties.
- Click the Registry Key Settings tab.
- Click Add.
- Enter CreateProcessSpecificProfile in the Name field.
- Enter MSExchangeMBAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

Enter MSExchangeDMAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

- Enter REG_DWORD in the Type filed.
- Enter 1 to enable and 0 to disable the key in the Value field.
- Click OK.



Install the Exchange Agents on Exchange Server 2003

< Previous Next >

Follow the steps given below to install the Exchange Agents on Exchange Server 2003.

WHERE TO INSTALL

Install the software directly on the Exchange Server you wish to protect

INSTALLATION

The software can be installed using one of the following methods:

METHOD 1: INTERACTIVE INSTALL

Use this procedure to directly install the software from the installation package or a network drive. System Requirements

METHOD 2: INSTALL SOFTWARE FROM COMMCELL CONSOLE

Use this procedure to remotely install the software on a client computer.

RELATED TOPICS

Download Software Packages

Provides step-by-step procedure to download the latest packages for software install.

System Requirements Verify that the computer in which you wish to install the software satisfies the System Requirements.

Firewall

Provides comprehensive information on firewall.

PREREQUISITES

The below mentioned prerequisites are for Mailbox Agents only. Ensure that you have the following:

- The mail-enabled user is a member of the Local Administrator Group and have rights to all mailboxes on the server.
- Using the Exchange System Manager snap-in, right-click the organization object and delegate control.
- Using the Wizard, assign the MailboxAdmin user Exchange Full Administrator privileges.
- Ensure that you assign full access to all mailboxes on the server. For details, see How do I Assign Full Access to All Mailboxes on a Server.

METHOD 1: INTERACTIVE INSTALL

- 1. Log on to the computer using an account with the following privileges:
 - Administrator of the local computer
 - Administrator of the Exchange Server
- 2. Run Setup.exe from the Software Installation Package.
- 3. Select the required language.

Click Next.

Select the language you will use during installation.	
<u>N</u> est >	Cancel
Install Software on this computer	
 View documentation website View Install Quick Start Guide (Requires Adobe Acrobat Reader) Install Adobe Acrobat Reader 	
	🖨 Exit

4. Select the option to install software on this computer.

The options that appear on this screen depend on the computer in which the software is being installed.

5. Select I accept the terms in the license agreement.

Click Next.

- To install the Exchange iDataAgents expand Client Modules | Backup & Recovery 6. | Exchange, and select one or more of the following:
 - Exchange Database iDataAgent
 - Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent
 - Exchange Public Folder iDataAgent

To install the Exchange Archiver Agents, expand Client Modules | Archive Management, and select one or more of the following:

- Exchange Compliance Archiver
- Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent
- Exchange Public Folder Archiver Agent

Click Next.

7. If this computer and the CommServe is separated by a firewall, select the **Configure** firewall services option and then click Next.

For firewall options and configuration instructions, see Firewall Configuration and continue with the installation.

If firewall configuration is not required, click **Next**.

8.	Enter the fully qualified domain name of the $\ensuremath{\textbf{CommServe Host Name}}.$
	Click Next.

Do not use space and the following characters when specifying a new name for the CommServe Host Name:

\|`~!@#\$%^&*()+=<>/?,[]{}:;'"

connection from here to a CommServe CommServe are blocked, and setup si machine, or whether there is a Proxy in			ward
C This machine can open connection	to CommServe on t	unnel port	
C CommServe can open connection t	oward this machine		
C CommServe is reachable only throu	gh a proxy		
Installer		Next >	Cancel
nstaller			×
CommServe Name Specify the CommServe computer name name	and host		
CommServe Client Name			
CommServe Host Name (Enter a valid, fully-qualified, IF mycomputer.mycompany.com)		mple:	
mycomputer.mycompany.com			
Installer			
	< Back	Next >	Cancel

License Agreement

Installer

nstaller

- 6

Select Platforms

Please read the following License Agreement. Press the PAGE DOWN key to view the entire agreement.

· I accept the terms in the license agreement. C I do not accept the terms in the license agreement

Select the platforms you want to configure

 □
 □
 Common Technology Engine

 ±
 □
 CommCell Conside

 ±
 □
 CommCell Conside

 ±
 □
 Control Adgert Modules

 □
 □
 Clent Modules

 □
 □
 Control Indexing and Search

 □
 □
 Content Indexing and Search

Installer Install Agents for Restore Only

Firewall Configuration Configure firewall services

Configure firewall services

nstaller

End User License and Limited Warranty Agreement Software Release 9.0.0 (including Microsoft® SQL Server™ 2008 Enterprise Edition, SQL Server™ 2008 Express Edition and Windows Pre-Installation Environment) Fud Hoav I lanuas Agus

> < Back

< Back

If there is a firewall between this machine and the CommServe, configure firewall services below.

Next >

Move the pointer over a platform name to see a description of the platform reasons why it may be disabled.

Disk Space (Reg/Recommended)

Installation Folder:

0 MB/ 0 MB

0 MB/ 0 MB

Special Registry Keys In Us

Cancel

X

Temporary on C: drive:

^

Cancel

9. Click Next.

		Installer
		Communication Interface Name Setup will configure the communication paths.
		Select a client name Budiven
		Select an interface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe
		audi.mycompany.com
		Installer < Back Next> Cancel
10.	Select Add programs to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List, to add CommCell programs and services to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List.	Installer (
	Click Next.	Allow programs to communicate through Windows Firewall
	This option enables CommCell operations across Windows firewall by adding CommCell programs and services to Windows firewall exclusion list.	Windows Firewall is ON
	It is recommended to select this option even if Windows firewall is disabled. This will allow the CommCell programs and services to function if the Windows firewall is enabled at a later time.	If you plan on using Windows Firewall, it is recommended to add the software programs to the exclusion list.
		Installer < Back Next> Cancel
11.	Verify the default location for software installation.	Installer Destination Folder
	Click Browse to change the default location.	Select the destination folder to install the program files.
	 Click Next. Do not install the software to a mapped network drive. Do not use the following characters when specifying the destination path: /:*?"<> # 	Click Next to accept the default location, or click Browse to choose an alternate location. Destination Folder
	It is recommended that you use alphanumeric characters only.	Drive List Drive List Spece Required / Recommended C: 928 MB 1394 MB / 1670 MB
		Installer KBack Next> Cancel
12.	Select a Client Group from the list.	Installer
	Click Next.	Client Group Selection Select a client group for the client.
	This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the CommCell Console.	The Client Group is a logical grouping of client machines which have the same associations at various levels like Schedule Policy, Activity Control, Security and Reports.
		Client group: None Salected client_group
		Installer < Back Next> Cancel
13.	Click Next.	

X

X

14. Select a Storage Policy. Click Next.

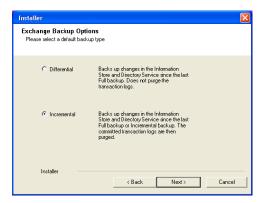
If you do not have Storage Policy created, this message will be displayed. Click \mathbf{OK} .

You can create the Storage Policy later in step 25.

- If you are installing the Exchange Database *i*DataAgent, click Configure Exchange Database Specific Information.
- If you are installing the Exchange Agents, skip to Configure Exchange Agents Specific Information.

CONFIGURE EXCHANGE DATABASE SPECIFIC INFORMATION

- 15. Select the backup type for Exchange Database backups. Choose either of the following options, then click **Next**.
 - **Differential** Specifies that each non-full Exchange Database backup secures all data that has changed since the last full backup. Transaction lobs are not purged.
 - **Incremental** Specifies that each non-full Exchange Database backup secures only that data that has changed since the last backup of any type. Committed transaction logs are purged.



Schedule Install of Automatic Updates Choose when you want to schedule an install of the downloaded updates.

Schedule Install of Automatic Updates

Time:

Monday

C Friday

C Sunday

< Back

< Back

C Wednesday

08:31:12 PM

÷

C Tuesday

C Thursday

C Saturday

Next>

•

Next>

Next >

Cancel

Cancel

Cancel

C Once

Weekly

Installer

Storage Policy Selection

Installer

Confi

Select a storage policy for the default subclient to be backed up. Configure for Laptop or Desktop Backup Select a storage policy from the pull-down list.

Select a storage policy for the default subclient to be backed up.

re for Laptop or Desktop Backup

16. Enter the user credentials to access the Exchange Server to perform the backup operation.

- The User Account must have Exchange Administrator privileges.
- The installation detects the domain name. If necessary, you can modify the domain name by specifying Windows domain that the Exchange Server resides in.

17. Click Next.

- 18. The install program displays a reminder to verify that Circular Logging is disabled before performing any database backup operations. To verify that Circular Logging is disabled:
 - From Exchange System Manager, navigate to and expand the server that the Database *i*DataAgent is being installed on.
 - Verify that the Circular Logging check box has not been selected for each Storage Group. If Circular Logging has been enabled for a Storage Group, disable it at this time.

Click OK.

- If you are installing the Exchange Agents, then click Configure Exchange Agents Specific Information.
- If you are installing the Exchange Database iDataAgent, skip to Verify Summary of Install Options.

CONFIGURE EXCHANGE AGENTS SPECIFIC INFORMATION

19. Select **Exchange Server Name** and **Exchange Server Version** from drop-down list.

Click Next.

This screen will appear when you are installing Exchange Agents on Non-Exchange Server.

Installer					×
Exchange Server I Please provide Exchar					
	Exchange Server Exchange Sr Exchange_S Exchange Se Exchange Se	erver erver Version	<u> </u>		
Installer		< <u>B</u> ack	<u>N</u> ext>	<u></u> an	cel

20. Click Next.

	Account Name: Account Password: Domain: EXCH		
		<u>N</u> ext>	Cancel
Installer			
Summary Summary of install s	elections		
Setup has enou install settings, c	gh information to start copying the pro lick Next to begin copying files.	ogram files. If you are sat	tisfied with the
CommServe Hos Interface Name Client =audi Job Results Path	 E.\Program Files\ t = mycomputer.mycompany.com = audi.mycompany.com = C.\Program Files\ubbResuits Jse Cell level policy 		
<			Σ
Installer	< Back	Next >	Cancel
Installer			
	rify that Orcular Logging is disabled b perations.	oefore performing any da	atabase
	OK		

Enter Administrator account information Enter Administrator account information

Installer							×
Summar Summary	y of install selections						
	o has enough informatio I settings, click Next to			e program files. I	f you are sat	isfied with t	he
Comn Interf Client Job F Globa	nation Path = C:\Progr Serve Host = miccom ace Name = audi.micc = audi esults Path = C:\Progr Il Filters = Use Cell leve	outer.mycomp ompany.com ram Files\Jobl		1		2	
h	nstaller						
			< Bac		ext >	Can	cel
Exchang Informat Mailbox a	and Profile information						X
Exchang Informat Mailbox a Please e	ion		ion requ	ired below. A ne	sw profile will	be created	I with
Exchang Informat Mailbox a Please e	ton and Profile information nter the Exchange acc nation supplied.			ired below. A ne Yrofile Name:	ew profile will	be created	X
Informat Mailbox a Please e the inform Account	ion and Profile information nter the Exchange acc nation supplied. Name:		F	Profile Name:	·	be created	X with
Exchang Informat Mailbox a Please ei the inform Account	ton and Profile information nter the Exchange acc nation supplied.		F		·	be created	V with
Exchang Informat Mailbox & Please e the inform Account	ion and Profile information nter the Exchange acc nation supplied. Name:		F 	Profile Name:	·	be created	e with

- 21. Enter the following Exchange Administrator information then click Next.
 - Account Name Domain user account created with the exchange server administrator permissions. Do not include the domain name here.
 - Account Password The password assigned to the domain user.
 - Mailbox Name for this Account Mailbox associated with the user above.
 - **Profile Name** Specify profile name to be created during agent install. This profile is associated with the domain user's mailbox.
 - Exchange Server Name Name of the Exchange Server that the agent will communicate with for data protection and recovery operations.
 - **Domain** The installation detects and enters a domain name. If necessary, modify the domain name by specifying Windows domain that the Exchange Server resides in.

VERIFY SUMMARY OF INSTALL OPTIONS

22. Click Next.

23. Click Next.

Installer 🛛 🔀
Summary Summary of install selections
Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files.
Destination Path = C:\Program Files\ CommServe Host = mycomputer.mycompany.com Interface Name = audi.mycompany.com Dient = audi Job Results Path = C:\Program Files\JobResults Giobal Filters = Use Cell level policy
< Back Next > Cancel
Installer 🛛
Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder
Please note: You still need to create a Job Schedule for each iDataAgent that has been installed on this client computer.
Job Schedules are required to allow the iDataAgents to perform automated backup and restore operations.
Job Schedule creation can be accomplished through the CommCell Console administration interface.
Installer

Software i	nstallation completed successfully.	
Visit the w	ebsite below to download latest Updates and Service Packs.	
Click Finis	h to complete Setup.	

If you already have a storage policy selected in step 14, Click Next > button available at the bottom of the page to proceed to the **Configuration** section.

If you do not have Storage Policy created, continue with the following step.

- 25. Create a Storage Policy:
 - 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Policies.
 - 2. Right-click the Storage Policies and then click New Storage Policy.
 - 3. Follow the prompts displayed in the Storage Policy Wizard. The required options are mentioned below:
 - Select the Storage Policy type as Data Protection and Archiving and click Next.
 - $\circ~$ Enter the name in the Storage Policy Name box and click Next.
 - From the **Library** list, click the name of a disk library to which the primary copy should be associated and then click **Next**.

Ensure that you select a library attached to a MediaAgent operating in the current release.

- From the MediaAgent list, click the name of a MediaAgent that will be used to create the primary copy and then click Next.
- $\circ\;$ For the device streams and the retention criteria information, click Next to accept default values.
- $\circ~$ Select Yes to enable deduplication for the primary copy.
- From the **MediaAgent** list, click the name of the MediaAgent that will be used to store the Deduplication store.

Type the name of the folder in which the deduplication database must be located in the Deduplication Store Location or click the Browse button to select the folder and then click **Next**.

Review the details and click **Finish** to create the Storage Policy.

26. Enable the following registry key to create job specific profiles:

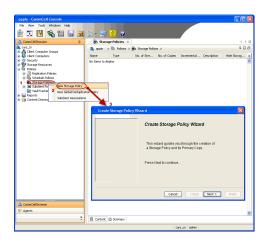
- From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers.
- Right-click the <Client> in which you want to add the registry key, and then click Properties.
- Click the Registry Key Settings tab.
- Click Add.
- Enter CreateProcessSpecificProfile in the Name field.
- Enter MSExchangeMBAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

Enter MSExchangeDMAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

- Enter REG_DWORD in the Type filed.
- Enter 1 to enable and 0 to disable the key in the Value field.
- Click OK.

METHOD 2: INSTALL SOFTWARE FROM COMMCELL CONSOLE

1. From the CommCell Browser, select **Tools**, point to **Add/Remove Software**, and then click **Install Software**.



2. Click Next.

3. Select Windows. Click Next.

4. Select Manually Select Computers. Click Next.

File View Tools				
	*			
🗾 🎿 🔩 Browse &	Recover			
🛕 CommCel 🔝 Job Contro		💐 murphy 🗙 💽 Job	Controller ×	4 0 0
a murphy E Scheduler		murphy >		4 O ð
Comm Event View		8 66	Q	•
E- Control Pa		ommNet Client Computer	Client Computers	Security
🗟 🦉 Storage 🖀 Service Co	introl Manager	Groups		
t in Report	ication Monitor			
E. Conten	rification Concole	Install Updates	la l	pntent
		Remove Updates	3	irector
		Install Software	5	
		Upgrade Software		
		Download Software		
		Copy Software Add/Remove Software	Configuration	
🛕 CommCell Browser		- Hagh and to bar chart	- contrigui destri	
🛒 Agents				
	» •			
		murphy admin		
				-
Installer				[
Click Next to contin	ue.	e Ae Sorpt	ware on compare	Help
Installer Select the comput	ter's operating sys	stem		E
Select the comput			Canad	
Select the comput		item e As Sorge	Cancel	Help
Select the comput			Cancel	Fielb
Select the comput Windows Unix and Linux <gack< td=""><td><u>text ></u> Sav</td><td>e As Script) Prish</td><td></td><td>Нер</td></gack<>	<u>text ></u> Sav	e As Script) Prish		Нер
Select the comput Windows Unix and Linux Capack Capack Installer Select how to disc	ext >			Нер
Select the comput Windows Unix and Linux <gack (gack) Installer Select how to disc Manualy select co</gack 	vert > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > > >	e As Sorge Presh		Нер
Select the comput Mindows Unix and Linux (Back) (E Select how to disc Software will be in Software will be	ext >)	e As Sorge Presh		Нер
Select the comput O Windows Unix and Linux < Back C Select how to disc Software will be to O Manualy selector Software will be to O Manualy selector	ext >)	e As Sorpt Presh		
Select the comput O Windows Unix and Linux < Back C Select how to disc Software will be to O Manualy selector Software will be to O Manualy selector	ext >>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>	e As Sorpt Presh		Нер
Select the comput O Windows Unix and Linux < Back C Select how to disc Software will be to O Manualy selector Software will be to O Manualy selector	ext >>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>	e As Sorpt Presh		Нер
Select the comput O Windows Unix and Linux < Back C Select how to disc Software will be to O Manualy selector Software will be to O Manualy selector	ext >>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>	e As Sorpt Presh		Нер
Select the comput O Windows Unix and Linux < Back C Select how to disc Software will be to O Manualy selector Software will be to O Manualy selector	ext >>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>	e As Sorpt Presh		Нер
Select the comput O Windows Unix and Linux < Back C Select how to disc Software will be to O Manualy selector Software will be to O Manualy selector	ext >>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>	e As Sorpt Presh		Нер
Select the comput O Windows Unix and Linux < Back C Select how to disc Software will be to O Manualy selector Software will be to O Manualy selector	ext >>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>	e As Sorpt Presh		Fielb
Select the comput O Windows Unix and Linux < Back C Select how to disc Software will be to O Manualy selector Software will be to O Manualy selector	ext >>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>	e As Sorpt Presh		Нер
Select the comput O Windows Unix and Linux < Back C Select how to disc Software will be to O Manualy selector Software will be to O Manualy selector	ext >>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>	e As Sorpt Presh		Нер
Select the comput O Windows Unix and Linux < Back C Select how to disc Software will be to O Manualy selector Software will be to O Manualy selector	ext >>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>	e As Sorpt Presh		Fielb
Select the comput O Windows Unix and Linux < Back C Select how to disc Software will be to O Manualy selector Software will be to O Manualy selector	ext >>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>	e As Sorpt Presh		Fielb
Select the comput O Windows Unix and Linux < Back C Select how to disc Software will be to O Manualy selector Software will be to O Manualy selector	ext >>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>	e As Sorpt Presh		Нер

5. Enter the fully qualified domain name of the computer on which you have Exchange Server.

For example: win08ex07.idclab.loc Click Next.

6. Click Next.

 Specify User Name and Password that must be used to access the computer. Click Next.

- 8. To install the Exchange iDataAgents expand Client Modules | Backup & Recovery | Exchange, and select one or more of the following:
 - Exchange Database iDataAgent
 - Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent
 - Exchange Public Folder iDataAgent

Click Next.

Installer Select Software Cache Controls Software Cache and select Software Cache settings, did lives. To override Software Cache settings deals. Controls Software Cache Installer Installer Description Software Cache Software Cache settings Installer Software Cache Concent Information The software Cache Concent Software Cache settings User Name: Example: dontain (username Password: Confirm Password: Confirm Password: Example: dontain (username
Installer Select Software Cache Controls Software Cache and select Software Cache settings, did lives. To override Software Cache settings deals. Controls Software Cache Installer Installer Description Software Cache Software Cache settings Installer Software Cache Concent Information The software Cache Concent Software Cache settings User Name: Example: dontain (username Password: Confirm Password: Confirm Password: Example: dontain (username
Installer Select Software Cache Controls Software Cache and select Software Cache settings, did lives. To override Software Cache settings deals. Controls Software Cache Installer Installer Description Software Cache Software Cache settings Installer Software Cache Concent Information The software Cache Concent Software Cache settings User Name: Example: dontain (username Password: Confirm Password: Confirm Password: Example: dontain (username
Installer Select Software Cache Controls Software Cache and select Software Cache settings, did lives. To override Software Cache settings deals. Controls Software Cache Installer Installer Description Software Cache Software Cache settings Installer Software Cache Concent Information The software Cache Concent Software Cache settings User Name: Example: dontain (username Password: Confirm Password: Confirm Password: Example: dontain (username
Installer Select Software Cache Controls Software Cache and select Software Cache settings, did lives. To override Software Cache settings deals. Controls Software Cache Installer Installer Description Software Cache Software Cache settings Installer Software Cache Concent Information The software Cache Concent Software Cache settings User Name: Example: dontain (username Password: Confirm Password: Confirm Password: Example: dontain (username
Installer Select Software Cache Controls Software Cache and select Software Cache settings, did lives. To override Software Cache settings deals. Controls Software Cache Installer Installer Description Software Cache Software Cache settings Installer Software Cache Concent Information The software Cache Concent Software Cache settings User Name: Example: dontain (username Password: Confirm Password: Confirm Password: Example: dontain (username
Installer Select Software Cache Controls Software Cache and select Software Cache settings, did lives. To override Software Cache settings deals. Controls Software Cache Installer Installer Description Software Cache Software Cache settings Installer Software Cache Concent Information The software Cache Concent Software Cache settings User Name: Example: dontain (username Password: Confirm Password: Confirm Password: Example: dontain (username
Installer Select Software Cache Controls Software Cache and select Software Cache settings, did lives. To override Software Cache settings deals. Controls Software Cache Installer Installer Description Software Cache Software Cache settings Installer Software Cache Concent Information The software Cache Concent Software Cache settings User Name: Example: dontain (username Password: Confirm Password: Confirm Password: Example: dontain (username
Installer Select Software Cache Controls Software Cache and select Software Cache settings, did lives. To override Software Cache settings deals. Controls Software Cache Installer Installer Description Software Cache Software Cache settings Installer Software Cache Concent Information The software Cache Concent Software Cache settings User Name: Example: dontain (username Password: Confirm Password: Confirm Password: Example: dontain (username
Installer Select Software Cache Controls Software Cache and select Software Cache settings, did lives. To override Software Cache settings deals. Controls Software Cache Installer Installer Description Software Cache Software Cache settings Installer Software Cache Concent Information The software Cache Concent Software Cache settings User Name: Example: dontain (username Password: Confirm Password: Confirm Password: Example: dontain (username
Installer Select Software Cache Controls Software Cache and select Software Cache settings, did lives. To override Software Cache settings deals. Controls Software Cache Installer Installer Description Software Cache Software Cache settings The Software Cache Software Cache Software Cache Installer Software Cache So
Installer Select Software Cache Controls Software Cache and select Software Cache settings, did lives. To override Software Cache settings deals. Controls Software Cache Installer Installer Description Software Cache Software Cache settings The Software Cache Software Cache Software Cache Installer Software Cache So
Installer Select Software Cache Controls Software Cache and select Software Cache settings, did lives. To override Software Cache settings deals. Controls Software Cache Installer Installer Description Software Cache Software Cache settings The Software Cache Software Cache Software Cache Installer Software Cache So
Installer Select Software Cache Controls Software Cache and select Software Cache settings, did lives. To override Software Cache settings deals. Controls Software Cache Installer Installer Description Software Cache Software Cache settings The Software Cache Software Cache Software Cache Installer Software Cache So
Sect Software Cache actes to the software Cache acter to the software Cache acter to solve actes as a software Cache acter to solve actes as a software Cache actes to solve actes as a software Cache actes to solve actes as a software Cache actes as a software actes as a software Cache actes and a software Cache actes as a software actes as a software Cache actes as a software actes as a software Cache actes as a software actes as a software Cache actes as a software Cache actes as a software Cache actes as a software actes as
Sect Software Cache actes to the software Cache acter to the software Cache acter to solve actes as a software Cache acter to solve actes as a software Cache actes to solve actes as a software Cache actes to solve actes as a software Cache actes as a software actes as a software Cache actes and a software Cache actes as a software actes as a software Cache actes as a software actes as a software Cache actes as a software actes as a software Cache actes as a software Cache actes as a software Cache actes as a software actes as
Sect Software Cache actes to the software Cache acter to the software Cache acter to solve actes as a software Cache acter to solve actes as a software Cache actes to solve actes as a software Cache actes to solve actes as a software Cache actes as a software actes as a software Cache actes and a software Cache actes as a software actes as a software Cache actes as a software actes as a software Cache actes as a software actes as a software Cache actes as a software Cache actes as a software Cache actes as a software actes as
Teste active Case is able to solve a Case as bound. Solve a Case as bound and as a solution and asolution and as a solution and asolution and as a solution and a
Teste active Case is able to solve a Case as bound. Solve a Case as bound and as a solution and asolution and as a solution and asolution and as a solution and a
Overide Software Cade Settion: Installer Installer The specified account information The specified account information The specified account information The specified account information The specified account information The specified account information The specified account information The specified account information The specified account information The specified account information The specified account information The specified account information The specified account information The specified account information The specified account information The specified account information The specified account information The specified account information The specified account information The specified account information The specified account information The specified account information The specified account information The specified account information The specified account information The specified account information The specified account information The specified account information The specified
Overide Software Cade Settion: Installer Installer The specified account information The specified account information The specified account information The specified account information The specified account information The specified account information The specified account information The specified account information The specified account information The specified account information The specified account information The specified account information The specified account information The specified account information The specified account information The specified account information The specified account information The specified account information The specified account information The specified account information The specified account information The specified account information The specified account information The specified account information The specified account information The specified account information The specified account information The specified account information The specified
Installer Exter Account information Exter Account information Ruse Active Directory credentids User Name: Examples domain[username] Password: Confirm Password: Confirm Password: Examples domain[username] Password: Examples domain[username]
Installer Enter Account Information The specified account should have administrative access to the computer. If you are installing multiple clents, the user should have access to all clents. Person of the pers
Installer Enter Account Information The specified account should have administrative access to the computer. If you are installing multiple clents, the user should have access to all clents. Person of the pers
Installer Enter Account Information The specified account should have administrative access to the computer. If you are installing multiple clents, the user should have access to all clents. Person of the pers
Installer Enter Account Information The specified account should have administrative access to the computer. If you are installing multiple clents, the user should have access to all clents. Person of the pers
Installer Enter Account Information The specified account should have administrative access to the computer. If you are installing multiple clents, the user should have access to all clents. Person of the pers
Installer Enter Account Information The specified account should have administrative access to the computer. If you are installing multiple clents, the user should have access to all clents. Person of the pers
Installer Enter Account Information The specified account should have administrative access to the computer. If you are installing multiple clents, the user should have access to all clents. Person of the pers
Installer Enter Account Information The specified account should have administrative access to the computer. If you are installing multiple clents, the user should have access to all clents. Person of the pers
Installer Enter Account Information The specified account should have administrative access to the computer. If you are installing multiple clents, the user should have access to all clents. Person of the pers
Installer Enter Account Information The specified account should have administrative access to the computer. If you are installing multiple clents, the user should have access to all clents. Person of the pers
Installer Enter Account Information The specified account should have administrative access to the computer. If you are installing multiple clents, the user should have access to all clents. Person of the pers
Installer Enter Account Information The specified account should have administrative access to the computer. If you are installing multiple clents, the user should have access to all clents. Person of the pers
Installer Enter Account Information The specified account should have administrative access to the computer. If you are installing multiple clents, the user should have access to all clents. Person of the pers
Installer Enter Account Information The specified account should have administrative access to the computer. If you are installing multiple clents, the user should have access to all clents. Person of the pers
<back< td=""> Dext> Save Ad Script Frich Cancel Help Insular Sove Ad Script Frich Cancel Help Sove Ad Script Frich Cancel Help Insular Sove Ad Script Frich Cancel Help Sove Ad Script Frich Cancel Help Insular Sove Ad Script Frich Cancel Help Sove Ad Script Frich Cancel Help Sove Ad Script Frich Cancel Help Sove Ad Script Sove Ad Script Frich Cancel Help</back<>
<back< td=""> Dext> Save Ad Script Frich Cancel Help Insular Sove Ad Script Frich Cancel Help Sove Ad Script Frich Cancel Help Insular Sove Ad Script Frich Cancel Help Sove Ad Script Frich Cancel Help Insular Sove Ad Script Frich Cancel Help Sove Ad Script Frich Cancel Help Sove Ad Script Frich Cancel Help Sove Ad Script Sove Ad Script Frich Cancel Help</back<>
Installer Sociel Perspecty to Install Sociel Perspecty to Installe Sociel Perspecty to Install Sociel Perspecty to Installe Perspecty to Installe Sociel Perspecty to Installe Socie
Installer Sociel Perspecty to Install Sociel Perspecty to Installe Sociel Perspecty to Install Sociel Perspecty to Installe Perspecty to Installe Sociel Perspecty to Installe Socie
Installer Sociel Perspecty to Install Sociel Perspecty to Installe Sociel Perspecty to Install Sociel Perspecty to Installe Perspecty to Installe Sociel Perspecty to Installe Socie
Installer Sociel Perspecty to Install Sociel Perspecty to Installe Sociel Perspecty to Install Sociel Perspecty to Installe Perspecty to Installe Sociel Perspecty to Installe Socie
Installer Sociel Perspecty to Install Sociel Perspecty to Installe Sociel Perspecty to Install Sociel Perspecty to Installe Perspecty to Installe Sociel Perspecty to Installe Socie
Installer Sociel Perspecty to Install Sociel Perspecty to Installe Sociel Perspecty to Install Sociel Perspecty to Installe Perspecty to Installe Sociel Perspecty to Installe Socie
Installer Sociel Perspecty to Install Sociel Perspecty to Installe Sociel Perspecty to Install Sociel Perspecty to Installe Perspecty to Installe Sociel Perspecty to Installe Socie
Installer Sociel Perspecty to Install Sociel Perspecty to Installe Sociel Perspecty to Install Sociel Perspecty to Installe Perspecty to Installe Sociel Perspecty to Installe Socie
Installer Sociel Perspecty to Install Sociel Perspecty to Installe Sociel Perspecty to Install Sociel Perspecty to Installe Perspecty to Installe Sociel Perspecty to Installe Socie
Installer Sociel Perspecty to Install Sociel Perspecty to Installe Sociel Perspecty to Install Sociel Perspecty to Installe Perspecty to Installe Sociel Perspecty to Installe Socie
Installer Sociel Perspective for Reduit Sociel Perspective Calegorie Sociel Perspective Caleg
Select Package(s) to Install Select Package(s) to Install Select Package(s) to Install Select Package(s) Select Packa
Select Package(s) to Install Select Package(s) to Install Select Package(s) to Install Select Package(s) Select Packa
Select Package(s) to Install Select Package(s) to Install Select Package(s) to Install Select Package(s) Select Packa
So for we Graduate Soft for Golds Soft
Serfer freede Serfer
Serfer freede Serfer
Profile Guidaget Construction Profile Guidaget Construction Constructi
Control C
Compared Technology and Parked DataSpeet Compared Technology and Parked DataSpeet Compared Technology and Parked DataSpeet Compared DataSpeet
Compared Technology and Parked DataSpeet Compared Technology and Parked DataSpeet Compared Technology and Parked DataSpeet Compared DataSpeet
Consequences C
Control Market Food And And Control Market Control Market Food And And Control Market Control Market Food And Control Control Market Food And Cont
Description Descripti
Control belong and Search Control belong or Exhange C
Control Management Control Managemen
Control Management Control Managemen
Domino Mallow Androwe Agent Local Internet Adda In Claimer Exchange Standard Am Claimer Exchange Standard Am Claimer Exchange Standard Am Claimer
Cricharge Compleme Archiver Complement Agent Excharge Public Folder Archiver Agent
Exchange WebProxy Archiver Agent Exchange Public Folder Archiver Agent
Louisage Fault Fault Fault Hours Agent Exchange Million Archiver Agent
Installer Seciel Zeschapely to Install Seciel Zeschapely to Installer Seciel Zeschapely to Install Seciel Zeschapely to Installer Seciel

• Select Client Group from Available and click Add.

• Select a **Storage Policy** from the drop-down list. Click **Next**.

NOTES:

9.

• Select the **Configure for Laptop or Desktop Backup** option to install **Backup Monitor** utility. This utility allows you to view the backup job summary from the client computer without opening the CommCell Console. See Monitor - Laptop User for more information. 10. Type the Agent Specific Settings information. Click Next.

11. Click Next.

12. Select Immediate. Click Next.

13. Click Finish.

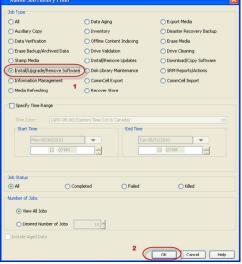
nter Recommended Se	ttings for the selected Software
Recommended Settings	
Client Groups	
Available: Laptop	Selected: Add > Laptop Bachup
	< Remove
	Add Al >>
	< <remove all<="" td=""></remove>
Global Filters	Use Cell level policy
Configure For Laptop	Backups
Storage Policy to use	
	< Back Next > Save As Script Finish Cancel
taller	
nter the Install Options for	r the selected Software
Agent Specific Settings	
Components	
 ExchangeServer In 	nformation (Optional)
Server Name win08e	
😑 Exchange Profile (I	
User Account IDCLAR	Administrator Configure Password
Mailbox Name	
Profile Name	
Exchange Databas	
User Account IDCLAB	
O Differential Backup	
 Incremental Backup 	
	<book bent=""> Save As Script Finish Cancel</book>
Advanced Options Delete Packages After In Jignore Client/Host Name Instal Result Log Location Instal Result Log Location	Conflict
Optional Settings	84
Optional Settings	
Optional Settings	
Optional Settings	
Optional Settings	Hand A Start French Correl
Optional Settings	
Optional Settings	Hand A Start French Correl
Coffee Setting Settin	een To Run The Job
Colored Settings	een To Run The Job
Coffee Setting Settin	een To Run The Job
Control Settings Settings Settings Control Contro Contro Control Control Cont	een To Run The Job
Address Determine Sol Ress Determine Sol Ress Determine Sol Ress Determine Sol Ress Ress Ress Sol Ress Run this Job Schedule	een To Run The Job
Address Determine Sol Ress Determine Sol Ress Determine Sol Ress Determine Sol Ress Ress Ress Sol Ress Run this Job Schedule	en To Run The Job
Address Determine Sol Ress Determine Sol Ress Determine Sol Ress Determine Sol Ress Ress Ress Sol Ress Run this Job Schedule	een To Run The Job
Address Determine Sol Ress Determine Sol Ress Determine Sol Ress Determine Sol Ress Ress Ress Sol Ress Run this Job Schedule	een To Run The Job
Address Determine Sol Ress Determine Sol Ress Determine Sol Ress Determine Sol Ress Ress Ress Sol Ress Run this Job Schedule	een To Run The Job
Address Determine Sol Ress Determine Sol Ress Determine Sol Ress Determine Sol Ress Ress Ress Sol Ress Run this Job Schedule	een To Run The Job
Address Determine Sol Ress Determine Sol Ress Determine Sol Ress Determine Sol Ress Ress Ress Sol Ress Run this Job Schedule	een To Run The Job
Address Determine Sol Ress Determine Sol Ress Determine Sol Ress Determine Sol Ress Ress Ress Sol Ress Run this Job Schedule	een To Run The Job
Control Settings Control Co	een To Run The Job
Control Settings Control Co	een To Run The Job
Control Settings Control Co	een To Run The Job

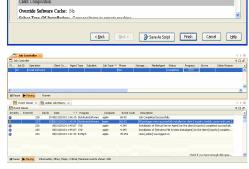
- 14. You can track the progress of the job from the Job Controller or Event Viewer window.
- 15. Once the job is complete, right-click the CommServe computer, click View and then click Admin Job History.

16. Select Install/Upgrade/Remove Software. Click OK.

- You can view the following details about the job by right-clicking the job: 17.
 - Items that succeeded during the job
 - Items that failed during the job
 - Details of the job

Select Type Of Installation: Windows Select Type Of Client Discovery: Manually select computers Exclude discovery of computers with SRM agents already installed: Yes Reuse Active Directory credentials: N_0 Client Authentication for Job User Name: IDCLAB/administrator Password: **** Install Flags Initial Plagi Initial Plagi Initial Updates: Yes Robot (ff required): No Kill Browser Pracesses (ff required): No Stop Oracle Services (ff required): No Stop Charles Services (ff required): No Delser Packages After Initial: No Ignore Clearit/Browser Only: No Initial Agents For Sestore Only: No Client Composition Override Software Cache: No Salast Time Of Installation: C <Back Ment > Save As Script Finish Cancel Help St Adre Job ID Date wing Information, Mro. 🆻 🖪 🖳 🗞 🖾 📓 🕏 ð6 🚴 apple > P 🗆 I 2 . Nier 0 Storage Admin Job H Log Files Users Logged In Schedules Fl... Job ID Operat 21 Data Agi Pause Playing Run 🛛 😥 Event Viewer 🗴 🎆 Admin Job History 🗙 19:1 19:1 35:: 68:1 apple apple apple Playing Information, Minor, Major, Critical, Maxim 30 ¥ onle admi Admin Job History Filter loh Ty O All O Data Aging O Export Media O Disaster Recovery Backup O Auxiliary Copy O Inventory





-ase verify all the selected options and click Finish to run the job immediately or click Save As Script to save the job options as a script.

Summary

Client Install Option



- Events of the job
- Log files of the job

Job Type	Job ID	Status	Start Time	End Time	User N	Error C	Storag	Auton	Legal	Legal	
Install Software	20	S Complete	View Job Details	11.	, admin			NIA.	N/A	N/A	
			Resubmit Job								
			View Events								
			View Content In	dex 🔸							
			View Logs								
			Send Logs								

18.

Enable the following registry key to create job specific profiles:

- From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers.
- Right-click the <Client> in which you want to add the registry key, and then click Properties.
- Click the Registry Key Settings tab.
- Click Add.
- Enter CreateProcessSpecificProfile in the Name field.
- Enter MSExchangeMBAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

Enter MSExchangeDMAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

- Enter REG_DWORD in the Type filed.
- Enter 1 to enable and 0 to disable the key in the Value field.
- Click OK.



Install the Exchange Agents for Exchange Server 2003 on a Non-Exchange Server



Follow the steps given below to install the Exchange Agents on Non-Exchange Server 2003.

WHERE TO INSTALL

The 32-bit Exchange Agents can be installed on a separate computer with connectivity to the Exchange Server. This method is referred to as an Non-Exchange Server installation and is useful if you want to offload the memory and processing resources required for backups and restores from the Exchange Server.

INSTALLATION

The software can be installed using one of the following methods:

METHOD 1: INTERACTIVE INSTALL

Use this procedure to directly install the software from the installation package or a network drive.

METHOD 2: INSTALL SOFTWARE FROM COMMCELL CONSOLE

Use this procedure to remotely install the software on a client computer.

PREREQUISITES

The below mentioned prerequisites are for Mailbox Agents only. Ensure that you have the following:

- The mail-enabled user is a member of the Local Administrator Group and have rights to all mailboxes on the server.
- Using the Exchange System Manager snap-in, right-click the organization object and delegate control.
- Using the Wizard, assign the MailboxAdmin user Exchange Full Administrator privileges.
- Ensure that you assign full access to all mailboxes on the server. For details, see How do I Assign Full Access to All Mailboxes on a Server.

METHOD 1: INTERACTIVE INSTALL

- 1. Log on to the computer using an account with the following privileges:
 - Administrator of the local computer
 - Administrator of the Exchange Server
- 2. Create the bAllowMultiInstances registry key.

NOTES:

3.

• If any 64-bit agent software is already installed on the Proxy Server, create bAllowMultiInstances registry key to install the Exchange *i*DataAgents on separate instance.

To create the registry key, see the following steps:

RELATED TOPICS

System Requirements

Firewall

Download Software Packages

Provides step-by-step procedure to download the latest packages for software install.

Verify that the computer in which you wish to install the software satisfies the System Requirements.

Provides comprehensive information on firewall.

- 1. Start the Registry Editor (Regedit.exe or Redegt32.exe)
- Locate the directory under which you want to create a key, e.g., HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\.
- 3. Right click the SOFTWARE and click New -> Key.
- 4. Name the key as GalaxyInstallerFlags.
- 5. Right click the GalaxyInstallerFlags and select New -> DWORD value, name it as bAllowMultiInstances and by double clicking the bAllowMultiInstances key modify the Value data to 1.

To create the registry key, see the following steps:

- 1. Start the Registry Editor (Regedit.exe or Regedit32.exe)
- Locate the directory under which you want to create a key, e.g., HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Wow6432Node.
- 3. Right click the SOFTWARE and click New -> Key.
- 4. Name the key as GalaxyInstallerFlags.
- 5. Right click the GalaxyInstallerFlags and select New > DWORD value, name it as bAllow32BitInstallOn64Bit and by double clicking the bAllow32BitInstallOn64Bit key modify the Value data to 1.

4. Run Setup.exe from the Software Installation Package.

Create the bAllow32BitInstallOn64Bit registry key.

5. Select the required language.

Administration Guide - Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent

	Click Next.	
		Select the language you will use during installation. (English (United States)
		<u>N</u> ext > <u>Cancel</u>
6.	Select the Calypso 32-bit Software install options to install software. NOTES	
	• This screen will only appear when the bAllow32BitInstallOn64Bit registry key has been created and enabled on this computer.	
		⊖ Exit
7.	Select I accept the terms in the license agreement.	Installer
	Click Next.	License Agreement Please read the following License Agreement. Press the PAGE DOWN key to view the entire agreement.
		End User License and Limited Warranty Agreement Software Release 9.0.0
		(including Microsoft@ SQL Server™ 2008 Enterprise Edition, SQL Server™ 2008 Express Edition and Windows Pre-Installation Environment) Full Vices V Incess V Incess Advancement C I accept the terms in the Icense agreement.
		I accept the terms in the license agreement. I do not accept the terms in the license agreement. Installer
		< Back Next > Cancel
8.	If any agent software is already installed on the Proxy Server, select Create a new instance option to install the Exchange <i>i</i> DataAgents on separate instance. NOTES	Installer Install Instance Selection Please specify the instance you want to use during install.
	 This screen will appear when the bAllowMultiInstances registry key has enabled on this computer. 	Instance Selection Create a new instance (Not recommended) C Install to existing instance Select an installed instance. Client Name
		Client Host Name CommServe Name Installer
		< Back Next > Cancel

- Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent
- Exchange Public Folder iDataAgent

To install the **Exchange Archiver Agents**, expand **Client Modules | Archive Management**, and select one or more of the following:

- Exchange Compliance Archiver
- Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent
- Exchange Public Folder Archiver Agent

Click Next.

	Installer			
	Select Platforms			
	Select the platforms you	want to configure.		
	E Ca E Common Ter E Common Ter	hnology Engine	platform n descriptio	pointer over a ame to see a n of the platform and
		Il Console	reasons v disabled.	nhy it may be
	⊡ Client Module ⊞ Ca Backup	es & Recovery	Disk Sp	
	🖭 🗅 Web Ba	ndexing and Search ed Search & Browse	Installa	commended) tion Folder:
		fanagement usDataReplicator		0 MB/0 MB ary on C: drive:
	. ↔ BRM	ng Modules) MB/ 0 MB
	Tools Installer		×	legistry Keys In Use
	Install Agents for Res	ore Only < Bao	k Next>	Cancel
-				
figure	Installer	le e		
nd	Firewall Configurat Configure firewall servic			
	If there is a firewall bet	veen this machine and the C ervices	ommServe, configure firewa	Il services below.
	connection from here CommServe are block	/indows Firewall is limiting ne to a CommServe's tunnel po ted, and setup should instea	twork traffic. Whether it is p rt, whether all connections I d expect CommServe to co	ossible to open oward nnect back to this
		here is a Proxy in between. open connection to CommSe	rve on tunnel port	
		pen connection toward this n	nachine	
	C CommServe is read	hable only through a proxy		
	Installer		Next >	Cancel
	Installer CommServe Name			×
		computer name and host		
	CommServe (]	
	mycomputer.r	fully-qualified, IP host name; ycompany.com)	for example:	
	mycomputer.	nycompany.com		
	Installer	< Bar	k Next>	Cancel
		\ Dat	Nex()	
	Installer			
	Communication Int Setup will configure the			
		Select a client name audi_cn		
		Select an interface name th communicate with the Comr	at this computer will use to nServe	
		audi.mycompany.com	•	
		IP Address(es) for the selec	ted host.	
	Installer			
		< Bac	k Next>	Cancel

 If this computer and the CommServe is separated by a firewall, select the Configure firewall services option and then click Next.

For firewall options and configuration instructions, see Firewall Configuration and continue with the installation.

If firewall configuration is not required, click **Next**.

11.	Enter the fully qualified domain name of the CommServe Host Name .
	Click Next.

Do not use space and the following characters when specifying a new name for the CommServe Host Name:

\|`~!@#\$%^&*()+=<>/?,[]{}:;'"

12. Click Next.

 Select Add programs to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List, to add CommCel programs and services to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List.

Click Next.

This option enables CommCell operations across Windows firewall by adding CommCell programs and services to Windows firewall exclusion list.

It is recommended to select this option even if Windows firewall is disabled. This will allow the CommCell programs and services to function if the Windows firewall is enabled at a later time.

	Installer
	Windows Firewall Exclusion List Allow programs to communicate through Windows Firewall
	Windows Firewall is ON
	Add programs to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List
	If you plan on using Windows Firewall, it is recommended to add the software programs to the exclusion list.
	Installer Cancel
Verify the default location for software installation.	Installer
Click Browse to change the default location.	Destination Folder Select the destination folder to install the program files.
Click Next.	
• Do not install the software to a mapped network drive.	Click Next to accept the default location, or click Browse to choose an alternate location.
 Do not use the following characters when specifying the destination path: 	Destination Folder
/:*?"<> #	EXProgram Filest Browse
It is recommended that you use alphanumeric characters only.	Drive List C: 928 MB IIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIII
	Installer < Back Cancel
Select a Client Group from the list.	Installer
Click Next.	Client Group Selection Select a client group for the client.
This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the CommCell Console.	The Dient Group is a logical grouping of client machines which have the same associations at various levels like Schedule Policy: Activity Control, Security and Reports.
	Client group: None Selected client_group
	Installer Cancel
Click Next.	Installer
	Schedule Install of Automatic Updates Choose when you want to chedule an install of the downloaded updates.
	Schedule Install of Automatic Updates Once Weekly Weekly Weekly Weeksday Wednesday C Tuesday Wednesday C Thursday Saturday Sunday
	Installer < Back Cancel

17. Select a Storage Policy.

Click Next.

14.

15.

16.

NOTES

• A storage policy directs backup data to a media library. Each library has a default storage policy.

X

If you do not have Storage Policy created, this message will be displayed. Click ${\bf OK}.$

You can create the Storage Policy later in step 23.

18. Select Exchange Server Name and Exchange Server Version from drop-down list. Click Next.

19. Click Next.

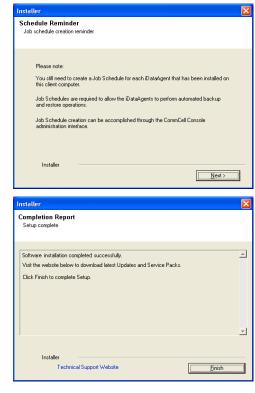
- 20. Enter the following Exchange Administrator information then click Next.
 - Account Name Domain user account created with the exchange server administrator permissions. Do not include the domain name here.
 - Account Password The password assigned to the domain user.
 - Mailbox Name for this Account Mailbox associated with the user above.
 - **Profile Name** Specify profile name to be created during agent install. This profile is associated with the domain user's mailbox.
 - Exchange Server Name Name of the Exchange Server that the agent will communicate with for data protection and recovery operations.

For Exchange Server 2010, enter the Client Access Role. After installation configure the roles as described in Configure Mailboxes in Database Availability Group (DAG) Servers.

- Domain The installation detects and enters a domain name. If necessary, modify the domain name by specifying Windows domain that the Exchange Server resides in.
- 21. Click Next.

Installer				
Storage Policy Sel	ection			
Select a storage policy backed up.	for the default subclie	ent to be		
Configure for Lap	ptop or Desktop Back	up		
Select a storage	e policy from the pull-c	lown list.		
	Unassigned		_	
Installer		< Back	Next >	Cancel
		(Block	HOM 7	
Installer Storage Policy Sel	ection			
Select a storage policy backed up.	for the default subolic aptop or Desktop Bac			
Installer		. Deale	Next >	Constant 1
		< Back	Next >	Cancel
Installer Exchange Server N	ame			×
Please provide Exchang				
- 5	kchange Server			
	Exchange Server			
	Exchange_Serve	ri I		
	Exchange Server	Version	F	
) 			
Installer				
		< <u>B</u> ack	<u>N</u> ext>	Cancel
Installer				
Summary Summary of install selec	tions			
Setup has enough i install settings, click	nformation to start co Next to begin copyin	pying the progra ig files.	am files. If you are sati	sfied with the
Destination Path = I	C:\Program Files\ mvcomputer.mvcomp	anu com		E
Interface Name = a Client =audi	udi.mycompany.com			
Global Filters = Use	C:\Program Files\Job Cell level policy	mesults		
Installer				<u>></u>
		< Back	Next>	Cancel
Installer				
Installer Exchange Administ	trator Account			
Information Mailbox and Profile info				
Please enter the Excha	nge account informat	ion required be	low. A new profile will	be created with
the information supplied				
Account Name:		Profile N	(ame:	
, Account Password:		Exchan	ge Server Name:	
Mailbox Name for this A	ccount:	Domain		
Installer		< Back	Next >	Cancel

22. Click Finish.



If you already have a storage policy selected in step 17, Click Next > button available at the bottom of the page to proceed to the **Configuration** section.

If you do not have Storage Policy created, continue with the following step.

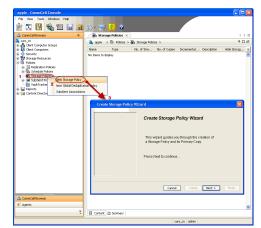
- 23. Create a Storage Policy:
 - 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Policies.
 - 2. Right-click the **Storage Policies** and then click **New Storage Policy**.
 - 3. Follow the prompts displayed in the Storage Policy Wizard. The required options are mentioned below:
 - Select the Storage Policy type as Data Protection and Archiving and click Next.
 - Enter the name in the Storage Policy Name box and click Next.
 - From the **Library** list, click the name of a disk library to which the primary copy should be associated and then click **Next**.

Ensure that you select a library attached to a MediaAgent operating in the current release.

- From the **MediaAgent** list, click the name of a MediaAgent that will be used to create the primary copy and then click **Next**.
- $\circ\;$ For the device streams and the retention criteria information, click Next to accept default values.
- $\circ~$ Select Yes to enable deduplication for the primary copy.
- From the **MediaAgent** list, click the name of the MediaAgent that will be used to store the Deduplication store.

Type the name of the folder in which the deduplication database must be located in the Deduplication Store Location or click the Browse button to select the folder and then click **Next**.

- Review the details and click **Finish** to create the Storage Policy.
- 24.
- Enable the following registry key to create job specific profiles:
- From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers.
- Right-click the <Client> in which you want to add the registry key, and then click Properties.
- Click the Registry Key Settings tab.
- Click Add.
- Enter CreateProcessSpecificProfile in the Name field.
- Enter MSExchangeMBAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).



Enter MSExchangeDMAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

- Enter REG_DWORD in the Type filed.
- Enter 1 to enable and 0 to disable the key in the Value field.
- Click OK.

METHOD 2: INSTALL SOFTWARE FROM COMMCELL CONSOLE

1. From the CommCell Browser, select **Tools**, point to **Add/Remove Software**, and then click **Install Software**.

2. Click Next.

3. Select Windows. Click Next.

4. Select Manually Select Computers. Click Next.

murphy - CommCell Console		
. 1		
🖄 🌆 Browse & Recover		
CommCell Job Controller	🍇 murphy 🗙 🔝 Job Controller 🗙	
Comm Scheduler	murphy >	+ C &
Client Cl	Client Client	to Security
E Garuet Sacurate	Computer Computers	Security
🖶 😵 Storage 📱 Service Control Manager	Groups	
E Report 2		
Conter Controle	Install Updates	_
Musikeniove sortware	Install Updates Remove Updates 3	ontent irector
	(Install Software	
	Upgrade Software	
	Download Software	
	Copy Software	
🛕 CommCell Browser	Add/Remove Software Configuration	
Agents		
*		
	L	
	murphy admin	
Installer		
instali Wizard		
msun mano		
	steps required to install software on compu	ters.
Click Next to continue.		
	Seve As Script Finish Cancel	Help
< Back (best >)	Save As Script Finish Cancel	Help
< Back (Mext>)	Save As Script Finish Cancel	Ereb X
Installer		
Installer Select the computer's operating		
Installer Select the computor's operating		

5. Enter the fully qualified domain name of the computer on which you have Exchange Server.

For example: win08ex07.idclab.loc Click Next.

6. Click Next.

 Specify User Name and Password that must be used to access the computer. Click Next.

Installer	×
Select how to discover the computers for installing the s	oftware
Software will be installed only on the selected list of computers.	
Automatically discover computers	
Computers will be discovered when the job runs.	
< Back Next > Save As Script Finish	Cancel Help
Installer	×
Enter the host names of the computers	
Please enter the host names of the computers, one per line win08ex07.iddab.loc	Import from File
	Import From Active Directory
	Select from existing clients
< Back Next > Save As Script	Finish Cancel Help
Installer	
Select Software Cache	
Select Software Cache	
Select Software Cache To use curreit Clerk or Clerk Group Software Cache settings, dich Next. To overside Sof Overside Software Cache and select the Software Cache to be used.	
Select Software Geche To use current Clerk or client Group Software Cache settings, clch librit. To override Sof Override Software Cache and select the Software Cache to be used.	
Select Software Geche To use current Clerk or client Group Software Cache settings, clch librit. To override Sof Override Software Cache and select the Software Cache to be used.	
Select Software Geche To use current Clerk or client Group Software Cache settings, clch librit. To override Sof Override Software Cache and select the Software Cache to be used.	
Select Software Geche To use current Clerk or client Group Software Cache settings, clch librit. To override Sof Override Software Cache and select the Software Cache to be used.	
Select Software Cache To use curset. Clerk or clerk or use Software Cache setting; ddi. Hext. To override Sof Override Software Cache and select the Software Cache to be used. Override Software Cache	
Select Software Cache To use curset. Clerk or clerk or use Software Cache setting; ddi. Hext. To override Sof Override Software Cache and select the Software Cache to be used. Override Software Cache	
Select Software Cache To use curset. Clerk or clerk or use Software Cache setting; ddi. Hext. To override Sof Override Software Cache and select the Software Cache to be used. Override Software Cache	
Select Software Cache To use curset. Clerk or clerk or use Software Cache setting; ddi. Hext. To override Sof Override Software Cache and select the Software Cache to be used. Override Software Cache	
Select Software Cache Touse current Client or Client Group Software Cache settings, did, Hexit. To override Software Cache and Software Cache and Software Cache Override Software Cache Software Cache: murphy.downin.company.com	tuere Cathe settregs check
Select Software Cache To use curset. Clerk or clerk or use Software Cache setting; ddi. Hext. To override Sof Override Software Cache and select the Software Cache to be used. Override Software Cache	tuere Cathe settregs check
Select Software Cache To use current client or Calent group Software Cache settings, doi, Next. To overnide Software Cache and select the Software Cache to be used. Overnide Software Cache Software Cache: murghy.downan.company.com	brare Cathe settings thes:
Select Software Cache To use current Clert or Cleft Group Software Cache settings, did, Host. To override Software Cache and select the Software Cache Override Software Cache	tuere Cathe settregs check
Select Software Cache To use current client or Calent group Software Cache settings, doi, Next. To overnide Software Cache and select the Software Cache to be used. Overnide Software Cache Software Cache: murghy.downan.company.com	brare Cathe settings thed:
Select Software Cache To us current Clert or Clert Group Software Cache settings, disk Next. To overnide Selected Sele	there Cathe settings thesk
Select Software Cache To us curret Cleft or Cleft Group Software Cache settings, did, Host. To overde Software Cache Overde Software Cache Software C	tware Cashe sattrings direct.
Select Software Cache To us current Clert or Clert Group Software Cache settings, disk Next. To overnide Selected Sele	tware Cashe sattrings direct.
Select Software Cache To use current client or Cache to possibly cache settings, did, Hext. To override Software Cache and select the Software Cache to be used. Override Software Cache Software Cach	tware Cashe sattrings direct.
Select Software Cache To us curret Clert or Clert or op Software Cache settings, did, Host. To override Software Cache and select the Software Cache and select the Software Cache Override Software Cache	tware Cashe sattrings direct.
Select Software Cache To use current Clert or Cache to Software Cache settings, did, Hext. To override Software Cache and select the Software Cache settings, did, Hext. To override Software Cache Override Software Cache Override Software Cache Software Cache Software Cache Installer Enter Account Information The specified account should have administrative access to the computer multiple dients, the user should have access to al clents. Reuse Active Directory credentials User Name:	tware Cashe sattrings direct.
Select Software Cache To use current client or client is cogno Software Cache settings, did, Hext. To override Selected Selecte	tware Cashe sattrings direct.
Select Software Cache To use correct Cleft or Cleft for copy Software Cache settings, disk Next. To override Software Cache Override Software Cache S	tware Cashe sattrings direct.
Select Software Cache To use correct Cleft or Cleft or cleft or top Software Cache settings, disk Next. To override Software Cache Override Software Cache	tware Cashe sattrings direct.
Select Software Cache To use correct Cleft or Cleft or cleft or top Software Cache settings, disk Next. To override Software Cache Override Software Cache	tware Cashe sattrings direct.
Select Software Cache To use current client or client drougs Software Cache settings, did, Next. To override Selected Software Cache and select the Software Cache to be used. Owned Software Cache So	tware Cashe sattrings direct.
Select Software Cache To use current client or client drougs Software Cache settings, did, Next. To override Selected Software Cache and select the Software Cache to be used. Owned Software Cache So	tware Cashe sattrings direct.
Select Software Cache To use current client or client drougs Software Cache settings, did, Next. To override Selected Software Cache and select the Software Cache to be used. Owned Software Cache So	tware Cashe sattrings direct.
Select Software Cache To use current client or client drougs Software Cache settings, did, Next. To override Selected Software Cache and select the Software Cache to be used. Owned Software Cache So	tware Cashe sattrings direct.

- 8. To install the Exchange iDataAgents expand Client Modules | Backup & Recovery | Exchange, and select one or more of the following:
 - Exchange Database iDataAgent
 - Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent
 - Exchange Public Folder iDataAgent

Click Next.

For Non-Exchange Server, Exchange Database iDataAgent will not be applicable.

- 9.
 - Select Client Group from Available and click Add.
 - Select a **Storage Policy** from the drop-down list. Click **Next**.
 - NOTES:
 - Select the **Configure for Laptop or Desktop Backup** option to install **Backup Monitor** utility. This utility allows you to view the backup job summary from the client computer without opening the CommCell Console. See Monitor - Laptop User for more information.
- 10. Type the Agent Specific Settings information. Click Next.

11. Click Next.

12. Select Immediate. Click Next.

Installer

 Enter the Install Options for the s

 April Sociel Sature

 Enter the Install Options for the s

 Compared Sature

 Enter the Install Options

 Installer

 Install

	<back next=""> P Save As Script Finish Cancel Heb</back>
aller	×
nter the Install Options fo	or the selected Software
Agent Specific Settings	
Components	
	Information (Optional)
Server Name wh08	
User Account IDOLA	
Maibox Name	
Profile Name	
😑 Exchange Databa	se (Optional)
User Account IDCLA	Bladministrator Configure Password
🔘 Differential Backup	
 Incremental Backurght 	p
	< Book New > Save As Script Finish Centel Help
	Clark Barry Barry Lines Carta Bab
aller	X
ter Additional Install On	tions
nter Additional Install Op	tions
Installer Flags	tions
 Installer Flags Install Updates 	ions
Installer Flags Install Updates Reboot (if required)	
Installer Flags Install Updates Reboot (if required) Kill Browser Processes (
Installer Flags Install Updates Reboot (if required) Kill Browser Processes (Ignore Running Jobs	f regared)
Installer Flags Install Updates Reboot (if required) Kill Browser Processes (Igrore Running Jobs Stop Crade Services (if	f reared
Installer Flags Installer Flags Installer Flags Rebox (if required) Kill Browser Processes (Ignore Running Jobs Box Oracle Services (if Stip clients that are ain	f regared)
Installer Flags Installer Flags Install Updates Reboot (/ required) Idl Browser Processes (Ignore Running Jobs Stop Oracle Services (Stop Oracle Services (Advanced Options Advanced Options	f regated) regated) ody part of the ConniCal component.
Installer Flags Install Updates Install Updates Reboot (if required) Kill Browser Processes (i Igrowse Running Jobs Sup Cincide Services (if Silp clients that are ain Advanced Options Otolete Packages After Idon State	f regared) regared) body part of the CommCell component
Installer Flags Installer Flags Install Updates Reboot (/ required) Idl Browser Processes (Ignore Running Jobs Stop Oracle Services (Stop Oracle Services (Advanced Options Advanced Options	f regared) regared) obly gat of the Camical component
Installer Flags Finatal Updates Install Updates Install Updates It Browser Processes (Ingrore Running Jobs Ingrore Running Jobs Ingrore Running Jobs Ingrore Running Jobs Ingrore Running Ingrore V Detect Poptages After V Detect Poptages After V Ingrore Clentyfroth Han	f regized) regized) hord if the ComrCit component control control
Installer Flags Installer Flags Install Updates Install Updates Install Updates Install Updates Install Updates Install Installer Flags Install Installer Flags Install Installer Flags Install Flags Installer Installer Flags Installer I	f regized) regized) hord if the ComrCit component control control
Installer Flags Installer Flags Installer Flags Install loaders Belook (I regard) Install loaders Install Reverse Processes(Ins	f regared) negared) botal e corfst e corfst
Installer Flags Installer Flags Install lopates Autocol () regards Install lopates Install lopates Install lopate Star () regards Star () regards Star () regards Star () regards Autocol () process Star () regards Install lopate () to () toological Install lopates () to () toological Install lopates () to () toological Star () regards	f regared) negared) botal e corfst e corfst
Instater Flags Install tipstee Installingtee Installingtee Installingtee Installi	f regared) regared) boy per d'Un ComrCil component tord confat confat confat tory tory tory tory tory
	f regized) regized) hord of the ComrCit component control es Cohrs es Cohrs
Installer Flags Installer Flags Install typides Install typide Install t	f regared) regared) boy per d'Un ComrCil component tord confat confat confat tory tory tory tory tory
	f regared) regared) boy per d'Un ComrCil component tord confat confat confat tory tory tory tory tory
Instater Flags Install Update Install Install Update Install Inst	f regared) regared) boy per d'Un ComrCil component tord confat confat confat tory tory tory tory tory
Instater Flags Install Update Install Install Update Install Inst	f regared) regared) boy per d'Un ComrCil component tord confat confat confat tory tory tory tory tory

: Point iData

Client Groups

Global Filters Use

er Recommended Settings for the selected Software

Use Cell lev

<Back Next > Dr Sav

Add All >>

<< Remove All

Selected: Laptop Backu Finish Cancel Help

13. Click Finish.

- 14. You can track the progress of the job from the **Job Controller** or **Event Viewer** window.
- 15. Once the job is complete, right-click the **CommServe** computer, click **View** and then click **Admin Job History**.
- Job Initiation (Immediate Run this job now 🔿 Schedule <Back Next > Save As Script Finish Cancel Help Summary Please verify all the selected options and click Finish to run the job immediately or click Save As Script to save the job options as a script. Client Install Option Select Type Of Installation: Windows Select Type Of Client Discovery: Manually select computers Exclude discovery of computers with SRM agents already installed: Yes Reuse Active Directory credentials: No Client Authentication for Job User Name: IDCLAB\administrator Password: **** Install Flags Initial Flags
 Initial Flags
 Initial Type (I required): No
 Kall Browner Processes (ff required): No
 Japorr Rauning, Adox: No
 Stop Oracle Services (ff required): No
 Stop Oracle Services (ff required): No
 Delse Packages After Initial: No
 Japort Cleart/Brown and France Cultific: Yes
 Initial Agains For Restore Only: No Client Composition Override Software Cache: No Salast Time Of Installations <Back Mext > Save As Script Finish Cancel Help Agent Type Subclient Job Typer 1 Phase E
 Brann
 Figting
 Purnin
 Figting
 Purnin
 Figting
 Purnin
 08/31/2010 11:45:07 CVD 08/31/2010 11:45:07 CVD 08/31/2010 11:41:39 EvMgr5 apple apple 4:345 🌶 🏹 💾 🗞 🕮 📓 🕯 🚴 app P 🗆 d 🚴 apple >

talle

Please Select When To Run The Job



16. Select Install/Upgrade/Remove Software. Click OK.

Admin Job History Filter		X		
⊂ Job Type				
O AI	O Data Aging	C Export Media		
 Auxiliary Copy 	O Inventory	O Disaster Recovery Backup		
O Data Verification	O Offline Content Indexing	C Erase Media		
C Erase Backup/Archived Data	O Drive Validation	O Drive Cleaning		
Stamp Media	Install/Remove Updates	Download/Copy Software		
Install/Upgrade/Remove Software	Disk Library Maintenance	-		
	7	SRM Reports/Actions		
Information Management	O CommCell Export	 CommCell Import 		
O Media Refreshing	O Recover Store			
Specify Time Range				
	stern Time (US & Canada)	×		
Start Time	End Time			
Mon 08/30/2010	Tue 08	/31/2010		
12:07 PM	-	12:07 PM		
Job Status				
⊙ All O Comp	leted O Failed	🔿 Killed		
Number of Jobs				
 View All Jobs 				
 Desired Number of Jobs 	10 +			
Include Aged Data				
Turning when para				
2 OK Cancel Help				
Con Classific Lash				
🐉 Admin Job History 🗙 🚡 apple 🗴				
404				
Tostal Software 20 Scooolate	11admin	C Storag Autom Legal Legal		
View	Job Details			
	Events			
	Content Index 🔸			
	Logs ILogs			
Total records count : 9		×		

- 17. You can view the following details about the job by right-clicking the job:
 - Items that succeeded during the job
 - Items that failed during the job
 - Details of the job
 - Events of the job
 - Log files of the job
- **18.** Enable the following registry key to create job specific profiles:
 - From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers.
 - Right-click the <Client> in which you want to add the registry key, and then click Properties.
 - Click the Registry Key Settings tab.
 - Click Add.
 - Enter CreateProcessSpecificProfile in the Name field.
 - Enter MSExchangeMBAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

Enter MSExchangeDMAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

- Enter REG_DWORD in the Type filed.
- Enter 1 to enable and 0 to disable the key in the Value field.
- Click OK.

Previous Next >

Install the Exchange Agents on Exchange Server 2003 -Clustered Environment

< Previous Next >

Follow the steps given below to install the Exchange Agents in clustered environment on the following:

- Exchange Server 2003
- Non-Exchange Server

WHERE TO INSTALL

The following procedure describes the steps involved in installing the Exchange Agents for Exchange Server 2003 on the following:

- Direct install on a Exchange Server or
- On an Non-Exchange Server computer. This may be used for the following circumstances:
 In the configuration where a single non-Exchange client is used to backup multiple Exchange Servers.
 - To off-load the backup of Exchange Server, so that the performance of the Exchange Server will not be effected.

RELATED TOPICS

- **Download Software Packages** Provides step-by-step procedure to download the latest packages for software install.
- **System Requirements** Verify that the computer in which you wish to install the software satisfies the System Requirements.
- Firewall Provides comprehensive information on firewall.

PREREQUISITES

The below mentioned prerequisites are for Mailbox Agents only. Ensure that you have the following:

- The mail-enabled user is a member of the Local Administrator Group and have rights to all mailboxes on the server.
- Using the Exchange System Manager snap-in, right-click the organization object and delegate control.
- Using the Wizard, assign the MailboxAdmin user Exchange Full Administrator privileges.
- Ensure that you assign full access to all mailboxes on the server. For details, see How do I Assign Full Access to All Mailboxes on a Server.

INSTALL PROCEDURE

- 1. Log on to the computer using an account with the following privileges:
 - Administrator of the local computer
 - Administrator of the Exchange Server
- 2. Run Setup.exe from the Software Installation Package.
- 3. Select the required language.

Click Next.

Select the language you will use during installation.	
<u>Next</u> >	Cancel
Advanced options	
♦ View documentation website	
View Install Quick Start Guide (Requires Adobe Acrobat Reader)	
Install Adobe Acrobat Reader	
	🖨 Exit

4. Select the option to install software on this computer.

The options that appear on this screen depend on the computer in which the software is being installed.

5. Select I accept the terms in the license agreement.

Administration Guide - Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent

	Click Next .	Installer 🛛 🔀
		License Agreement Please read the following License Agreement. Press
		the PAGE DOWN key to view the entire agreement.
		End User License and Limited Warranty Agreement
		Software Release 9.0.0
		(including Microsoft® SQL Server™ 2008 Enterprise Edition, SQL Server™
		2008 Express Edition and Windows Pre-Installation Environment)
		Event Tissues Assessment
		C I do not accept the terms in the license agreement.
		Installer
6.	Select Configure a Virtual Server .	Installer 🛛 🔀
	Click Next .	Cluster Type Selection Configure the Physical Node or a Virtual Server
		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
		Configuration Options
		C Configure the Physical node
		C Configure a ⊻ittual server
		< Back <u>Next></u>
7.	Select the disk group in which the virtual server resides.	Installer 🛛 🔀
	Click Next.	Virtual Server Selection Select the virtual server you would like to configure
		Select the virtual server you would like to conligue
		Choose from the following list of disk groups configured on this cluster.
		Chaose from the following list of disk groups configured on this cluster.
		configured on this cluster.
		configured on this cluster.
		configured on this cluster.
		configured on this cluster.
		configured on this cluster.
		configured on this cluster.
8.	To install the Exchange <i>i</i> DataAgents expand Client Modules Exchange , and select	configured on this cluster.
8.	one or more of the following:	configured on this cluster.
8.	one or more of the following: Exchange Database iDataAgent 	configured on this cluster.
8.	one or more of the following: Exchange Database iDataAgent Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent 	Configured on this cluster. COUGCUNTERVINS Cancel Installer Select Platforms Select Platforms Select he platforms you want to configure. Do Compose Lectorology Engine Move the pointer over a platform name to see a
8.	one or more of the following: Exchange Database iDataAgent Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent Exchange Public Folder iDataAgent 	Configured on this cluster. COUCH AND
8.	one or more of the following: Exchange Database iDataAgent Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent 	configured on this cluster. 20030/usterVMS < Back Mext> Common Technology Engine Mexter Modules District Modules
8.	one or more of the following: • Exchange Database iDataAgent • Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent • Exchange Public Folder iDataAgent To install the Exchange Archiver Agents, expand Client Modules Archive	configured on this cluster. 20030ListeVMS < <u>Back</u> Next> Cancel Installer Select Platforms Ommemory connect Concide Disk Space Disk Space Disk Space Image: Disk Space Select Modules
8.	one or more of the following: • Exchange Database iDataAgent • Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent • Exchange Public Folder iDataAgent To install the Exchange Archiver Agents, expand Client Modules Archive Management, and select one or more of the following:	configured on this cluster. 20030ListeVMS < Back Next>
8.	one or more of the following: Exchange Database iDataAgent Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent Exchange Public Folder iDataAgent To install the Exchange Archiver Agents, expand Client Modules Archive Management, and select one or more of the following: Exchange Compliance Archiver	configured on this cluster. Concollate/VMS Cancel Concollate/VMS Cancel Concollate/VMS Cancel Concollate/VMS Cancel Concollate/VMS Concollate/VMS
8.	one or more of the following: Exchange Database iDataAgent Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent Exchange Public Folder iDataAgent To install the Exchange Archiver Agents, expand Client Modules Archive Management, and select one or more of the following: Exchange Compliance Archiver Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent	configured on this cluster. 200301/0144/MS < 200301/0144/MS < <td< th=""></td<>
8.	one or more of the following: • Exchange Database iDataAgent • Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent • Exchange Public Folder iDataAgent To install the Exchange Archiver Agents, expand Client Modules Archive Management, and select one or more of the following: • Exchange Compliance Archiver • Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent • Exchange Public Folder Archiver Agent	configured on this cluster. 200301/0144/MS 200301/0144/MS Back Next> Cancel Installer Select Platforms Select Platforms Select Platforms Common Technology Engine Common Technology Common Techno

If this computer and the CommServe is separated by a firewall, select the **Configure firewall services** option and then click **Next**.

For firewall options and configuration instructions, see Firewall Configuration and continue with the installation.

If firewall configuration is not required, click $\ensuremath{\textbf{Next}}.$

9.

10. Enter the fully qualified domain name of the CommServe Host Name.

Click Next.

Do not use space and the following characters when specifying a new name for the CommServe Host Name:

\|`~!@#\$%^&*()+=<>/?,[]{}:;'"

11. Click Next.

12. Select **Add programs to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List**, to add CommCell programs and services to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List.

Click Next.

This option enables CommCell operations across Windows firewall by adding CommCell programs and services to Windows firewall exclusion list.

It is recommended to select this option even if Windows firewall is disabled. This will allow the CommCell programs and services to function if the Windows firewall is enabled at a later time.

machine, or wheth	her there is a Proxy in between.
This machine c	an open connection to CommServe on tunnel port
C CommServe ca	n open connection toward this machine
C CommServe is r	reachable only through a proxy
Installer	
	Next > Cancel
nstaller	
CommServe Nan	
	erve computer name and host
CommServ	ve Client Name
ļ	
(Enter a va	ve Host Name alid, fully-qualified, IP host name; for example: er.mycompany.com)
mycompu	iter.mycompany.com
,	
Installer	
	<back next=""> Cancel</back>
nstaller	X
Communication	
	the communication paths.
	Select a client name
	audi_cn
	Select an interface name that this computer will use to communicate with the CommServe
	audi.mycompany.com
	IP Address(es) for the selected host.
1	
Installer	< Back Next > Cancel
nstaller	×
Windows Firewa Allow programs to co Firewall	III Exclusion List ommunicate through Windows
Windows Firew	all is ON
Add program	ms to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List
If you plan on u exclusion list.	
	sing Windows Firewall, it is recommended to add the software programs to the
	$\sin \omega V \mbox{indows}$ Firewall, it is recommended to add the software programs to the

< Back

Next >

If there is a firewall between this machine and the CommServe, configure firewall services below

Installer Firewall Configuration Configure firewall services

Configure firewall services

Installer

13. Verify the default location for software installation.

Click **Browse** to change the default location.

Click Next.

- Do not install the software to a mapped network drive.
- Do not use the following characters when specifying the destination path:

/:*?"<>|#

Cancel

		Installer
	It is recommended that you use alphanumeric characters only.	Destination Folder Select the destination folder to install the program files.
		Click Next to accept the default location, or click Browse to choose an alternat Destination Folder ENProgram FileS Drive List C. S28 MB Installer < Back Next>
14.	Select a Client Group from the list.	Installer
	Click Next .	Client Group Selection Select a client group for the client.
	This screen will be displayed if Client Groups are configured in the CommCell Console.	The Client Group is a logical grouping of client machines which have the same associations at various levels like
		Schedule Policy, Activity Control, Security and Reports. Client group: None Selected client_group Installer < Back Next>
15.	Click Next.	Installer
		Schedule Install of Automatic Updates Choose when you want to schedule an install of the downloaded updates.
		✓ Schedule Install of Automatic Updates C Droce ☞ Weekly ☞ Monday ☞ Monday ☞ Monday ☞ Monday ☞ Monday ☞ Hinday ⓒ Sunday Installer
1.6		
16.	Select a Storage Policy . Click Next .	Installer Storage Policy Selection Select a storage policy for the default subclient to be backed up. Configure for Laptop or Desktop Backup
		Select a storage policy from the pull-down list.
		Installer CBackNext>
	If you do not have Storage Policy created, this message will be displayed.	Installer Storage Policy Selection
	Click OK .	Select a storage policy for the default subclient to be backed up.
	You can create the Storage Policy later in step 32.	
		Installer < Back Next >

• If you are installing the Exchange Database iDataAgent on the Exchange Server, click Configure Exchange Database Specific Information.

X

e location.

Cancel

Cancel

Cancel

Cancel

Cancel

X

X

• If you are installing the Exchange Agents on the Non-Exchange Server, skip to Configure Exchange Agents Specific Information.

CONFIGURE EXCHANGE DATABASE SPECIFIC INFORMATION

- 17. Select the backup type for Exchange Database backups. Choose either of the following options, then click **Next**.
 - Differential Specifies that each non-full Exchange Database backup secures all data that has changed since the last full backup. Transaction lobs are not purged.
 - **Incremental** Specifies that each non-full Exchange Database backup secures only that data that has changed since the last backup of any type. Committed transaction logs are purged.

	m
Installer	×
Exchange Backup Optio	
Please select a default backu	p type
C 877 111	
C Differential	Backs up changes in the Information Store and Directory Service since the last
	Full backup. Does not purge the transaction logs.
	cansaction rugs.
Incremental	Backs up changes in the Information
	Backs up changes in the Information Store and Directory Service since the last Full backup or Incremental backup. The
	committed transaction logs are then
	purged.
Installer	
	<back next=""> Cancel</back>
	×
Enter Administrator acco	
Enter Administrator account inf	
Account	Name:
Account	Password:
Domain:	
EXCH	
	Next> Cancel
In the line	X
Installer	
Summary	
Summary of install selections	
Setup has enough information	ion to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the
install settings, click Next t	o begin copying mes.
	<u>^</u>
Destination Path = C:\Prog CommServe Host = mycon Interface Name = audi.my	ram Files\ 🗧
Lommserve Host = mycon Interface Name = audi.my	poter.mycompany.com company.com
Client = audi Job Results Path = C:\Pro	
Global Filters = Use Cell let	
<	≥ N
	×.
Installer	
	< Back Next > Cancel
Installer	
Please verify that G backup operations.	cular Logging is disabled before performing any database
backup operations.	
	OK I

- **18.** Enter the user credentials to access the Exchange Server to perform the backup operation.
 - The User Account must have Exchange Administrator privileges.
 - The installation detects the domain name. If necessary, you can modify the domain name by specifying Windows domain that the Exchange Server resides in.

19. Click Next.

- **20.** The install program displays a reminder to verify that Circular Logging is disabled before performing any database backup operations. To verify that Circular Logging is disabled:
 - From Exchange System Manager, navigate to and expand the server that the Database *i*DataAgent is being installed on.
 - Verify that the Circular Logging check box has not been selected for each Storage Group. If Circular Logging has been enabled for a Storage Group, disable it at this time.

Click OK.

- If you are installing the Exchange Agents, then click Configure Exchange Agents Specific Information.
- If you are installing the Exchange Database *i*DataAgent, skip to Install Remaining Cluster Nodes.

CONFIGURE EXCHANGE AGENTS SPECIFIC INFORMATION

21. Select Exchange Server Name and Exchange Server Version from drop-down list.

Click Next.

This screen will appear when you are installing Exchange Agents on Non-Exchange Server.

22. Click Next.

- 23. Enter the following Exchange Administrator information then click **Next**.
 - Account Name Domain user account created with the exchange server administrator permissions. Do not include the domain name here.
 - Account Password The password assigned to the domain user.
 - Mailbox Name for this Account Mailbox associated with the user above.
 - **Profile Name** Specify profile name to be created during agent install. This profile is associated with the domain user's mailbox.
 - **Exchange Server Name** Name of the Exchange Server that the agent will communicate with for data protection and recovery operations.

For Exchange Server 2010, enter the Client Access Role. After installation configure the roles as described in Configure Mailboxes in Database Availability Group (DAG) Servers.

 Domain - The installation detects and enters a domain name. If necessary, modify the domain name by specifying Windows domain that the Exchange Server resides in.

INSTALL REMAINING CLUSTER NODES

24. To install the software on the remaining nodes of the cluster, click **Yes**.

To complete the install for this node only, click No.

25. Select cluster nodes from the **Preferred Nodes** list and click the arrow button to move them to the **Selected Nodes** list.

Once you complete your selections, click Next.

- The list of **Preferred Nodes** displays all the nodes found in the cluster; from this list you should only select cluster nodes configured to host this cluster group server.
- Do not select nodes that already have multiple instances installed.

nstaller			×
Exchange Server Name Please provide Exchange server name			
Exchange Server Exchange Se Exchange Se Exchange Se Exchange 20	erver rver Version	.	
Installer	< <u>B</u> ack	<u>N</u> ext >	Cancel
Installer			
Summary Summary of install selections			
Setup has enough information to start install settings, click Next to begin co Destination Path = C:\Program Files\ CommServe Host = mycomputer.myc- Interface Name = aud.mycompany. Deb Fraulus Path = C:\Program Files\ Global Filters = Use Cell level policy	pying files. ompany.com	Next >	Cancel
Installer Exchange Administrator Account Information Mailbox and Profile information	t		×
Please enter the Exchange account infor the information supplied. Account Name: Account Password: Mailbox Name for this Account:	Profile N	lame: ge Server Name:	created with
Installer	< Back	Next >	Cancel

Installer	
?	Would you like to install the software on remaining nodes on the cluster?
	Ves No

26. Specify User Name and Password for the Domain Administrator account Information to perform the remote install on the cluster nodes you selected previous step.

Click Next.

27. The progress of the remote install for the cluster nodes is displayed; the inst interrupted if necessary.

Click Stop to prevent installation to any nodes after the current ones comple

Click **Advanced Settings** to specify any of the following:

- Maximum number of nodes on which Setup can run simultaneously.
- Time allocated for Setup to begin executing on each node, after which the ٠ attempt will fail.
- Time allocated for Setup to complete on each node, after which the instal • will fail.

If, during the remote install of a cluster node, setup fails to complete interrupted, you must perform a local install on that node. When you the install begins from where it left off, or from the beginning if necessary. For procedures, see Manually Installing the Software on a Passive Node.

Read the summary for remote installation to verify that all selected nodes w 28. installed successfully.

Click Next.

- If any node installation fails, you must manually install the softwa that node once the current installation is complete. See Manually Installing the Software on a Passive Node for step-by-step instructions.
- The message displayed on your screen will reflect the status of the selected nodes, and may look different from the example.

	Installer
	Cluster Node Selection Select cluster nodes to configure
nt	Preferred Nodes Selected Nodes YmcLuste2 > <
nt d in the	Installer Domain administrator account information
	Please provide domain administrator account
	Domain Account Information User Name [cD0MAIN/USER>]: LAB Vadministrator Account Password:
tall can be	Installer
ete.	You can stop remote install at any time. Installed clients will not be uninstalled. Clients in progress will continue installation, but their results will not show correctly.
	Dient Name Dient Status Start Time End Time Result Description real2
e install	
ll attempt	
e or is 1 do,	Installed successfully: 0 Left to install: 1 Failed to install: 0 In progress: 0 Max 1 = Elapsed time: 0 sec Estimated time left: 10 min 0 sec
a	1
1	Installer Advanced Settings Stop
	Installer
	Number of simultaneous remote machines to run Setup: 10 $\frac{1}{2}$ machines Time to wait for Setup to start on each remote machine: 2 $\frac{1}{2}$ minutes Time to wait for Setup to complete on each remote machine: 15 $\frac{1}{2}$ minutes
ere	Installer
	Results Remote install results
ire on	Summary of remote install
tions.	The following software (Version) were selected to be installed:

REAL2: Install succeeded.

*

<u>F</u>inish

X

30. Click Next.

31. Click Finish.

1 - 1 m	
Installer	<u>×</u>
Summary	
Summary of install selections	
Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the	
install settings, click Next to begin copying files.	
Destination Path = C:\Program Files\	
CommServe Host = mycomputer.mycompany.com Interface Name = audi.mycompany.com	
Client =audi Job Results Path = C:\Program Files\JobResults	
Global Filters = Use Cell level policy	
<u> </u>	
ζ	
Installer	
<back next=""> Cancel</back>	
	_
	_
Installer	×
Schedule Reminder	
Job schedule creation reminder	
Please note:	
Marcalline and the second on the Calendria for each Data (and that has been installed on	
You still need to create a Job Schedule for each iDataAgent that has been installed on this client computer.	
Job Schedules are required to allow the iDataAgents to perform automated backup and restore operations.	
Job Schedule creation can be accomplished through the CommCell Console	
administration interface.	
Installer	
(<u>N</u> ext>	
Installer	×
Completion Report	
Setup complete	
Software installation completed successfully.	-
Visit the website below to download latest Updates and Service Packs.	
Click Finish to complete Setup.	
	-
	_
Installer	

3

If you already have a storage policy selected in step 16, Click Next > button available at the bottom of the page to proceed to the **Configuration** section.

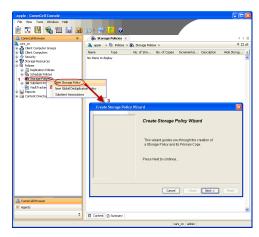
If you do not have Storage Policy created, continue with the following step.

32. Create a Storage Policy:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to **Policies**.
- 2. Right-click the Storage Policies and then click New Storage Policy.
- 3. Follow the prompts displayed in the Storage Policy Wizard. The required options are mentioned below:
 - Select the Storage Policy type as Data Protection and Archiving and click Next.
 - Enter the name in the Storage Policy Name box and click Next.
 - From the **Library** list, click the name of a disk library to which the primary copy should be associated and then click **Next**.

Ensure that you select a library attached to a MediaAgent operating in the current release.

- From the **MediaAgent** list, click the name of a MediaAgent that will be used to create the primary copy and then click **Next**.
- $\circ\;$ For the device streams and the retention criteria information, click Next to accept default values.
- $\circ~$ Select Yes to enable deduplication for the primary copy.
- From the **MediaAgent** list, click the name of the MediaAgent that will be used to store the Deduplication store.



Type the name of the folder in which the deduplication database must be located in the Deduplication Store Location or click the Browse button to select the folder and then click ${\bf Next}.$

 $\circ\;$ Review the details and click Finish to create the Storage Policy.

33.

- Enable the following registry key to create job specific profiles:
 - From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers.
 - Right-click the <Client> in which you want to add the registry key, and then click Properties.
 - Click the Registry Key Settings tab.
 - Click Add.
 - Enter CreateProcessSpecificProfile in the Name field.
 - Enter MSExchangeMBAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

 $\ensuremath{\mathsf{Enter}}$ MSExchangeDMAgent in the Location field. (For Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent).

- Enter REG_DWORD in the Type filed.
- Enter 1 to enable and 0 to disable the key in the Value field.
- Click OK.

< Previous Next >

Getting Started Configuration - Exchange Public Folder Archiver Agent

Once installed, configure an archive set and subclient as follows.

- From the CommCell Console, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> | Exchange PF Archiver | defaultArchiveSet.
 - Right-click the default subclient and then click **Properties**.

- Click the **Content** tab.
 - Click Browse.

1.

3. Select a folder and click **Add**.

- 4. Click Yes, then click Close.
- 5. Click **OK**.

: File View Tools Windows Help
CommCel Browser
a like coopy of
Corony 1x64 Corony 1
Exchange PF Archiver Exchange PF Archiver Fixed archiver Browse Backup Data
Of Exchange Public Folder List Media
Find Find
Ginda Schedules
Comaix1 Operation Window Comaix20
0) (db file System Find 10) Store System Find 10) Store System View Archived History 10) Store Store System Schedules 10) Store Sto
🕀 🛱 krin64 = 🕅 Content 🛛 Summary
LICONNAVPDEV Link Controller x
Subclient Properties of default
Subclient Properties of default Security Storage Device Activity Control Encryption Archiving Rules
General Content Filters Pre/Post Process
Contents of subclient:
Delete
Browse
2
OK Cancel Help
Browsing content for default
Browing content for deaut
2 Add Close
Warning 💽
If you define content for the default subclient, the
entire default Public Folder tree will no longer be backed
up automatically. Are you sure you wish to do this?
Yes

< Previous

Next >

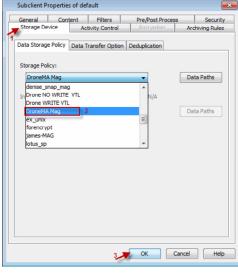
6.

Click the Archiving Rules tab.Check the Enable All Rules check box.

- Click the Storage Devices tab.
 - Select a Storage Policy.
 - Click OK.
 - Click Next > to continue.

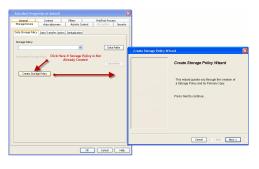
If you do not have Storage Policy created, click $\ensuremath{\textbf{Create Storage Policy}}$ and proceed to the next step.

Subclient Properties of default
Security Storage Device Activity Control Encryption Archiving Rules
General Content Filters Pre/Post Process
Contents of subclient:
Public Folders Delete
Browse
OK Cancel Help
(
Subclient Properties of default
General Content Filters Pre/Post Process Security Storage Device Activity Control Encryption Archiving Rules
1
Enable all rules 2
Message Rule Stub Rule Attachment Filter
Messages
Archive message after 30 - dave
Archive message after 30 🗍
Archive message only if size is greater than 1024 📩 KB
Select items with attachment(s) only
I Use either Ane or Size rule
🗇 Use either Age or Size rule
Use either Age or Size rule
Use Sent/Received time for Age rule
Use Sent/Received time for Age rule
Use Sent/Received time for Age rule
Use Sent/Received time for Age rule
Use Sent/Received time for Age rule Use Sent/Received time for Age rule
Use Sent/Received time for Age rule Use Sent/Received time for Age rule
Use Sent/Received time for Age rule Use Sent/Received time for Age rule
Use Sent/Received time for Age rule Use Sent/Received time for Age rule
Use Sent/Received time for Age rule Use Sent/Received time for Age rule Concel Help Subclient Properties of default Content Filters Pre/Post Process Security Ceneral Content Filters Pre/Post Process Security Control Encryption Archiving Rules
Use Sent/Received time for Age rule Use Sent/Received time for Age rule Concel Help Subclient Properties of default Content Filters Pre/Post Process Security Ceneral Content Filters Pre/Post Process Security Control Encryption Archiving Rules



- 8. Follow the prompts displayed in the Storage Policy Wizard. The required options are mentioned below:
 - Select the Storage Policy type as Data Protection and Archiving.
 - Select ${\tt No}$ to allow legal hold to use the policy.
 - Specify the name of the Storage Policy.
 - Specify the name of the primary copy. The primary copy is automatically created along with the Storage Policy.

- Select ${\tt No}$ for use of an existing global deduplication policy.
- Specify name of the default library to which the Primary Copy should be associated. This must be a disk library. Ensure that you select a library attached to a MediaAgent operating in the current release.
- Select the MediaAgent.
- Verify the device streams and the retention criteria information.
- Select Yes to enable deduplication for the primary copy. Select the Enable Client Side Deduplication option.
- Name of the Deduplication Store, MediaAgent hosting the Deduplication Store, and the location of the Deduplication Store.
- Review the details and click **Finish** to create the Storage Policy. The primary copy is also created.





Getting Started Archive - Exchange Public Folder Archiver Agent

Previous Next >

HAT GETS ARCHIVED	WHAT DOES NOT GET ARCHIVED	
y default, mailbox messages that meet the	By default, the following are not included in a	archive operations:
llowing criteria are archived: Messages older than 30 days	setting)	e Configuring Archive Rules for information on modifying this
Messages greater than 1024 KB in size	Messages less than 1024 KB in size (see C	Configuring Archive Rules for information on modifying this settin
 From the CommCell Console, navig Exchange PF Archiver default Right-click the default subclient and 		File View Tools Windows Help
 Click Immediate. Click OK. 		Archive Options for Subclient: default Job Initiation Job Initiation @ Immediate Run this job now © Schedule Configure Schedule Pattern Configure Configure Maximum Advanced Save As Script
You can track the progress of the job	from the Job Controller .	Contraction Contracti
Once the job is complete, view the definition of the default subclient and select V	tails of job from the Archive History . Right- 'iew Archived History .	Image: Second Browser Image: Second Browser Image: Second Browser Image: Second Browser Image: Second Browser Image: Second Browser Image: Second Browser Image: Second Browser Image: Second Browser Image: Second Browser Image: Second Browser Image: Second Browser Image: Second Browser Image: Second Browser Image: Second Browser Image: Second Browser Image: Second Browser Image: Second Browser Image: Second Browser Image: Second Browser Image: Second Browser Image: Second Browser Image: Second Browser Image: Second Browser Image: Second Browser Image: Second Browser Image: Second Browser Image: Second Browser Image: Second Browser Image: Second Browser Image: Second Browser Image: Second Browser Image: Second Browser Image: Second Browser Image: Second Browser Image: Second Browser Image: Second Browser Image: Second Browser Image: Second Browser Image: Second Browser Image: Second Browser Image: Second Browser Image: Second Browser Image: Second Browser Image: Second Browser Image: Second Browser Image: Second Browser Image: Second Browser Image: Second Browser Image: Second Browser Image: Second Browser Image: Second Browser Image: Second
		Image: Control Computers Image: Control

Job Status Completed Failed Specify Time Range Time Zone: (UJTC-05:00) Eastern Time (US & Canada)	○ Killed
Specify Time Range	© Killed
Time Zone: (UTC-05:00) Eastern Time (US & Canada)	
	~
Start Time End Time	
Tue 06/28/2011	-
03:21PM - 03:21PM	
US - 21 M	· ·
OK Cancel Adva	nced Help
	nceu nep
المحمد	nceu nep
ten develoring Snaphily Johne Adulties fulction Santhe Brites 1 à contection a southing of a southing of southing southing the southing of the new lines	
All Operation Test Despt. May All Test Add Test Test Test Test Test Test Test Test Test Test Test Test Test Test Test Test Test	The second rapping the
ten develoring Snaphily Johne Adulties fulction Santhe Brites 1 à contection a southing of a southing of southing southing the southing of the new lines	ne inter transfer to
The last last last last last last last last	The second register and regi
No. Description Descripion <thdescription< th=""> <thdesc< td=""><td>The second register of the second register of the second register of the second register of the second register of the second register of the second register of the second register of the second register of the second register of the second register of the second register of the second register of</td></thdesc<></thdescription<>	The second register of the second register of the second register of the second register of the second register of the second register of the second register of the second register of the second register of the second register of the second register of the second register of the second register of
	The second secon
No. No. <td>The second reput to the second second</td>	The second reput to the second
Note Special Special <thspecial< th=""> <thspecial< th=""> <thspec< td=""><td>The second regards and the second regards and</td></thspec<></thspecial<></thspecial<>	The second regards and
	More and Paperson of Pape
Image: state in the s	The second secon
	Constanting of the second

- 6. Right-click the job to:
 - Browse the archived data.
 - Find messages in the archives.
 - View items that failed, if any, during the job.
 - Resubmit the job.
 - View job details, such as the number of mailboxes archived.
 - View media associated with the job.
 - View events associated with the job.
 - View list of files that were archived.
 - View logs associated with the job.
 - Send the log file that is associated with the job.

Previous Next >

Getting Started Recover - Exchange Public Folder Archiver Agent

< Previous Next >

It is recommended that you perform a recover operation immediately after your first archive to understand the process.

- From the CommCell Console, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> | Exchange PF Archiver.
 - Right-click the default backup set and then click All Tasks | Browse.

2. Click **OK**.

1.

- Expand the defaultArchiveset and select the mailbox that you want to recover.
 Click Recover All Selected.
- 4. Click To PST File.
 - Select Local Drive.
 - Click **Browse** to locate the path.

🛕 CommCell Browser	₽	💣 defaultArchive	Set Y
- Client Computers		/ =	t Computers > 📴 ex2010-1 >
🕀 🚉 aries			Compacts > 🔐 excelor >
🕀 📆 calmar	_	Subclient Name	
⊕ 📴 cobra32v_2 ⊕ 🙀 devl-ibmaix04		default test	
🖶 🔂 diagenes			
E CroneMA			
🖶 📴 euryale			
Image Complian = 100 million	ce Archiver	🖾 Content 🛐 Summa	ry
DA Exchange Database DA Exchange Mailbox		Job Controller 🗙	
DA Exchange Mailbox Exchange Mailbox A	Archiver	Job Controller	
defaultArebine	ink .		Io Agent Type
EXCH-DAG	All Tasks	Archive All Subc	lients Linux File S
😥 🚉 exdag-1	Properties	Erase Stubs	D Image Lev
exdag-2	Troperdes	Browse	Image Lev
exclag-3 exproxy1x64 exproxy5x64		Find	
exproxy5x64 exprox5x64 exprox5x64 exprox5x64 exprox5x64 exprox5x64	E	Configure	
🗈 💽 fsdm1 🕀 💽 glinda		Operation Winds	2004
😥 🚉 ibmaix02		New Subclient	
Browse Options			×
Browse the Lates	t Data		
Specify Browse Til			
Browse Data Before	e:		
The other in	011	- 02 : 37 PM	-
Thu 07/07/20		U2 : 37 PM	×.
Time Zone:	(UTC-05:00)) Eastern Time (US & Ca	nada) 👻
Client Computer: ex2	2010-1		
Endre comparent Ex2	:010-1		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
Use MediaAgent	VY MEDIAAGENT>		
	IT PIEZZHHOUNT Z		•
Show Deleted Items			
Page Size: 1000	4		
Page 5ize: 1000	1		
	-		
	-		
ОК [Cancel	Advanced	Media Help
	Cancel	Advanced List	Media Help
	Cancel	Advanced List	Media Help
	Cancel	Advanced List	Media Help
	Cancel	Advanced List	Media Help to to to to to to to to to
	Cancel	Advanced List	Media Help to to to to to to to to to to to to to
	Cancel	Advanced List	Media Help 75 76 76 76 76 76 76 76 76 76 76 76 76 76
	Cancel	Advanced List	Media Heip *** *** *** *** *** *** *** *
	Cancel	Advanced List	Media Help to to to to to to to to to to to to to
	Cancel	Advanced List	Media Help To Non Non Non Non Non Non Non Non Non No
	Cancel	Advanced List	Media Help
CK	Poders Res Poders Res Res Res Res Res Res Res Res Res Re	Advanced List	
CK CK CK CK CK CK CK CK CK CK	Poders Res Poders Res Res Res Res Res Res Res Res Res Re	Advanced List	Meda Hep *** *** *** *** *** *** *** *
CK	Poders Res Poders Res Res Res Res Res Res Res Res Res Re	Advanced List	
CK CK CK CK CK CK CK CK CK CK	Poders Res Poders Res Res Res Res Res Res Res Res Res Re	Advanced List	
CK	Poders View View View View View View View View	Advanced List	
CK State second	Poders View View View View View View View View	Advanced List	
CK	Vector No.	Advanced List	
CK	Vector No.	Advanced List	
CK	Vector No.	Advanced List	
CK	Vector No.	Advanced List	
CK C	Vector No.	Advanced List	
CK C	Vector No.	Advanced List	
CK			
CK		Advanced List	
CK			
CK C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C			
CK C			
CK C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C			
CK CK C			
CK C	The second secon		
CK CK C	The second secon		
CK An and another intervention CK Control C	The second secon		
CK An and another intervention CK Control C	team		

• Close the window.

 $\textbf{6.} \qquad \text{Append the path with the PST file name. Ensure to include the .pst file extension.}$

- Click the Job Initiation tab and select Immediate.
 - Click OK.

- 8. You can monitor the progress of the restore job from the **Job Controller**.
- 9. Once the restore job has completed, right-click the agent and click **View** | **Recover History**.

⊕ \$Recycle.Bin ⊕ Boot ⊕ oreshdumps	Boot		Folder	4/25/11 2:37 PM	
creshdumps Documents and Settings	bootmgr BOOTSECT.BAK	374.79 KB 8 KB	File File	11/20/10 4:40 AM 9/7/10 5:30 PM	
Documents and Settings ExchangeSeturil ops	crashdumps		Folder	7/7/11 10:28 AM	
inetpub MSOCache	Documents and Settings DynCacheInstaller.log	5.25 KB	Folder File	7/14/09 1:06 AM 6/27/11 11:51 AM	
PerfLogs Powershell scripts Powershell scripts Program Files	ExchangeSetupLogs inetpub		Folder Folder	6/6/11 2:57 PM 9/7/10 3:05 PM	
	MSOCache		Folder	6/7/11 10:44 AM	
ProgramData	pagefile.sys PerfLogs	3 GB	File Folder	6/24/11 1:26 PM 7/13/09 11:20 PM	
Recovery System Volume Information Users	Powershell scripts		Folder	5/9/11 12:24 PM	
	Program Files Program Files (x86)		Folder Folder	6/27/11 11:47 AM 6/7/11 10:46 AM	
0 0 E:	ProgramData Recovery		Folder Folder	6/29/11 2:09 PM 9/7/10 1:34 PM	
0	System Volume Inform		Folder	7/6/11 12:18 PM	
	Users Windows		Folder Folder	4/28/11 2:53 PM 6/7/11 10:46 AM	
0 K: 0			· under	-tutur routo well	
					*
Ad	d Close	New Folder			
Recover Options for All Colores 12					
Recover Options for All Selected Item:					×
General Job Initiation					
To Maibox					
Recovery Destination					
Destination client ex2010-1					-
J Recover to Same Paths					
Specify destination path					
				- 0	
				Brows	
When message exists					
Unconditional Overwrite					
Unconditionally overwr	ite only if target is a Da	taArchiver stub			
 Append 					
🔿 Skip					
To PST File					
				C -	
C:\Recovery\recovered.pst				Bro	wse
Local Drive O Network					
<u> </u>		_	_		
			-		
_	Canal				Help
- E	G Cancel	Advanced		Save As Script	
	g-Ok Cancel	Advanced		Save As Script	
	g-ok Canter	Advanced		Save As Script	
Recover Options for All Selected		Advanced		Save As Script	
Recover Options for All Selected		Advanced		Save As Script	
Recover Options for All Selected		Advanced		Save As Script	
Recover Options for All Selected		Advanced		Save As Script	
Recover Options for All Selected		Advanced		⊳ Save As Script	
Recover Options for All Selected General Job Initiation Job Initiation @ Immediate		Advanced		▶ Save As Script	
Recover Options for All Selected General Job Initiation Job Initiation		Advanced		▶ Save As Script	
Recover Options for All Selected General Job Initiation Job Initiation © Immediate Run this job now		Advanced		Save As Script	
Recover Options for All Selected General Job Initiation Job Initiation @ Immediate		Advanced		> Save As Script	
Recover Options for All Selected General Job Initiation Job Initiation © Immediate Run this job now	ltems:	Advanced		▶ Save As Script	
Recover Options for All Selected General Job Initiation Job Initiation @ Immediate Run this job now © Schedule	ltems:			> Save As Script	
Recover Options for All Selected General Job Initiation Job Initiation @ Immediate Run this job now © Schedule	ltems:			> Save As Script	
Recover Options for All Selected General Job Initiation Job Initiation @ Immediate Run this job now © Schedule	ltems:			> Save As Script	
Recover Options for All Selected General Job Initiation Job Initiation @ Immediate Run this job now © Schedule	ltems:			> Save As Script	
Recover Options for All Selected General Job Initiation Job Initiation @ Immediate Run this job now © Schedule	ltems:			> Save Ad Script	
Recover Options for All Selected General Job Initiation Job Initiation @ Immediate Run this job now © Schedule	ltems:			- Save Ad Script	
Recover Options for All Selected General Job Initiation Job Initiation @ Immediate Run this job now © Schedule	ltems:			- Save Ad Script	
Recover Options for All Selected General Job Initiation Job Initiation @ Immediate Run this job now © Schedule	ltems:			- Save Ad Script	
Recover Options for All Selected General Job Initiation Job Initiation @ Immediate Run this job now © Schedule	ltems:			- Save As Script	
Recover Options for All Selected General Job Initiation Job Initiation @ Immediate Run this job now © Schedule	ltems:			- Save As Script	
Recover Options for All Selected General Job Initiation Job Initiation @ Immediate Run this job now © Schedule	Items:			ve As Script	
Recover Options for All Selected General Job Initiation Job Initiation Immediate Run this job now Schedule Configure Schedule Pattern	Items:	Configure			
Recover Options for All Selected General Job Initiation Job Initiation Immediate Run this job now Schedule Configure Schedule Pattern	Items:	Configure			
Recover Options for All Selected General Job Initiation Job Initiation Run this job now Schedule Configure Schedule Pattern	Items:	Configure			
Recover Options for All Selected General 30b Initiation 30b Initiation IIII Initiation IIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIII	Items:	Configure Avanced	@ 5a	ve As Script	Heb
Recover Options for All Selected General Job Initiation Job Initiation Run this job now Schedule Configure Schedule Pattern Conf	Cancel Ac	Configure tvanced	Sa Redship	ve As Script	
Recover Options for All Selected General Job Initiation Job Initiation Job Initiation General Texture Configure Schedule Configure Schedule Pattern Configure Schedule Pattern Schedule Configure Schedule Pattern Lobo General Job Consider x Lobo General Schedule Schedule Datern Sche	defere: 30 Type Pha	Configure dvanced	Medadys Sa	ve As Script	res tres
Recover Options for All Selected General 30b Initiation Job Initiation Job Initiation Schedule Configure Schedule Pattern Configure Schedule Pattern Schedule Configure Schedule Pattern Schedule Configure Schedule Pattern Schedule Pat	Cancel Ac Active The Pine a Ful Base specie Ful Gas	Configure Avanced	E Sa	ve As Script	
Recover Options for All Selected General Job Initiation Job Initiation Job Initiation General Texture Configure Schedule Configure Schedule Pattern Configure Schedule Pattern Schedule Configure Schedule Pattern Lobo General Job Consider x Lobo General Schedule Schedule Datern Sche	defere: 30 Type Pha	Configure Avanced	Medadys Sa	ve As Script	Heb
Recover Options for All Selected General 30b Initiation Job Initiation Job Initiation Schedule Configure Schedule Pattern Configure Schedule Pattern Schedule Configure Schedule Pattern Schedule Configure Schedule Pattern Schedule Pat	Cancel Ac Active The Pine a Ful Base specie Ful Gas	Configure Avanced	Medadys Sa	ve As Script	Heb
Recover Options for All Selected General Job Initiation Job Initiation Job Initiation General Annu This job now Schedule Configure Schedule Pattern Configure Schedule Pattern Schedule Schedule Schedule Schedule Configure Schedule Pattern Schedule Configure Schedule Pattern Schedule Schedu	Cancel Ac Cancel Ac defect No hose find action full Colo specific full Colo full Colo full Colo full Colo full Colo f	Configure tvanced se Strap P so dres M configure trans. dres M dog rer	Satisfy S	ve As Script	
Recover Options for All Selected General 3do Initiation Job Initiation Job Initiation General Schedule Configure Schedule Pattern Configure Schedule Pattern Configure Schedule Pattern Schedule Configure Schedule Pattern Schedule Schedule Configure Schedule Pattern Schedule	Cancel Ac addet 30 Trop Pa son Ad Sol spin Ad Sol Sol spin Ad Sol Sol	Configure Avanced	Redship Sa	ve As Script	
Recover Options for All Selected General Job Instation Job Instation Job Instation General Schedule Configure Schedule Configure Schedule Pattern Job Context Lob Context Job Context	Cancel Ac addex 30 Tree Pa set of Ad addition Ad addition Ad addition Ad addition Ad addition Ad addition Ad addition Ad addition Addition	Configure Avanced as Storpe P as Storpe P	Redship Sa	ve As Script	
Recover Options for All Selected General 34b Initiation Job Initiation Job Initiation General Run this job now	Cancel Ac addex 30 Top Per a Ful Bost spills Ful Cancel addex Rec	Configure Manced as Storge F to draw draw Jan draw Janes Jan draw Jan dr	Kodowy K	ve As Script Protection Process Proces	
Recover Options for All Selected General 34b Initiation Job Initiation Job Initiation General Run this job now	Cancel Ac addex 30 Top Per a Ful Bost spills Ful Cancel addex Rec	Configure Avanced as Storpe P as Storpe P	Kodowy K	ve As Script Protection Process Proces	
Recover Options for All Selected General 34b Initiation Job Initiation Job Initiation General Run this job now General Schedule Configure Schedule Pattern Configure Schedule Pattern Configure Schedule Pattern Schedule Schedule Configure Schedule Pattern Schedule Sche	Cancel Ac addex 30 Top Per a Ful Bost spills Ful Cancel addex Rec	Configure Manced as Storge F to draw draw Jan draw Janes Jan draw Jan dr	Kodowy K	ve As Script Protection Process Proces	
	Cancel Ac addex 30 Top Per a Ful Bost spills Ful Cancel addex Rec	Configure Manced as Storge F to draw draw Jan draw Janes Jan draw Jan dr	Kodowy K	ve As Script Protection Process Proces	
Recover Options for All Selected General Job Initiation Job Initiation Job Initiation Schedule Configure 5chedule Pattern Configure 5chedule Pattern Configure 5chedule Pattern Loborneter M Active Loborneter M Configure 5chedule Pattern Configure 5chedule Configure Configure 5chedule	Cancel Ac addex 30 Top Per a Ful Bost spills Ful Cancel addex Rec	Configure Manced as Storge F to draw draw Jan draw Janes Jan draw Jan dr	Kodowy K	ve As Script Protection Process Proces	
Recover Options for All Selected General Job Initiation Job Initiation Job Initiation Job Initiation Schedule Configure Schedule Pattern Configure Schedule Pattern Schedule Configure Schedule Pattern Job Document VI Add Control Schedule Configure Schedule Pattern Schedule Schedul	Cancel Ac active 300 Tray Pro active 300 Tray Pro active 300 Tray Const active 300 Tray	Configure Manced as Storge F to draw draw Jan draw Janes Jan draw Jan dr	Kodowy K	ve As Script Protection Process Proces	
Recover Options for All Selected General Job Initiation Job Initiation Job Initiation Job Initiation General Run this job now Schedule Configure Schedule Pattern Configure Schedule Pattern Configure Schedule Pattern Schedule Schedule Schedule Schedule Configure Schedule Pattern Schedule	Cancel Ac active 300 Tray Pro active 300 Tray Pro active 300 Tray Const active 300 Tray	Configure Manced as Storge F to draw draw Jan draw Janes Jan draw Jan dr	Kodowy K	ve As Script Protection Process Proces	
Recover Options for All Selected General 30b Initiation Job Initiation Schedule Configure Schedule Pattern Configure Pattern Configure Schedule Pattern Configure Pattern Con	Cancel Ac active 300 Tray Pro active 300 Tray Pro active 300 Tray Const active 300 Tray	Configure Manced as Storge F to draw draw Jan draw Janes Jan draw Jan dr	Kodowy K	ve As Script Protection Process Proces	
Recover Options for All Selected General 30b Initiation Job Initiation Schedule Configure Schedule Pattern Configure Pattern Configure Schedule Pattern Configure Pattern Con	Cancel Ac Active to the Base Active to the Active to the Active to the Active to the Active to the Activ	Configure Avanced as Storage A base draws Jan draws Jan configure as Storage A as Storage A	Kodowy K	ve As Script Protection Process Proces	
Recover Options for All Selected General Job Initiation Job Initiation Job Initiation General Schedule Configure Schedule Configure Schedule Pattern Configure Schedule Pattern Schedule Schedu	Cancel Ac active 300 Tray Pro active 300 Tray Pro active 300 Tray Const active 300 Tray	Configure Avanced as Storage A base draws Jan draws Jan configure as Storage A as Storage A	Kodowy K	ve As Script Protection Process Proces	
Recover Options for All Selected General Job Initiation Job Initiation Job Initiation General Schedule Configure Schedule Configure Schedule Pattern Configure Schedule Pattern Schedule Schedu	terns:	Configure Avanced as Dange P as drass Jan drass Janese based of the second as drass Janese as drass	Kodowy K	ve As Script	
	Cancel Ac a Cancel Ac a Dia Base a Dia Dia Dia Dia Dia Dia Dia Dia Dia Di	Configure Avanced	Sa Sa	ve As Script	
Recover Options for All Selected General Job Initiation Job Initiation Job Initiation General Schedule Configure Schedule Configure Schedule Pattern Configure Schedule Pattern Schedule Schedu	Cancel Ac dederet 300 Tree Pres a con red a con red	Configure tranced tranced Exchange N one9 > 5 Set Name autArchiveSe	Se Se	ve As Script	Help

Type

x2010

Archive History Filter for: Exchange Mailbox Archiver × Job Status o All Completed Failed 🔿 Killed 📃 Specify Time Range Time Zone: (UTC-05:00) Eastern Time (US & Canada) Start Time End Time 02 : 48 PM Wed 07/06/2011 Thu 07/07/2011 * 02:48 PM * OK Cancel Advanced Help P Newest on top Administrator@exch.com Arrange By: Date 2/19/2010 © 10/17/2010 10/17/2010 10/17/2010 -10/17/2010 ® Search Fol 10/17/2010 🗿 Tasks 9/19/2010 9/9/2010 2010 PF SE - Reseller Assig Brent Kaloustian RE: Meeting Brent Kaloustian Beseller Profile (C) 9/3/2010 9/3/2010 < Previous Next >

- **11.** On the destination client computer, start Outlook.
 - Click All Public Folders.
 - View the recovered public folder and appended messages.

Advanced Configuration - Exchange Public Folder Archiver Agent

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Understanding the CommCell Console

Configuring Archive Rules for Messages

Based on Message Properties Based on Stubs Based on Attachments

Configure Recall Status Messages

For Recalls from Disk Library For Recalls from Tape Library For Recalls when Media is Outside the Library

Selecting Folders For Archiving

Filter Specific Folders Include Specific Folders

Managing the Default Subclient

Modifying an Agent, Archive Set, or Subclient

Deleting an Agent, Archive Set, or Subclient

UNDERSTANDING THE COMMCELL CONSOLE

The Exchange Public Folder *i*DataAgent uses the following logical entities to manage archiving and recovery operations from the CommCell Console.

AGENT

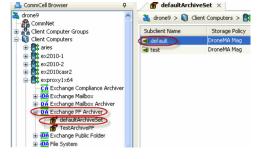
Defines the Exchange Server to be archived.

ARCHIVE SET

Facilitates automatic discovery of Public folders.

SUBCLIENT

Defines the Public Folders to be archived.



CONFIGURING ARCHIVE RULES FOR MESSAGES

Archiving rules specify the criteria for the type of data to be archived. Messages that meet this criteria are rendered available for archiving if they satisfy any or all the archiving rules.

BASED ON MESSAGE PROPERTIES

You can set rules to archive messages based on the messages properties. All the messages matching with this criteria will be archived.

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> | Exchange PF Archiver | <Archive Set>.
- 2. Right-click the Subclient, and then click Properties.
- 3. Select the Archiving Rules tab.
- 4. Select the Enable all rules check box.
- 5. In the **Archive message after** box, type or select the number of days since the message was last accessed.
- 6. In the **Archive message only if size is greater than** box, type or select the size of the message in KB.
- 7. Select the **Select items with attachment (s) only** check box to archive only those items that have attachments.
- 8. Select **Use either Age or Size rule** check box to archive if either the Age or Size of the message or item matches the respective rule.
- 9. Select the Use Sent/Received time for Age rule check box.
- 10. Click **OK**.

Subclient Properties of default	X
General Content Filters Storage Device Activity Control	Pre/Post Process Security Encryption Archiving Rules
Enable all rules	
Message Rule Stub Rule Attachment Filter	
Messages	
Archive message after	30 × days
Archive message only if size is greater than	1024 KB
5elect items with attachment(s) only	
Use either Age or Size rule	
Use Sent/Received time for Age rule	
	OK Cancel Help

BASED ON STUBS

You can set rules to archive messages based on the stub properties. All the messages matching with this criteria will be archived.

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <*Client*> | Exchange PF Archiver | <*Archive Set*>.
- 2. Right-click the Subclient, and then click Properties.
- 3. Select the **Archiving Rules** tab.
- 4. Select the Enable all rules check box.
- 5. Click the Stub Rule tab.
- 6. Click **Preserve stubs until the media has been pruned** to preserve stubs until the media has been pruned.
- 7. In the **Prune stub only after** box, type or select the number of days after which the stubs should be pruned.
- Select the **Do not create stub** check box if you do not want to have a stub to be created after archiving.
- 9. Click OK.

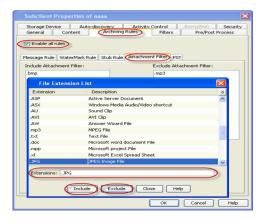
Subclient	Properties	of default		×
General Storage De	Content	Filters	Pre/Post Process	Security Archiving Rules
Stub Manage	Stub Rule	Attachment Filter	n pruned	
			OK Can	cel Help

BASED ON ATTACHMENTS

You can include or exclude attachments from an archive operation. Use the following steps to configure an Attachment Filter.

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> | Exchange PF Archiver | <Archive Set>.
- 2. Right-click the **Subclient**, and then click **Properties**.
- 3. Select the Archiving Rules tab.
- 4. Select the Enable all rules check box.
- 5. Click the Attachment Filter tab.
- 6. Click Add, double-click the desired file extension of the attachment.
- Click **Include** to include all the attachments with the selected extension in the Archive operation.
 - Click **Exclude** to exclude all the attachments with the selected extension in the Archive operation.
- 7. Click **OK**.

Click Close.



CONFIGURE RECALL STATUS MESSAGES

In order to perform archiving operations, you need to initially configure archiving rules. Archiving rules specify the criteria for the type of data to be archived. The basic archiving criteria is the maximum file size in a particular scanned volume/directory. Files that meet this criteria are rendered available for archiving if they satisfy any or all the archiving rules.

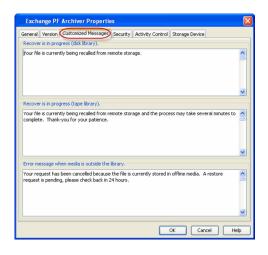
FOR RECALLS FROM DISK LIBRARY

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> |
- 2. Right-click the Exchange PF Archiver, and then click Properties.
- 3. Select the Customized Messages tab.
- 4. Under **Recover is in progress (disk library)**, type the desired status message to be displayed in outlook during a stub recovery operation from a disk library.
- Click OK.

Exchange PF Archiver Properties	X
General Version Customized Messages Security Activity Control Storage Device	
Recover is in progress (disk library).	
Your file is currently being recalled from remote storage.	
	~
Recover is in progress (tape library).	
Your file is currently being recalled from remote storage and the process may take several minutes to complete. Thank-you for your patience.	
Error message when media is outside the library.	
Your request has been cancelled because the file is currently stored in offline media. A restore request is pending, please check back in 24 hours.	
OK Cancel He	elp

FOR RECALLS FROM TAPE LIBRARY

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> |
- 2. Right-click the Exchange PF Archiver, and then click Properties.
- 3. Select the Customized Messages tab.
- 4. Under **Recover is in progress (tape library)**, type the desired status message to be displayed during a stub recovery operation from a tape library.
- 5. Click OK.



FOR RECALLS WHEN MEDIA IS OUTSIDE THE LIBRARY

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> |
- 2. Right-click the Exchange PF Archiver, and then click Properties.
- 3. Select the Customized Messages tab.
- 4. Under Error message when media is outside the library, type the desired status message to be displayed when a stub recovery operation is attempted for media outside the designated library..
- 5. Click **OK**.

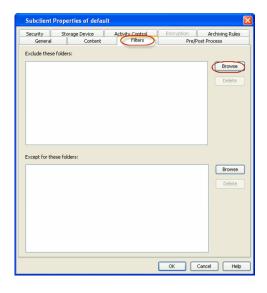
	to a Contemined Message	1		
	Version Customized Messages Security	Activity Control	Storage Device	
Recove	r is in progress (disk library).			
Your file	is currently being recalled from remote st	orage.		^
				~
Recove	r is in progress (tape library).			
Your file	is currently being recalled from remote sti	orage and the proc	ess may take several min	utes to 🧖
	i is currently being recalled from remote sto e. Thank-you for your patience.	orage and the proc	ess may take several min	utes to
complet	e. Thank-you for your patience.	prage and the proc	ess may take several min	utes to
complet	e. Thank-you for your patience. essage when media is outside the library.			
Error m Your re	e. Thank-you for your patience.	s currently stored i		

SELECTING FOLDERS FOR ARCHIVING

FILTER SPECIFIC FOLDERS

Use the following steps to exclude folders from archive operations.

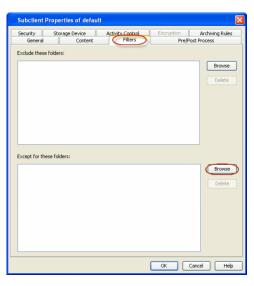
- From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> | Exchange PF Archiver | <Archive Set>.
- 2. Right-click the Subclient, and then click Properties.
- 3. Click the Filters tab.
- 4. Click Browse next to Exclude these folders.
- Select the desired folders that you want to exclude from archive operation, and then click Add.
- 6. Click **OK**.



INCLUDE SPECIFIC FOLDERS

You can include specific folders in archive operations for a subclient in cases where a parent object is listed in the Exclude filter.

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> | Exchange PF Archiver | <Archive Set>.
- 2. Right-click the Subclient, and then click Properties.
- 3. Click the Filters tab.
- 4. Click Browse next to Except for these folders.
- 5. Select the desired folders that you want to include in the archive operation, and then click ${\rm Add}.$
- 6. Click OK.



MANAGING THE DEFAULT SUBCLIENT

By default, all mailboxes are automatically assigned to the default subclient. This default behavior is designed to ensure all public folders are archived.

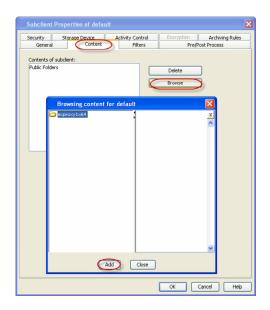
If you do not want all public folders to automatically be included in the default subclient, you can do so as described in the following sections.

We recommend that you do not modify these settings. Doing so would disable the default subclient's capability to serve as a catch-all entity for mailbox data. As a result, some data may not get archived.

Use the following steps to select the subclient's content for archiving:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <*Client*> | Exchange PF Archiver | <*Archive Set*>.
- 2. Right-click the Subclient, and then click Properties.

- 3. Click the **Content** tab.
- 4. Click **Browse** to select the folders you want to archive.
- 5. Click Add.
- 6. Click **OK**.



MODIFYING AN AGENT, ARCHIVE SET, OR SUBCLIENT

There are several configurable properties available for your agent that can be modified from the agent, archive set or subclient level as per your need.

It is recommended that that you do not modify the properties of a subclient when a job is in progress for that specific subclient. If a job is in progress, either wait for the job to complete or kill the job from the Job Controller.

OPTION	DESCRIPTION	RELATED TOPICS
Change the Profile Name	You can modify the profile that is associated with the appropriate Administrator Mailbox.	
	1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computes <i>Client></i> .	
	2. Right-click the Exchange PF Archiver, and then click Properties.	
	3. In the Profile Name box, type the profile name.	
	4. Click OK.	
Change the Mailbox Name	You can modify the name of the mailbox that is associated with the appropriate Administrator profile.	
	1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computes <i><client></client></i> .	
	2. Right-click the Exchange PF Archiver, and then click Properties.	
	3. In the Mailbox Name box, type the mailbox name.	
	4. Click OK.	
Change the Exchange Server Name	You can modify the name of the Exchange Server that is installed on the client computer. However, the Exchange server name should not be the same as Client or Host Name.	
	1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computes <i><client></client></i> .	
	2. Right-click the Exchange PF Archiver, and then click Properties.	
	3. In the Exchange Server Name box, type the Exchange Server name.	
	4. Click OK.	
Change User Account Details	You must have Exchange administrator privileges to access the Exchange Server and perform archive and recover operations.	
	In the case of archive and recover operations from the CommCell Console, the user credentials to access the Exchange Server are provided initially when you installed the Agent. You can modify the user credentials from CommCell Console.	
	On Windows clients, use <domain>\<administrator_name></administrator_name></domain>	
	To change the Exchange administrator account information associated with this agent:	
	1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computes <i>Client></i> .	
	2. Right-click the Exchange PF Archiver , and then click Properties .	
	3. Click Change Account.	
	4. In Exchange Administrator Account box type the Account name.	
	5. In the Password box, type Password	

The following table describes the properties that can be configured from the agent, archive set and subclient levels.

I		I
	6. In the Confirm Password box, type the password again.	
	7. Click OK .	
Rename Archive Set and	You can rename a archive set and subclient:	
Subclient	Renaming Archive sets:	
	1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computes <<i>Client></i> Exchange PF Archiver.	
	2. Right-click the Archive set , and then click Properties .	
	3. In the Archive Set box, type the Archive set name.	
	4. Click OK .	
	Renaming subclients:	
	 From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computes <client> Exchange PF Archiver.</client> 	
	2. Right-click the Subclient , and then click Properties .	
	3. In the Subclient name box, type the subclient name.	
	4. Click OK .	
Change Storage Policies	You can modify the storage policies in any of the following situations:	Refer to Storage Policies.
	 To include a different media for the backup operation. 	
	 To use a storage policy with a different retention criteria. 	
	You can change the storage policies from the subclient level.	
	1. From the CommCell Browser, right-click the subclient.	
	2. Click Properties.	
	3. Click Storage Device.	
	4. Select the Storage policy from the drop-down menu.	
	5. Click OK .	
Data Transfer Options	You can efficiently configure the available resources for transferring data secured by data	Refer to Data Compression an
	protection operations from the subclient level. This includes the following:	Network Bandwidth Throttling
	 Enable or disable Data Compression either on the client or the MediaAgent. Configure the transfer of data in the network using the options for Network Bandwidth 	
	Throttling and Network Agents.	
	You can configure the data transfer options.	
	1. From the CommCell Browser, right-click the subclient.	
	2. Click Properties.	
	3. Click Storage Device.	
	4. Click Data Transfer Option tab.	
	5. Choose the appropriate software compression option for this subclient.	
	6. Select Throttle Network Bandwidth and set the required bandwidth.	
View Data Paths	7. Click OK. You can view the data paths associated with the primary storage policy copy of the selected	
	storage policy or incremental storage policy. You can also modify the data paths including their priority from the subclient level.	
	1. From the CommCell browser, right-click the subclient.	
	2. Click Properties.	
	3. Click Storage Device.	
	4. Select Storage Policy from the drop-down menu.	
	5. Click Data Paths.	
Configure a Subclient for Pre/Post Processing of	You can add, modify or view Pre/Post processes for the subclient. These are batch files or shell scripts that you can run before or after certain job phases.	Refer to Pre/Post Processes.
Data Protection	From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computes <client> Exchange PF Archiver Archive set.</client>	
	2. Right-click the Subclient , and then click Properties .	
	3. Click the Pre/Post Process tab.	
	 Click one of the following phases and type the full path of the process that you want to execute during that phase. Alternatively, click Browse to locate the process (applicable only for paths that do not contain any spaces). 	
	Pre-Archive Post-Archive	
	• Post-Archive	

	5. Click OK .	
	 Select Run Post-archive Process for all attempts to run a post archive process for all attempts. 	
	7. For subclients on Windows platforms, Run As displays Not Selected .	
	If you want to change the account that has permission to run these commands, click Change .	
	a. In the User Account dialog box, select Use Local System Account, or select Impersonate User and enter the user name and password. Click OK.	
	b. If you selected Local System Account, click OK to the message advising you that commands using this account have rights to access all data on the client computer.	
Configure Activity Control	You can enable backup and restore operations from the agent and subclient level. However, you can enable restore operations only from the agent level.	Refer to Activity Control.
	1. From the CommCell browser, right-click the subclient.	
	2. Click Properties.	
	3. Click Activity Control , select or clear option(s) as desired.	
	4. Click OK .	
Configure User Security	You can configure user security from the agent or subclient level.	Refer to User Administration
	You can perform the following functions:	and Security.
	• Identify the user groups to which this CommCell object is associated.	
	Associate this object with a user group.	
	Disassociate this object from a user group.	
	1. From the CommCell browser, right-click the subclient.	
	2. Click Properties.	
	3. Click Security .	
	4. Select the appropriate user groups to which you want to associate to the CommCell object from the Available Groups pane, and then move the user group to the Associated Groups pane.	
	5. Click OK .	
Enable/Disable Data Encryption	You can enable data encryption from the suclient level.Encryption must be enabled at the client level prior to configuring any instances residing on that client.	Refer to Data Encryption.
	1. From the CommCell browser, right-click the subclient.	
	2. Click Properties.	
	3. Click Encryption.	
	4. Select the desired encryption.	
	5. Click OK .	
/iew Software Version	The Version tab, at the Agent level displays the software version of the component.	
	1. From the CommCell browser, right-click the agent.	
	2. Click Properties.	
	3. Click Version.	
	4. Click OK .	
CommCell Configuration Report	The CommCell Configuration Report provides the properties of the CommServe, MediaAgents, clients, agents, SRM agents, subclients, and storage policies within the CommCell based on the selected filter criteria.	Refer to CommCell Configuration.
	1. From the CommCell browser, click Reports icon.	
	2. Select CommCell Configuration.	

DELETING AN AGENT, ARCHIVESET OR SUBCLIENT

The following sections describe the steps involved in deleting an agent, archive set or subclient.

When you delete an instance or archiveset, the associated data is logically deleted and you can no longer access the corresponding data from CommCell Console for recovery purposes.

Refer to the troubleshooting article on Recovering Data Associated with Deleted Clients and Storage Policies for information on how to recover data if you accidentally delete an entity.

DELETING AN AGENT

You need to uninstall or DeConfigure the agent software from the client computer before deleting from CommCell Browser. After you delete the client software,

you can either leave the corresponding data intact for appropriate action or you can remove the data immediately. If you choose to remove the data immediately, you must delete the agent from the CommCell Browser. If you delete the agent, all of the agent's data is irretrievably lost.

- You cannot delete an agent while operations for that agent are running.
- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client>.
- 2. Right-click the **<***Agent***>**, and then click **Delete**.
- 3. A confirmation message is displayed with the following message:

This operation will permanently delete the data archived from this level and it cannot be restored.

4. Click ${\bf OK}$ to continue with the deletion operation., or click ${\bf No}$ to abort the deletion.

DELETING AN ARCHIVESET

Consider the following before deleting a Archive Set:

- You cannot delete a default Archive Set.
- Schedules associated with the Archive Set are also automatically deleted.
- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> | <Exchange PF Archiver>.
- 2. Right-click the <Archive Set>,Point to All Tasks, and then click Delete.
- 3. A confirmation message is displayed, asking if you want to delete the Archive Set.

Click No to cancel the deletion and retain the Archive, or click Yes to continue the deletion.

DELETING A SUBCLIENT

Consider the following before deleting a subclient:

- You cannot delete a default subclient.
- Schedules associated with the subclient are also automatically deleted.
- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> | <Exchange PF Archiver> | <Archive Set>.
- 2. Right-click the *subclient* that you want to delete, and then click **Delete**.
- 3. A confirmation message is displayed, asking if you want to delete the subclient.

Click **No** to cancel the deletion and retain the subclient, or click **Yes** to continue the deletion.

Advanced Archive – Exchange Public Folder Archiver Agent

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Scheduling an Archive Job

Managing Jobs Restarting Jobs Controlling Jobs

Additional Options

1.

2.

SCHEDULING AN ARCHIVE JOB

- From the CommCell Console, navigate to <Client> | Exchange PF Archiver
 - Right-click the Subclient and click Archive

RELATED TOPICS

Scheduling

Provides comprehensive information on scheduling jobs.

Job Management

Provides comprehensive information on managing jobs.

Client Computer Groups		Subclient Name		Storage Policy	
Concernent Concernent Concerne Concernent	3 🤇	Subden Harre	Archive 4 Browse Biskup Data List Heda Wei Archived History Scheduler Operation Window Progerties	Storge Ney Songen Key Doneth Neg	

Archive opt	ions for Subci	chi ucruuit		
Job Initiation				
Job Initiatio	n			
_ () Im	mediate			
Run	this job now			
(0) Sc	hedule			
	figure Schedule	Pattern		onfigure
	ingui e seriedule	- uttern		onnigure
🕞 ОК	Cancel	Advanced	🔂 Save A	s Script Help
Schedule Details				X
Schedule Name				
One Time	Start Time	9:00 PM		
 Daily Weekly 				
Monthly Yearly	On these days	Monday	✓ Tuesday	Vednesday
0		V Thursday	Friday	Saturday
		Sunday Sunday		
		ОК	Cancel	Help Options>>

Click ScheduleClick Configure

3. Select Schedule Options. For example:

- Click Weekly
- Check the days you want the run the archive job
- Change the Start Time to 9:00 PM
- Click **OK** to close the Schedule Details dialog box
- Click **OK** to close the Archive Options dialog box

The archive job will execute as per the schedule

MANAGING JOBS

The following sections provide information on the various options available for job management.

RESTARTING JOBS

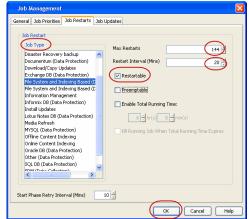
Jobs that fail to complete successfully are automatically restarted based on the job restartability configuration set in the Control Panel. Keep in mind that changes made to this configuration will affect all jobs in the entire CommCell.

To Configure the job restartability for a specific job, you can modify the retry settings for the job. This will override the setting in the Control Panel. It is also possible to override the default CommServe configuration for individual jobs by configuring retry settings when initiating the job. This configuration, however, will apply only to the specific job.

Backup jobs for this Agent are resumed from the point-of-failure.

CONFIGURE JOB RESTARTABILITY AT THE COMMSERVE LEVEL

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, click Control Panel icon.
- 2. Select Job Management.
- 3. Click Job Restarts tab and select a Job Type.
 - Select **Restartable** to make the job restartable.
 - Change the value for Max Restarts to change the maximum number of times the Job Manager will try to restart a job.
 - Change the value for Restart Interval (Mins) to change the time interval between attempts for the Job Manager to restart the job.
- 4. Click OK.

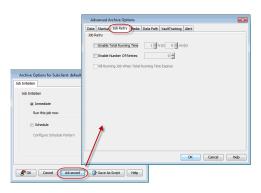


CONFIGURE JOB RESTARTABILITY FOR AN INDIVIDUAL JOB

- 1. From the CommCell Console, navigate to *Client>* | **Exchange PF Archiver**.
- 2. Right-click the **Subclient** and select **Archive**.
- 3. Click Advanced.
- 4. In the Advanced Archive Options dialog box, click the Job Retry tab.
- Select Enable Total Running Time and specify the maximum elapsed time before a job can be restarted or killed.

Select **Kill Running Jobs When Total Running Time Expires** to kill the job after reaching the maximum elapsed time.

- 6. Select Enable Number Of Retries and specify the number of retries.
- 7. Click **OK.**



CONTROLLING JOBS

The following controls are available for running jobs in the Job Controller window:

SUSPEND	Temporarily stops a job. A suspended job is not terminated; it can be restarted at a later time.
	Resumes a job and returns the status to Waiting, Pending, Queued, or Running. The status depends on the availability of resources, the state of the Operation Windows, or the Activity Control setting.
KILL	Terminates a job.

SUSPENDING A JOB

- 1. From the Job Controller of the CommCell Console, right-click the job and select Suspend.
- 2. The job status may change to Suspend Pending for a few moments while the operation completes. The job status then changes to Suspended.

RESUMING A JOB

- 1. From the Job Controller of the CommCell Console, right-click the job and select **Resume**.
- 2. As the Job Manager attempts to restart the job, the job status changes to Waiting, Pending, or Running.

KILLING A JOB

- 1. From the Job Controller of the CommCell Console, right-click the job and select Kill.
- Click Yes when the confirmation prompt appears if you are sure you want to kill the job. The job status may change to Kill Pending for a few moments while the operation completes. Once completed, the job status will change to Killed and it will be removed from the Job Controller window after five minutes.

ADDITIONAL OPTIONS

Several additional options are available to further refine your archive operations. The following table describes these options, as well as the steps for configuring them.

OPTION	DESCRIPTION	RELATED TOPICS
reate New Index	The Create New Index option generates an index of the data whenever an archive operation is run. During the restore process, the index is used for quick access to the appropriate archive file.	Refer to Index.
	 From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <client> iDataAgent Backup Set.</client> 	
	2. Right-click the Subclient and click Archive .	
	3. From the Archive Options window, click Advanced.	
	4. Select Data.	
	5. Select the Create new index check box.	
	6. Click OK .	
atalog	Use the Catalog options to select index cache sharing and granular restartability options for the job. Note that these options are not applicable for the disaster recovery data protection.	2
	1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <client> iDataAgent Backup Set.</client>	
	2. Right-click the Subclient and click Archive .	
	3. From the Archive Options window, click Advanced.	
	4. Select Data and choose one of the following:	
	 Use shared profile if present with transaction logging if you wish to use the shared index cache profile of the MediaAgent (if configured) to save a copy of the job's index cache for index cache sharing with transaction logging feature for granular job restartability. 	
	 Use shared profile if present without transaction logging if you wish to use the shared index cache profile of the MediaAgent (if configured) to save a copy of the index cache for index cache sharing <i>without</i> transaction logging feature for granular job restartability. This is not a recommended configuration. 	ĸ
	 Use transaction logging to use transaction logging feature to provide granular job restartability (without using shared profile for index cache sharing). 	
	• None to use neither shared profile nor transaction logging.	
	5. Click OK . The Job Manager will use the startup priority setting when allocating the required resources.	Refer to Job Priority and
tartup Options	This is useful if you have jobs that are very important and must complete, or jobs that can be moved to a lower priority.	Priority Precedence.
	 From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <client> iDataAgent Backup Set.</client> 	
	2. Right-click the Subclient and click Archive .	
	3. From the Archive Options window, click Advanced.	
	4. Select Startup .	
	5. Select Default Priority. You can select Change Priority for a job, between 0 (highest priority) and 999 (lowest priority).	
	6. Select Start up in suspended State to specify the selected job to start in the Job Controller in a suspended state.	
	7. Click OK .	
ob Retry Options	The Job Retry option helps in configuring the retry behavior of the archive jobs. You can specify the maximum elapsed time before a job can be restarted or killed and the maximum number of restart attempts.	Refer to Job Management.
	1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <<i>Client</i>> <i>i</i>DataAgent Backup Set.	
	2. Right-click the Subclient and click Archive .	
	3. From the Archive Options window, click Advanced .	
	4. Select Job Retry.	
	5. Select Enable Total Running Time and specify the maximum elapsed time in hours and minutes.	
	6. Select Number Of Retries and specify the number of retries. Based on this number, the Job Manager attempts to restart the job.	
	 Select Kill Running Jobs When Total Running Time Expires. The job will be killed when the job is still in running status even after reaching the maximum elapsed time. 	
	8. Click OK .	1

Be sure to read the overview material referenced for each feature prior to using them.

	This mode management feature provides a degree of control over where the data physically	
,	This media management feature provides a degree of control over where the data physically resides.	
	 From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <client> iDataAgent Backup Set.</client> 	
	2. Right-click the Subclient and click Archive .	
	3. From the Archive Options window, click Advanced.	
	4. Select Media .	
	5. Select Start New Media .	
	6. Click OK .	
	The Mark Media Full on Success option marks the Media as Full, 2 minutes after the successful completion of the archive. This feature prevents any other data being written to the same media.	Refer to Export Media.
	 From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <client> iDataAgent Backup Set.</client> 	
	2. Right-click the Subclient and click Archive .	
	3. From the Archive Options window, click Advanced.	
	4. Select Media .	
	5. Select Mark Media Full on Success.	
	6. Click OK .	
Use Media Set	The Allow Other Schedules To Use Media Set option allows jobs that are part of the schedule or schedule policy and using the specific storage policy to start a new media. It also prevents other jobs from writing to the same set of media.	Refer to Creating an Exportable Media Set.
	1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <client> iDataAgent Backup Set.</client>	
	2. Right-click the Subclient and click Archive .	
	3. From the Archive Options window, click Advanced.	
	4. Select Media .	
	5. Select Allow Other Schedules To Use Media Set.	
	6. Click OK .	
	This option allows you to extend the retention end time of the selected job. You can extend the retention period to infinite period or for a specified number of days. You can also extend to storage policy default period.	
	 From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <client> iDataAgent Backup Set.</client> 	
	2. Right-click the Subclient and click Archive .	
	3. From the Archive Options window, click Advanced.	
	4. Select Media .	
	 Select any of the following Extend Job Retention period options: Infinite/Number of days/Storage Policy default. 	
Data Datk Ontions	6. Click OK . Data Protection operations use a specific data path (Library, MediaAgent, Drive Pool, and	Defer Change Data Data
	Drive) to perform the archive operations as configured in the CommCell. By default, the system automatically identifies the data path for the archive operations. The following are some of the important situations where you may need to change the data path:	Refer Change Data Path.
	 When the preferred MediaAgent, library or drive pool is not available during the archive. 	
	 When you need to use a different MediaAgent, library or drive pool for load balancing purposes. 	
	 When you need to direct that archive to a particular location for compliance purposes. 	
	 From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <client> iDataAgent Backup Set.</client> 	
	2. Right-click the Subclient and click Archive .	
	3. From the Archive Options window, click Advanced.	
	4. Select Data Path.	
	5. Select the MediaAgent and Library.	
	 Select the Drive Pool and Drive for optical and tape libraries. 	
	7. Click OK .	

	 your day-to-day operations: Identifies media that must be sent off-site for storage or brought back from off site locations. Automatically moves the media in sequence in the library and provides a pick-up list for the operators. Identifies and tracks the media during transit. Records and tracks the movement of media not used by all MediaAgents or Foreign Media. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <client> iDataAgent Backup Set.</client> Right-click the Subclient and click Archive. From the Archive Options window, click Advanced. Select VaultTracking. 	
	5. Select the necessary options.	
Alerts	6. Click OK . The Alert option is used for setting up the criteria to raise notifications/alerts for job statuses such as failure, success, or any other conditions triggered by the archive job. Adding alerts helps the user or the user group to get the notification automatically about the status of the archive job.	Refer to Alerts.
	1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <client> iDataAgent Backup Set.</client>	
	2. Right-click the Subclient and click Archive .	
	3. From the Archive Options window, click Advanced.	
	4. Select Alert .	
	5. Click Add Alert.	
	 From the Add Alert Wizard window, select the Threshold and Notification Criteria. Click Next. 	
	7. Select the Notification Types. Click Next.	
	8. Select the Users and User Groups. Click Next.	
	9. Verify the Summary .	
	10. Click Finish .	
	11. Click OK .	
Command Line Backups	Command Line Interface enables you to perform backups from the command line. The commands can be executed from the command line or can be integrated into your own scripts or scheduling programs. In addition, you can also generate scripts for specific operations from the CommCell Console using the Save As Script option. These scripts can later be executed using the command line interface.	Refer to Command Line Interface.
CommCell Readiness Report	The CommCell Readiness Report provides you with vital information about the condition of your CommCell.	Refer to CommCell Readiness Report.
Archive/ Compliance Archive Job Summary Report	The Archive/ Compliance Archive Job Summary Report provides the details of all the archive jobs of clients.	Refer to Archive/ Compliance Archive Job Summary Report.

Advanced Recover - Exchange Public Folder Archiver Agent

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Recovering a Public Folder Item

Recovering an Attachment

Finding and Restoring

Finding a Message with a Specific Subject Finding a Message From a Specific User Finding a Message Sent to a Specific User Finding a Message Received in a Specific Time Range Quick Search using Sampling Finding a Message Backed Up at a Specific Time Adding Search Results to a List Using Find from a Browse Window Restoring a Message or a Mailbox Item from the Search Results Save, Email, or Print Search Results

Performing an Out-of-Place Recovery

Recovering to a Different Exchange Server Version

Reviewing Data Selected for Recovery

Scheduling a Recovery

Restoring By Jobs

Managing Recover Jobs Restarting Jobs Controlling Jobs

Additional Restore Options

RECOVERING A PUBLIC FOLDER ITEM

You can restore individual public folder items, such as messages, to a public folder.

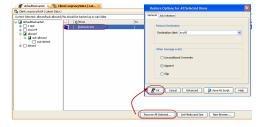
- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers |<Client>| Exchange PF Archiver.
- 2. Right-click the **<**ArchiveSet**>**, point to All Tasks and then click Browse.
- 3. Click OK.
- 4. Expand the **defaultArchiveSet** and navigate to the required public folder in the left pane.
- 5. Select a public folder item from the right pane.
- 6. Click Recover All Selected.
- 7. Click OK.

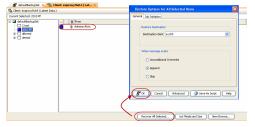
RECOVERING AN ATTACHMENT

Follow the steps given below to browse an archiveset and restore an attachment of a public folder message:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers |<Client>| Exchange PF Archiver.
- 2. Right-click the <ArchiveSet>, point to All Tasks and then click Browse.
- 3. Click OK
- 4. Navigate to **defaultArchiveSet | <Public Folder>** in the left pane of the **Client Browse** window.
- In the right pane, select the message that contains the required attachment.
 For all the messages that have attachments, a paper clip icon appears in the list of messages.
- 6. Click **Recover All Selected**.
- 7. Click **OK**.

FINDING AND RESTORING





RELATED TOPICS

Scheduling

Provides comprehensive information on scheduling jobs.

Job Management

Provides comprehensive information on managing jobs.

Use Find to search and locate messages from an archived data. Find is available from a backup set, subclient, or by right-clicking a public folder, a message, or a public folder item from the Client Browse tab.

FINDING A MESSAGE WITH A SPECIFIC SUBJECT

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers |<Client>| Exchange Public Folder.
- 2. Right-click <ArchiveSet> or <Subclient>, point to All Tasks, and click Find.
- Type the Subject name of the message to narrow the search by a specific subject line containing the specified text string or wildcard pattern. You can search for partial words without the need for wildcard characters at the beginning and/or end of the search string.

These wildcards, or a combination of these wildcards, are supported in the $\ensuremath{\textbf{Subject}}$ field:

- o * for any number of characters e.g., Accounting*.
- 0 ? for any one character e.g., user_group?.
- O [] for a range of characters e.g., [a-k]Lee.
- O [!] for a negation of a range of characters e.g., [!a-k] Lee.

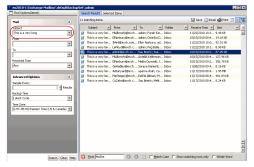
4. Click Search.

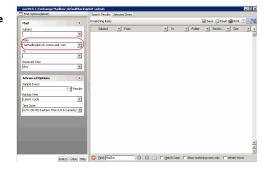
The messages that match the criteria are displayed in Search Results.

FINDING A MESSAGE FROM A SPECIFIC USER

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to **Client Computers** |<*Client*>| Exchange Public Folder.
- 2. Right-click <ArchiveSet> or <Subclient>, point to All Tasks, and click Find.
- 3. In From, narrow the search by entering a specified user who sent the message.
- 4. Click Search.

The messages that match the criteria are displayed in Search Results.





FINDING A MESSAGE SENT TO A SPECIFIC USER

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers |<Client>| Exchange Public Folder.
- 2. Right-click <ArchiveSet> or <Subclient>, point to All Tasks, and click Find.
- 3. In **To**, narrow the search by entering a specified user the message was addressed to. When searching Public Folder data using this field, keep in mind that only e-mails posted to mail-enabled Public Folders will be searchable. If you wish to search posts made to a Public Folder, use the **Subject** or **From** fields instead.
- 4. Click Search.

The messages that match the criteria are displayed in Search Results.

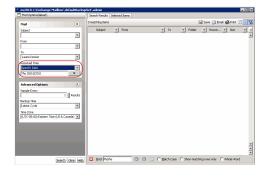


FINDING A MESSAGE RECEIVED IN A SPECIFIC TIME RANGE

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers |<Client>| Exchange Public Folder.
- 2. Right-click <ArchiveSet> or <Subclient>, point to All Tasks, and click Find.
- 3. In Received Time, select an entry from the drop-down list to narrow the search to messages received on the specified date or within the specified date range according to date criteria (Any, Today, Yesterday, This Week, This Month, This Year, Is, After, Before, Between, Specific Date). Depending on your selection, additional date range fields may appear below the Received Time field.

4. Click Search.

The messages that match the criteria are displayed in Search Results.



*

.

-

HRes

unta) 💌

QUICK SEARCH USING SAMPLING

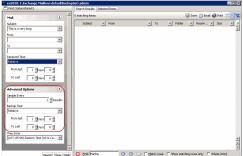
- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers |<Client>| Exchange Public Folder.
- 2. Right-click **<***ArchiveSet***>** or **<***Subclient***>**, point to All Tasks, and click **Find**.
- 3. Click Advanced Options to expand and display the fields.
- 4. In Sample Every, specify the rate at which messages are sampled to determine whether they match the search criteria. The default value of 1 indicates that every message will be sampled. Keep in mind that the order in which messages are sampled is based on the order in which the messages were backed up.
- 5. Click Search.

The messages that match the criteria are displayed in Search Results.

FINDING A MESSAGE ARCHIVED AT A SPECIFIC TIME

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers |<Client>| Exchange Public Folder.
- 2. Right-click Backup Set or Subclient, click All Tasks | Find.
- 3. Click Advanced Options to expand and display the fields.
- 4. In Backup Time, specify a time or time range (Latest Cycle, After, Before, Between, Specific Date, Any, Today, Yesterday, This week, This Month, This Year, or Relative) to narrow searches to messages that were backed up within the time period specified.
- 5. Click Search.

The messages that match the criteria are displayed in Search Results.



ADDING SEARCH RESULTS TO A LIST

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers |<Client>| Exchange Public Folder.
- 2. Right-click **<***ArchiveSet***>** or **<***Subclient***>**, point to All Tasks, and click **Find**.
- 3. Enter search criteria (e.g., Subject, From, To, etc.) as explained in the previous sections.
- 4. Click Search.

The messages that match the criteria are displayed in Search Results.

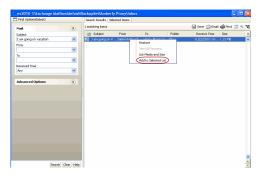
Right-click a message and select Add to Selected List.

5. Click the **Selected Items** tab and the message will be displayed.

Moving items to the Selected List lets you control the items you need to restore. You could narrow down the list from the Search Results so that you are able to recover only the items from the Selected List.

USING FIND FROM A BROWSE WINDOW

When you access Find as part of a Browse operation, keep in mind that the time range values are not pre-populated by any previously selected time range settings entered on the Browse Options or Advanced Browse Options dialog.



- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to **Client Computers** |<*Client*>| Exchange **PF Archiver**.
- 2. Right-click the **<**ArchiveSet**>**, point to All Tasks and then click Browse.
- 3. Click **OK**.
- 4. Right-click a public folder or a public folder item (e.g., calendars, journals, etc.) and select **Find**.
- 5. Enter search criteria (e.g., Subject, From, To, etc.) as explained in the next few sections.
- 6. Click Search.

The search results are displayed in the right pane. You can optionally save the results, email, or print them.

RESTORING A MESSAGE OR A MAILBOX ITEM FROM THE SEARCH RESULTS

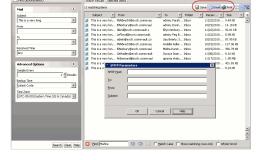
- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers |<Client>| Exchange Public Folder.
- 2. Right-click <ArchiveSet> or <Subclient>, point to All Tasks, and click Find.
- 3. Enter search criteria and click Search.
- 4. Right-click a public folder or a public folder item from the search results and then select **Restore**.
- 5. In the Destination Client list, select the name of client computer.

In cases where the mailbox alias name has changed, it is strongly recommended to restore messages out-of-place to the current mailbox alias name. Otherwise, attempting to restore the data in-place to a mailbox alias that no longer exists will cause the restore operation to fail.

6. Click OK.

SAVE, EMAIL, OR PRINT SEARCH RESULTS

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to **Client Computers** |<*Client*>| Exchange Public Folder.
- 2. Right-click <ArchiveSet> or <Subclient>, point to All Tasks, and click Find.
- 3. Enter search criteria and click Search.
- 4. Click Save, Email, or Print in the upper-right corner of the window.
- 5. If Email is selected, enter the SMTP parameters (SMTP Host, To, From, Subject).



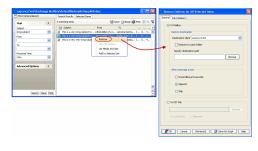
PERFORMING AN OUT-OF-PLACE RECOVERY

By default, the Exchange Public Folder iDataAgent recovers data to the client computer from which it originated; this is referred to as an in-place recovery. You can also recover the archived data to another client computer.

When you perform an out-of-place recovery, the recovered data assumes the rights (i.e., permissions) of the parent directory.

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers |<Client>| Exchange PF Archiver.
- 2. Right-click the **<**ArchiveSet**>**, point to All Tasks and then click Browse.
- 3. Click OK.
- 3. Select a public folder, a message, or a public folder item from the **Client Browse** window and click **Recover All Selected**.
- 4. In the **Destination client** list, select the client. The source and destination clients must reside in the same CommCell Console. The destination client must have the Exchange Public Folder Archiver *i*DataAgent installed on it.
- 5. Click **OK** to start the recovery.





Restore Options for All Selected Items
General Job Initiation
Restore Destination
Destination client exproxy7x64
When message exists
O Unconditional Overwrite
 Append
○ Skip
Cancel Advanced 🕑 Save As Script Help

RECOVERING TO A DIFFERENT EXCHANGE VERSION

When performing a cross-application recovery of Exchange Archived public folders from a newer version of Exchange Server to an older version, it follows the same compatibility support provided by the Exchange Server, unless otherwise noted.

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers |<Client>| Exchange PF Archiver.
- 2. Right-click the <ArchiveSet>, point to All Tasks and then click Browse.
- 3. Click OK.
- Select a public folder, a message or a public folder item from the Client Browse window and click Recover All Selected.
- 5. In the **Destination client** list, select the client. The source and destination clients must reside in the same CommCell Console. The destination client must have the Microsoft Exchange Public Folder Archiver *i*DataAgent installed on it.
- 6. Click **OK** to start the recovery.

Resto	tore Options for All Selected Items	
General	Job Initiation	
(R	Restore Destination	
(Destination client exproxy7x64	✓
- V	When message exists	
	O Unconditional Overwrite	
	Append	
	🔿 Skip	
P o	OK Cancel Advanced 🐼 Save A	
	OK Cancel Advanced 🚱 Save A	is Script Help

REVIEWING DATA SELECTED FOR RECOVERY

When you select multiple public folders, messages and public folder items from multiple locations, you can review all the data and locations before starting the restore. Follow the steps give below to review the data selected for restore:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to **Client Computers** |*<Client>*| **Exchange Public Folder**.
- 2. Right-click the defaultBackupSet and click All Tasks | Browse Backup Data.
- 3. Click OK.
- Select a public folder, a message or a public folder item from the Client Browse window and click Recover All Selected.
- In the Destination client list, select the client. The source and destination clients must reside in the same CommCell Console. The destination client must have the Microsoft Exchange Mailbox *i*DataAgent installed on it.
- 6. Click Advanced.
- 7. Select the Selected Paths/Filters tab.
- 8. Click OK.
- 9. Click **OK** to start the restore.

SCHEDULING A RECOVERY

- From the CommCell Console, navigate to Client Computers | Exchange PF Archiver.
 - Right-click an <**ArchiveSet**>, point to **All Tasks** and then click **Browse**.
 - Click OK.



2.

з.

- Select one or more public folders in the left pane. The public folder items (e.g., calendars, journals, etc.) will be selected in the right pane.
- Click Recover All Selected.
- Click Job Initiation tab and click Schedule.
 - Click **Configure**.

- 4. Select the appropriate scheduling options. For example:
 - Click Weekly.
 - Check the days you want the run the restore job.
 - Change the Start Time to 9:00 PM
 - Click **OK** to close the Schedule Details dialog
 - Click **OK** to close the Restore Options dialog

The restore job will execute as per the schedule.

Browse the Latest Daks Specify Browse Time Forwse Data Before: Inter Zone: GMT+05:30) Cherna, Kolkata, Mundad, ML. Clent Compute: GMT+05:30) Cherna, Kolkata, Mundad, ML. Clent Compute: GMT+05:30) Cherna, Kolkata, Mundad, ML. Clent Compute: GMT+05:30) Cherna, Kolkata, Mundad, ML. Show Detected Rens: Page Size: 1000 CK Carce Advance List Media Help CK Carce Notice No		ons					
Browse Data Before: Lue 02/01/2011 Garcel Advanced List Media Help Show Deleted Items Page Size: 1000 CK Cancel Advanced List Media Help Network Strategy Strat	 Brows 	e the Latest Data					
Tue 02/01/2011 Tue 2020 Clent Conputer: doctocalvm Use MediaAgent Any MEDIAAGENT> Show Deleted Rens Page Size: 1001 OK Cancel Advanced List Media Help The state of the state o	O Specify	/ Browse Time					
Time Zone: (dMT+05:30) Chernal, Kolkata, Mumbaj, N) Clent Computer: docdocalvm Use MediaAgent: Any MEDIAAGENT> Show Deleted Items Page Size: 1000 •	Browse	Data Before:					
Clerk Conputer: doctoral vm Use MedaAgent ANY MEDIAAGENT> V Show Deleted Items Page Sce: 1000 OK Cance Advanced List Media Help OK Cance Advanced List Media Help The state of the	Т	ue 02/01/2011		03	16 AM	- A-	
Clent Computer: dodocalvm Use MediaAgent: Image: Size: 1000 • OK Cancel Advanced List Media Help: OK Cancel Advanced List Media Help: Image: Size: 1000 • • <td< td=""><td></td><td>me Zone: (0</td><td>GMT+05:30) C</td><td>hennai, Kolka</td><td>ta, Mumbai, M</td><td> 💌</td><td></td></td<>		me Zone: (0	GMT+05:30) C	hennai, Kolka	ta, Mumbai, M	💌	
Use MedaAgent ANY MEDIAAGENT> Show Dekted Items Page Size: 1000 OK Cancel Advanced List Meda Help OK Cancel Advanced List Meda Help Note: Not: Note: Note: Not:: N							
Show Deleted Items Page Size: 1000 OK Cancel Advanced List Meda Help OK	Client Compu	ter: doclocalvm					~
Show Deleted Items Page Size: 100 CK Cancel Advanced List Media Help	Use MediaAg	ent <any medi<="" td=""><td>AAGENT></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>*</td></any>	AAGENT>				*
Page Size: 1000 1 OK Cancel Advanced List Meda Hep Image: Size: I	Show De						
OK Cancel Advanced List Media Help							
Processor Proce	Page bize:	1000 🖃					
Networkset Network					C		
Control of the second sec				Ivanced	List Media		нер
<pre>Windowskie Window</pre>	erc e-200 ((ater Oria)	ments for 8.0 MD					
Recover Options for All Selected Items: arear Job Inteston O Innedate Ran this job now O Schedule	Enthange Compliance Anthree Enthange Compliance Anthree Enthange Database Enthange Halbox	- V bleatigent.commu orderdent.commute	Tei Adrilly Facel Cardiny (P agrame shely Televine Tari Farifus; adrilly (h	Skeet Te is a rery log adject to Report 2452 Report 10 200 HOUDER SOFTMAR	facated[last nais use 10(20)0 00 11 89 805234 10(11)0 3×0 94 39574022 10(11)0 4×7 an		5km 9.4018 1.4016 9.7549
Recover Options for All Selected Items: arearal Job Initiation O Inmediate Run this job now © Schedule	defaultischuptet defaultischuptet defaultischuptet defaultischuptet defaultischuptetet defaultischuptetetetetetetetetetetetetetetetetetete	B McLustablench.commun Missagench.commun Diskeragench.commun United perch.commun United perch.commun	Laze Doder; Nycio Ro Genores Made; Livel Fash Earde; Livel Fash Earde; Heny Pe	E carácter de Pancho Hilla e There are <1,000,000,000,000, I an poing on Vacation for th Rer. The lenst a regly web.	a sono-el 112/22/08 00-04 eP 00,000,000,0		902.14HD 9.7348 96.56HD 7.848
Recover Options for All Selected Hems: eneral Job Initiation O Inmediate Run this job now O Schedule	8 Debted Sens 8 Deats 8 Deats 8 Deats 8 Deats 8 Deats 8 Deats	Doblytheith conversal c Hadesdeich conversal c Difference conversal c Difference conversal Difference conversal	Th During, Hea Gray Charrie Futbolker; Vale adam; Sufy Glooc; Hea Leatha Riyd; adam; ao	Re:	10/15/10 H OR AM 10/15/10 D OS PM 10/15/10 D OS PM 10/15/10 H OK AM 10/15/10 H OK AM		1.85.MB 30.3248 968.7148 2.57.MB
Recover Options for All Selected Hems: eneral Job Initiation O Inmediate Run this job now O Schedule	R L Arechal R Dans fred R D Nore R D Note R D Other	Salver(dech.commal Salver(dech.commal Shalver(dech.commal Shalver(dech.commal	Parale Exercises, Elis Pasa Ubradio Applicitivados; V Starylo Talenachos, Chem Visionitas Prisone Meta	1.1 Testing Inspansion 200 HOLDAY SOEDUL [Phul Escape those quited investor removements	Av 8.4 992 DEVALUE & 53 APT 20204000 EE(1510 & 54 APT - 202002914 EE(1510 & 43 APT		9.5148 9.5148 9.548
Job Initiation O Inmediate Run this job now © Exhedule			gewood at Selected List Peo	and 301 Mee Drovet			
Sob Initiation O Immediate Run this job now © Schedule			Items:				
C Inmediate Run this job now		וי					
Run this job now							
© Schedule							
Configure Schedule Pattern Configure			_				
	Configure	Schedule Pattern		onfigure			
) ———
Rog OK Cancel Advanced Sovjet Ha			Cancel	Advance	1 🕑 Sar	re As Script	Hel
	Schedule Detail		Cancel	Advance	1 🕑 Sa	re As Script) [He
Schedule Details			Cancel	Advance	1 🕑 5a	re As Script) Hel
Schedule Details	Schedule Name	s			1 🕑 Sou	re As Script) Hel
Schedule Details	Schedule Name	s			i 👔 So	re As ≲cript) Hel
Schedule Details Schedule Name Oree Time Start Time 9:00PM	Schedule Name One Time Daily Weekly	s			1 🕑 500	re As Script) Hel
Schedule Details Schedule Name One Time Start Time 9:00PM 9:00PM ONexthy	Schedule Name One Time Daily Weekly Monthly	s Start Time	9:00PM).			
Schedule Details Schedule Name One Time Start Time 9:00PH	Schedule Name One Time Daily Weekly Monthly	s Start Time	9 : 00 PM		iday [2 Wednesday	

OK Cancel Help Options>>

RESTORING BY JOBS

The Restore By Jobs feature provides the facility to select a specific backup job to be restored. This method of restoring data is considerably faster as it reads continuously on the tape and retrieves the data and does not depend on the indexing subsystem to get the seek offsets on the media.

This feature can be used in different scenarios such as the following:

- To restore point-in-time data associated with a specific backup job, such as full, incremental, differential, etc.
- To restore CommServe DR data for the disaster recovery or for creating a hot-site purposes.
- To restore multiplexed data from the same client.

Consider the following when restoring by jobs:

- Run a restore by jobs whenever you want to restore the entire contents of the job.
- Avoid running restores by jobs for jobs associated with the default subclient. If you do this, the entire contents of the machine will be restored. As such, this

may cause problems (e.g., the machine might run out of space) or produce undesirable results (e.g., you might end up restoring operating system files or directories that you really do not want to restore).

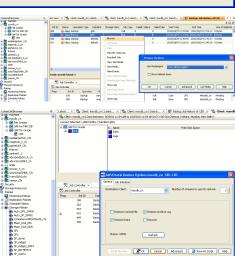
• Avoid modifying the contents of any associated subclients since this may result in the retrieval of older data.

Use the following steps to restore data by jobs.

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, right-click the level whose data you want to browse, click **View** and then click the **Backup History**.
 - Compared and a second and
- From the Backup History Filter window, select the filter options, if any, that you want to apply and click OK.
- Backup History Filter for: CER Backun Tyne) All 🔵 Eull Differentia O Incre O Synthetic full Job Statu 💽 Aļ 🔿 Failg ○ Killed Specify Time Rang Start Time End Tim Cance Advanced

atest... × 👒 Clenti Nordb_r

- 3. From the Backup Job History window, right-click the backup job that need to be restored and select **Browse**.
- 4. From the **Browse Options** dialog box, click **OK** to execute the browse using the **Browse the Latest Data** option.
- From the Browse window, select the instance node in the left pane and then select the required data and logs in the right pane, and click the Recover All Selected button at the bottom of the window.
- 6. Select the desired restore options and click OK.



MANAGING RECOVERY JOBS

Once you initiate the recovery operation, a recover job is generated in the Job Controller. Jobs can be managed in a number of ways. The following sections provide information on the different job management options available:

RESTARTING JOBS

Jobs that fail to complete successfully are automatically restarted based on the job restartability configuration set in the Control Panel. Keep in mind that changes made to this configuration will affect all jobs in the entire CommCell.

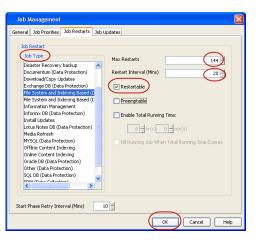
To Configure the job restartability for a specific job, you can modify the retry settings for the job. This will override the setting in the Control Panel. It is also possible to override the default CommServe configuration for individual jobs by configuring retry settings when initiating the job. This configuration, however, will apply only to the specific job.

Backup jobs for this Agent are resumed from the point-of-failure.

CONFIGURE JOB RESTARTABILITY AT THE COMMSERVE LEVEL

1. From the CommCell Browser, click Control Panel icon.

- 2. Select Job Management.
- 3. Click **Job Restarts** tab and select a **Job Type.**
 - Select **Restartable** to make the job restartable.
 - Change the value for Max Restarts to change the maximum number of times the Job Manager will try to restart a job.
 - Change the value for **Restart Interval (Mins)** to change the time interval between attempts for the Job Manager to restart the job.
- 4. Click **OK.**



CONFIGURE JOB RESTARTABILITY FOR AN INDIVIDUAL JOB

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers | <Client> | Exchange Public Folder | <Backup Set>.
- 2. Right-click the *Subclient>* in the right pane and then click **Browse Backup Data**.
- 3. Click OK.
- 4. Select the data that you want to restore and click Recover All Selected.
- 5. Click Advanced and select the Job Retry tab
- Select Enable Total Running Time and specify the maximum elapsed time before a job can be restarted or killed

Select **Kill Running Jobs When Total Running Time Expires** to kill the job after reaching the maximum elapsed time.

7. Select Enable Number Of Retries and specify the number of retries.

8. Click OK.

CONTROLLING JOBS

The following controls are available for running jobs in the Job Controller window:

SUSPEND	Temporarily stops a job. A suspended job is not terminated; it can be restarted at a later time.
	Resumes a job and returns the status to Waiting, Pending, Queued, or Running. The status depends on the availability of resources, the state of the Operation Windows, or the Activity Control setting.
KILL	Terminates a job.

SUSPENDING A JOB

- 1. From the Job Controller of the CommCell Console, right-click the job and select Suspend.
- 2. The job status may change to Suspend Pending for a few moments while the operation completes. The job status then changes to Suspended.

RESUMING A JOB

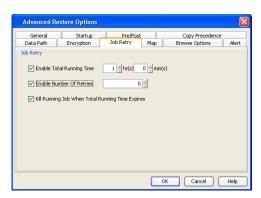
- 1. From the Job Controller of the CommCell Console, right-click the job and select Resume.
- 2. As the Job Manager attempts to restart the job, the job status changes to Waiting, Pending, or Running.

KILLING A JOB

- 1. From the Job Controller of the CommCell Console, right-click the job and select Kill.
- Click Yes when the confirmation prompt appears if you are sure you want to kill the job. The job status may change to Kill Pending for a few moments while the operation completes. Once completed, the job status will change to Killed and it will be removed from the Job Controller window after five minutes.

ADDITIONAL RESTORE OPTIONS

Several additional options are available to further refine your recovery operations. The following table describes these options, as well as the steps to implement them.



Be sure to read the overview material referenced for each feature prior to using them.

OPTION	DESCRIPTION	RELATED TOPIC
Skip Errors and Continue	This option enables you to to continue the restore job regardless of media errors and create a file that lists the full path names of the files that failed to get restored. Follow the steps given below to set this option:	
	1. From the CommCell Browser, click Client Computers <client> Exchange Public Folder.</client>	
	 Right-click the <backup set=""> that contains the data you want to restore and select All Tasks Browse Backup Data.</backup> 	
	3. In the Browse Options dialog box, click OK.	
	4. In the Client Browse tab, select the data to be restored and click Recover all Selected.	
	5. In the Restore Options for All Selected Items dialog box, click Advanced .	
	6. In the Advanced Restore Options dialog box, click General.	
	7. On the General tab, select the Skip errors and continue check box.	
	8. Click OK .	
Startup Options	The Startup Options are used by the Job Manager to set priority for resource allocation. This is useful to give higher priority to certain jobs. You can set the priority as follows:	Refer to Job Priority and Priority Precedence.
	1. From the CommCell Browser, click Client Computers <client> Exchange Public Folder.</client>	
	 Right-click the Backup set that contains the data you want to restore and select All Tasks Browse Backup Data. 	
	3. In the Browse Options dialog box, click OK.	
	4. In the Client Browse tab, select the data to be restored and click Recover all Selected.	
	5. In the Restore Options for All Selected Items dialog box, click Advanced.	
	6. In the Advanced Restore Options dialog box, click Startup.	
	7. On the Startup tab, select Change Priority .	
	8. Enter a priority number - 0 is the highest priority and 999 is the lowest priority.	
	9. Select the Start up in suspended State check box to start the job in a suspended state.	
	10. Click OK .	
Copy Precedence	By default, the system retrieves data from the storage policy copy with the lowest copy precedence. If the data was pruned from the primary copy, the system automatically retrieves data from the other copies of the storage policy in the lowest copy precedence to highest copy precedence order. Once the data is found, it is retrieved, and no further copies are checked.	Refer to Recovering Data Fro Copies.
	You can retrieve data from a specific storage policy copy (Synchronous Copy or Selective Copy). If data does not exist in the specified copy, the data retrieve operation fails even if the data exists in another copy of the same storage policy. Follow the steps given below to retrieve the data from a a specific storage policy copy:	
	1. From the CommCell Browser, click Client Computers <client> Exchange Public Folder.</client>	
	 Right-click the Backup set that contains the data you want to restore and select All Tasks Browse Backup Data. 	
	3. In the Browse Options dialog box, click OK .	
	4. In the Client Browse tab, select the data to be restored and click Recover all Selected.	
	5. In the Restore Options for All Selected Items dialog box, click Advanced .	
	6. In the Advanced Restore Options dialog box, click Copy Precedence.	
	7. On the Copy Precedence tab, select the Restore from copy precedence check box.	
	8. Enter the copy precedence number.	
	9. Click OK .	
Oata Path Options	The data recovery operations use a default Library, MediaAgent, Drive Pool, and Drive as the Data Path. You can use this option to change the data path if the default data path is not available. Follow the steps given below to change the default data path:	Refer to Change Data Path.
	1. From the CommCell Browser, click Client Computers <client> Exchange Public Folder.</client>	
	2. Right-click the Backup set > that contains the data you want to restore and select All	

I	Taska Provise Paskup Data
	Tasks Browse Backup Data. 3. In the Browse Options dialog box, click OK.
	 In the Diowse options datago box, check OK. In the Client Browse tab, select the data to be restored and click Recover all Selected.
	5. In the Restore Options for All Selected Items dialog box, click Advanced.
	 In the Advanced Restore Options dialog box, click Data Path. On the Data Path tab, select the MediaAgent and Library.
	8. Select the Drive Pool and Drive for optical and tape libraries.
	 Select the name of the Proxy server if you wish to restore using a proxy server.
	You can select the Proxy server only when you are restoring from a snapshot. This option is not available for a regular restore.
	10. Click OK .
Encryption	If the client's data is encrypted with a pass phrase, you must enter the pass-phrase to start the Refer to Data Encryption. data recovery operation. Follow the steps given below to enter the pass-phrase:
	1. From the CommCell Browser, click Client Computers <client> Exchange Public Folder.</client>
	 Right-click the <backup set=""> that contains the data you want to restore and select All Tasks Browse Backup Data.</backup>
	3. In the Browse Options dialog box, click OK.
	4. In the Client Browse tab, select the data to be restored and click Recover all Selected.
	5. In the Restore Options for All Selected Items dialog box, click Advanced.
	6. In the Advanced Restore Options dialog box, click Encryption.
	7. Enter the Pass Phrase.
	8. Click OK.
Browse Options	Deleted files can be manually restored by the user. You can specify the time range for the deleted items to be restored.
	1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Client Computers <client></client> <i>i</i>DataAgent . The default backup set and subclient are displayed on the right-hand window pane.
	2. Right-click the Backup Set , click All Tasks and then click Browse .
	3. From the Browse Options window, click OK .
	4. Select the data to be restored and click Recover all Selected.
	5. From the Restore Options for All Selected Items dialog box, click Advanced .
	6. From the Browse Options tab, select Restore deleted items option.
	Select Specify Time Range option to specify the time zone, start time and end time for the deleted items to be restored.
Alerts	8. Click OK .
Alerts	This option enables users or user groups to get automatic notification on the status of the data recovery job. Follow the steps given below to set up the criteria to raise notifications/alerts:
	1. From the CommCell Browser, click Client Computers <client> Exchange Public Folder.</client>
	 Right-click the <backup set=""> that contains the data you want to restore and select All Tasks Browse Backup Data.</backup>
	3. In the Browse Options dialog box, click OK .
	4. In the Client Browse tab, select the data to be restored and click Recover all Selected.
	5. In the Restore Options for All Selected Items dialog box, click Advanced .
	6. In the Advanced Restore Options dialog box, click Alerts.
	 Click Add Alert. From the Add Alert Wizard dialog box, select the required threshold and notification
	criteria and click Next . 9. Select the required notification types and click Next .
	10. Select the recipients and click Next .
	11. Click Finish.
	12. Click OK .

Command Line Restores	Command Line Interface enables you to perform backups or restore from the command line. The commands can be executed from the command line or can be integrated into scripts.	Refer to Command Line Interface.
	You can also generate command line scripts for specific operations from the CommCell Browser using the Save As Script option.	
CommCell Readiness Report	The CommCell Readiness Report provides you with vital information, such as connectivity and readiness of the Client, MediaAgent and CommServe. It is useful to run this report before performing the data protection or recovery job. Follow the steps given below to generate the report:	Refer to CommCell Readiness Report.
	1. From the Tools menu in the CommCell Console, click Reports .	
	2. Navigate to Reports CommServe CommCell Readiness.	
	3. Click the Client tab and click the Modify button.	
	4. In the Select Computers dialog box, clear the Include All Client Computers and All Client Groups check box.	
	5. Select the client from the Exclude list.	
	6. Click the Include > button.	
	7. Click OK .	
	8. Click the MediaAgent tab.	
	9. Clear the Include All MediaAgents checkbox.	
	10. Select the MediaAgent from the Exclude list.	
	11. Click Include > .	
	12. Click Run .	
	The generated report is displayed.	
Restore Job Summary Report	The Restore Job Summary Report provides you with information about all the data recovery jobs that are run in last 24 hours for a specific client and agent. You can get information such as failure reason, failed objects, job options etc. It is useful to run this report after performing the restore. Follow the steps given below to generate the report:	Refer to Restore Job Summary Report.
	1. From the Tools menu in the CommCell Console, click Reports .	
	2. Navigate to Reports Jobs Job Summary.	
	3. Click Data Recovery on the General tab in the right pane.	
	4. On the Computers tab, select the client and the agent for which you want to run the report.	
	5. Click Run.	

Data Aging - Exchange Public Folder Archiver Agent

Data Aging is the process of removing old data from secondary storage to allow the associated media to be reused for future backups.

By default, all backup data is retained infinitely. However, you should change the retention of your data based on your needs. Note that if you continue to have infinite retention, you will also need infinite storage capacity.

5 関

Client Computer Groups

Enable Managed Dis

O Retair Por

🚡 Storage Poli

. Disast.. Stand.. Stand... Stand... , Stand..

Content 🛐 Summar idol admin

ena C... ena C... ena L.... ena N... ena te...

яПа ×

Auto..

🔠 test-data-aging 🛛

dol > 🛄 Policies > 🚒

Сору Туре

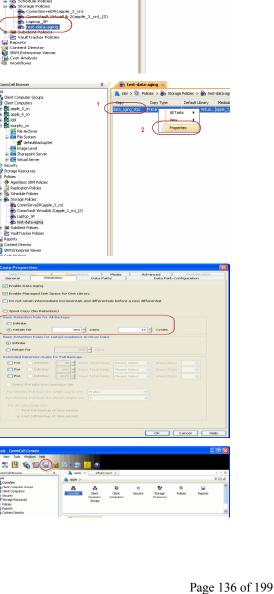
1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Policies | Storage Policies.

2. Highlight the Storage Policy.

з. From the right pane, right-click the Storage Policy Copy and click the Properties.

- 4. • Click the **Retention** tab.
 - Click the Retain For in the Basic Retention Rules for All Backups area.
 - Enter number of days to retain the data.
 - Enter number of cycles to retain the data.
 - Click OK.

5. From the CommCell Browser, click the **Reports** icon.



6. Expand Reports and select Data Retention Forecast and Compliance.

7. Click Run.

8. The report will display the data to be pruned when a data aging job is run.

To ensure only data intended for aging is actually aged, it is important to identify the data that will be aged based on the retention rules you have configured. Hence, ensure this report includes only the data you intend to age.

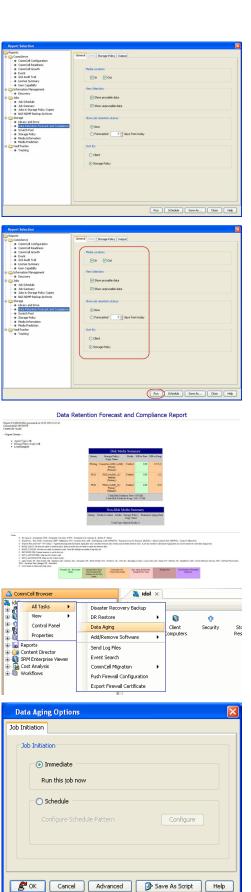
If necessary, fine-tune your rules so that only the intended data is aged.

Once you run a data aging job, the data will be lost.

- 9. From the CommCell Console, right click the CommServe icon and click All Tasks | Data Aging.
- 10. Select Immediate in the Job Initiation section and click OK.

 You can track the progress of the job from the Job Controller window. When the job has completed, the Job Controller displays Completed.





Make sure that the job completes successfully. If the job did not complete successfully, re-run the job.

ADVANCED TOPICS

Data Aging - Advanced

Provides comprehensive information on additional Data Aging capabilities.

Additional Operations - Exchange Public Folder Archiver Agent

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Audit Trail Auxiliary Copy Erasing Archive Data Global Filters License Administration Online Help Links Operating System and Application Upgrades Operation Window Schedule Policy Storage Policy Uninstalling Components

AUDIT TRAIL

The Audit Trail feature allows you to track the operations of users who have access to the CommCell. This capability is useful if a detrimental operation was performed in the CommCell and the source of that operation needs to be determined.

Audit Trail tracks operations according to four severity levels:

- Critical: This level records operations that will result in imminent loss of data.
- High: This level records operations that may result in loss of data.
- Medium: This level records changes to the general configuration of one or more entities. Such changes may produce unintended results when operations
 are performed.
- Low: This level records changes to status, addition of entities, and other operations that have minimal impact on existing CommCell functions.

To set Audit Trail retention periods:

- 1. From the Tools menu in the CommCell Console, click Control Panel, and then select Audit Trail.
- 2. From the Audit Trail dialog box, select the desired retention time (in days) for each severity level.
- 3. Click **OK**.

AUXILIARY COPY

An auxiliary copy operation allows you to create secondary copies of data associated with data protection operations, independent of the original copy.

- 1. Expand the Policies node, right-click storage policy for which you want to perform an auxiliary copy, click All Tasks, and then click Run Auxiliary Copy.
- 2. If you are starting the auxiliary copy operation from the CommServe level, select the storage policy for which you wish to perform the auxiliary copy.

If you are starting the auxiliary copy operation from the Storage Policy level, the Storage Policy field is already populated with the name of the Storage Policy you selected.

- 3. If the source copy is configured with a shared library, select the Source MediaAgent for the auxiliary copy.
- 4. Click **OK** to start the auxiliary copy operation. A progress bar displays the progress of the operation.

ERASING ARCHIVE DATA

The Erase Data feature allows you to permanently erase any data that can be backed up. Using Erase Data, you can erase mailboxes, folders in a mailbox, messages within a folder, and attachments.

CONFIGURING ERASE DATA

To erase data, you need to first assign a Filter Storage Policy for Erasing Data. Follow the steps given below to assign a Filter Storage Policy:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, right-click the storage policy that you want to use as a filter storage policy, then click **Properties**.
- 2. From the General tab of the Storage Policy Properties dialog box, select the Allow Erase Data check box.
- 3. Click **OK**.

- 4. From the CommCell Browser, right-click the <Agent> and then click Properties.
- 5. From the Storage Device tab of the agent Properties dialog box, select a filter storage policy from the Filter Storage Policy list.
- 6. Click **OK**.

RUNNING AN ERASE DATA JOB

After the configuration has been completed, you can now browse and erase data.

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, right-click the <Agent>, select All Tasks and then click Erase Data By Browsing.
- 2. You are warned that the data will be permanently removed. Click Yes to continue.
- 3. From the Erase Data by Browsing dialog box, click Browse.
- 4. In the Browse Options dialog box, select a browse time range and any advanced browse options, and click OK.
- 5. From the browse selection window, select the data objects that you want to erase, and click OK.
- 6. In the Job Initiation tab, select Immediate to run the job immediately.

You can track the progress of the job from the Job Controller or Event Viewer.

GLOBAL FILTERS

Global Filters are exclusions that filter data from backups across all Agents in a CommCell that support the feature. Global Filters serve as a template for files, folders, and entities that should always be excluded from all (or most) backups in a CommCell, such as temporary data a computer does not retain or data that is recoverable by means other than a restore. This saves space on media and enhances backup performance.

By default, filters configured for a particular subclient override any Global Filters configured for the CommCell. You can, however, configure subclients to include global filters along with any filters already configured for the subclient.

CONFIGURE GLOBAL FILTERS

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, right-click the CommServe, click Control Panel, and then click Global Filters.
- 2. Select Use Global Filters on All Subclients.
- 3. Click Browse to locate the files or folders to be excluded from backups and click OK.
- 4. Click **OK** to save your changes.

ENABLE/DISABLE GLOBAL FILTERS FOR A SUBCLIENT

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, right-click the subclient for which you want to enable Global Filters and click Properties.
- 2. Click the Filters tab.
- 3. Select one of the following values from the Include Global Filters list:
 - **ON** to enable Global Filters for this subclient.
 - o **OFF** to disable Global Filters for this subclient.
- 4. Click OK.

LICENSE ADMINISTRATION

REQUIRED LICENSES

The Exchange Mailbox *i*DataAgent requires the **Exchange Public Folder Archiver** license.

CONVERTING EVALUATION LICENSES TO PERMANENT LICENSES

If you installed the software using an Evaluation License, you can upgrade to a Permanent License as follows:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, right-click the CommServe icon, click Control Panel, and then click License Administration.
- 2. Select the Update License tab and then click Convert.
- 3. Check the box that corresponds to the evaluation license you would like to upgrade and then click Convert.

The license information is updated in the License Administration window.

USING CAPACITY-BASED LICENSING

License Usage by Capacity is a licensing mechanism that allows you to obtain licenses based on the amount of data you back up. It provides the following features:

- Flexibility of usage on all agents, rather than being tied to number of server, agents, etc.
- Allows you to purchase licenses based on your data protection needs

Both Core and Enterprise license types are available. Refer to License Usage by Capacity for comprehensive information on utilizing this method.

RELEASING A LICENSE

If you no longer require a license on a computer, such as cases where the computer is being retired, you can release the license and use it later for another computer. Backup data from the retired computer can still be restored after the license is released provided the data is not aged.

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, right-click the name of the client from which you want to release a license, click **All Tasks**, and then click **Release License** for **Client**.
- 2. Click **OK** to continue releasing the license
- 3. Click Yes to confirm you want to release the license or No to abort.

ONLINE HELP LINKS

Use the following links to view the online help for the corresponding tabs in the CommCell Console:

OPERATIONS	ENTITY	ONLINE HELP LINKS	SUB LINKS
CONFIGURATION	Agent	Exchange Public Folder Archiver Properties (General)	Change User Account
CONFIGURATION		Exchange Public Folder Archiver Properties (Version)	
		Exchange Public Folder Archiver Properties (Security)	
		Exchange Public Folder Archiver Properties (Activity Control)	
		Exchange Public Folder Archiver Properties (AD Server)	
		Exchange Public Folder Archiver Properties (Storage Device)	
	Archive Set	Archive Set Properties of: <archive set=""> (General)</archive>	
		Archive Set Properties of: < Archive Set > (Auto Discover)	
		Archive Set Properties of: < Archive Set > (Security)	
	Subclient	Subclient Properties of: <subclient name=""> (General)</subclient>	Add/Modify Mailbox
		Subclient Properties of: < Subclient Name> (Content)	User Account (Pre/Post)
		Subclient Properties of: < Subclient Name> (Filters)	Data Paths for < <i>Storage Policy Name</i> :
		Subclient Properties of: < Subclient Name> (Pre/Post Process)	Configure AD User Group for Auto-
		Subclient Properties of: < Subclient Name> (Storage Device)	discovery
		Subclient Properties of: < <i>Subclient Name</i> > (Auto-discovery)	Authenticate Active Directory Domain Controller
		Subclient Properties of: < Subclient Name> (Activity Control)	Change Mailbox Stores for Auto-
		Subclient Properties of: < Subclient Name> (Encryption)	discovery
		Subclient Properties of: < <i>Subclient Name</i> > (Security)	
	Archive Options	Archive Options for Subclient: <subclient name=""></subclient>	Save As Script
ARCHIVE			Command Line XML Options
	Advanced Archive Options	Advanced Archive Options (Data)	Alert Wizard
	Options	Advanced Archive Options (Startup)	
		Advanced Archive Options (Job Retry)	
		Advanced Archive Options (Media)	
		Advanced Archive Options (Data Path)	
		Advanced Archive Options (VaultTracking)	
		Advanced Archive Options (Alert)	
RECOVER	Recover Options	Recover Options for All Selected Items (General)	Save As Script
LCOVER		Recover Options for All Selected Items (Job Initiation)	Command Line XML Options
	Advanced Recover Options	Advanced Recover Options (General)	Alert Wizard
		Advanced Recover Options (Startup)	
		Advanced Recover Options (Copy Precedence)	
		Advanced Recover Options (Data Path)	
		Advanced Recover Options (Encryption)	

A	Advanced Recover Options (Selected Path/Filters)	
A	Advanced Recover Options (Browse Options)	
A	Advanced Recover Options (Alert)	

OPERATING SYSTEM AND APPLICATION UPGRADES

Operating system upgrades are only supported when upgrading from one version of an OS to a different version of the same OS (e.g., Win2003 to Win2008). The two methods of upgrading are:

- Seamless Upgrade This involves uninstalling the Agent software, upgrading the operating system, and then re-installing the Agent software.
- Full OS Replacement This involves performing a clean install of a new version of the OS, re-installing any application software, then re-installing the CommServe, MediaAgent, and/or Agent software.

For Full OS Replacement, the client computer must be configured to have the CommServe, MediaAgent, and/or Client software re-installed to the same location, the same Fully Qualified Domain Name or short domain name, the same partitions, disk drive format (FAT, NTFS, et. al.), and IP configuration as previously.

If it is necessary to remove Agent software to facilitate an operating system or application upgrade, do not delete the icon for the Agent from the CommCell Console, or all associated backed up data will be lost.

Use the following strategy to upgrade the operating system software:

- Identify the computers you want to upgrade and the CommCell components installed on each of these computers.
- Choose the type of upgrade procedure you want to use on each computer: seamless or full replacement.
- CommServe, MediaAgent, and Client computers can be upgraded in any order.

OPERATION WINDOW

By default, all operations in the CommCell can run for 24 hours. To prevent certain operations from running during certain periods of the day, you can define operation rules so that these operations are disabled during those times.

When operation rules are configured, operations that are started within the time window specified will go to a queued (as opposed to pending) state. Once the time window specified in the operation rule has elapsed, these queued or running operations will resume automatically.

- 1. In the CommCell Browser, right-click the appropriate entity, click **All Tasks**, and then click **Operation Window**.
- 2. Click Add.
- 3. From the **Operation Window** dialog box:
 - Enter the name of the rule in the Name field.
 - Select either an administration, data protection (either full or non-full), and/or a data recovery operation from the **Operations** pane.
- 4. Click **OK**.

SCHEDULE POLICY

A schedule policy is a defined schedule or group of schedules for specific operations to be performed on associated objects within the CommCell. When the schedules from a policy are run, the specified operations, (e.g., auxiliary copy, backup, etc.,) will be performed on the associated CommCell objects.

- 1. Expand the Policies node, right-click Schedule Policies and click Add.
- 2. Type the Name of the schedule policy.
- 3. Select the **Type** of schedule policy.
- 4. Select the Agent Type.
- 5. Type a description of the schedule policy.
- 6. Click Add.
- 7. Enter a Schedule Name in the **Schedule Pattern** tab.
- 8. Click **OK**.
- 9. On the **Associations** tab, select the objects to be associated with the schedule policy.
- 10. Click OK.

STORAGE POLICY

A Storage policy defines the data lifecycle management rules for protected data. Storage policies map data from its original location to a physical storage media

and determine its retention period.

- 1. Expand the Policies node, right-click Storage Policies, and select New Storage Policy.
- 2. Click Next.
- 3. Select **Data Protection and Archiving** to create a regular storage policy or **CommServe Disaster Recovery Backup** to backup the CommServe database and click **Next**.
- 4. Click Next.
- 5. Enter the name of storage policy and click Next.
- 6. Enter the name of the primary copy and click Next.
- 7. From the drop down box, select the default library for the primary copy and click Next.
- 8. From the drop down box, select the MediaAgent and click Next.
- 9. Enter number of data streams and set the retention period for the policy and click Next.
- 10. Click Next.
- 11. Click Browse, browse to your designated deduplication store location and click Next.
- 12. Confirm your selections and click Finish.

UNINSTALLING COMPONENTS

You can uninstall the components using one of the following method:

Method 1: Uninstall Components Using the CommCell Console

Method 2: Uninstall Components from Add or Remove Programs

METHOD 1: UNINSTALL COMPONENTS USING THE COMMCELL CONSOLE

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, right-click the desired Client Computer and click All Tasks -> Add/Remove Programs and click Uninstall Software.
- 2. Uninstall Software Options dialog will appear.
- 3. In the Uninstall Software tab, select Uninstall All to uninstall all the software packages.
- 4. In the Job Initiation tab, select Immediate to run the job immediately.

You can track the progress of the job from the **Job Controller** or **Event Viewer**.

METHOD 2: UNINSTALL COMPONENTS FROM ADD OR REMOVE PROGRAMS

- 1. Click the Start button on the Windows task bar and then click Control Panel.
- 2. Double-click Add/Remove Programs.
 - For Windows Vista/Windows 2008, click Uninstall a Program in the Control Panel.
- 3. Click **Remove** to uninstall the components in the following sequence:
 - 1. <Agent>
 - 2. File System iDataAgent
 - 3. Base Software

ADVANCED TOPICS

Provides comprehensive information about additional capabilities for the following features:

- Audit Trail
- Auxiliary Copy
- Erase Archive Data
- Global Filters
- License Administration
- License Usage by CapacityOperating System and Application Upgrades
- Operation Window
- Schedule Policy
- Storage Policies
- Uninstalling Components

Administration Guide - Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent

Back to Top

Desktop Browse - Exchange Public Folder Archiver Agent (Administrator)

Install Setup



Desktop Browse enables users to browse data from an user-friendly Web interface from any remote location. To enable Desktop Browse operations, you need to first install the Web Search Server and the Web Search Client. The Web Search Server and Web Search Client can be installed on the same computer or on different computers.

Ensure that Service Pack 2 has been installed on the Client computer and Web Search Server prior to using this feature.

INSTALLING THE WEB SEARCH SERVER AND WEB SEARCH CLIENT

- 1. Ensure that the IIS is installed on the CommServe computer before installing the Web Search Server and Web Search Client.
- 2. Run Setup.exe from Software Installation Discs on the CommServe computer.

3.	Select the required language.	
	Click Next.	
		Select the language you will use during installation.
		English (United States)
		Next > Cancel
4.	Select the option to install software on this computer.	
	NOTES	
	• The options that appear on this screen depend on the computer in which the	
	software is being installed.	≓ Install Software on this computer
		= Advanced options
		View documentation website
		 View documentation website View Install Quick Start Guide (Requires Adobe Acrobat Reader)
		Install Adobe Acrobat Reader
		⊕ Exit
5.	Click Next.	Installer
		Welcome The Installer will guide you through the
		setup process for Software
		This program will install Software on your computer.
		It is strongly recommended that you exit all Windows programs before running this Setup program.
		Click Cancel to quit Setup and then close any programs you have running. Click Next to continue with Setup.
		WARNING: This program is protected by copyright law and international treaties.
		Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this program, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum
		extent possible under the law.
		Installer
		Next > Cancel
-		
6.	Click OK .	Installer
		It is strongly recommended that any and all virus scanning software be disabled immediately before continuing with this Software installation. Falue to do so may result in fieldocking by the virus scanner and subsequent failure for software to install its own files.

Click OK once you have disabled them and setup will continue

OK.

Administration Guide - Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent

Click Next.

 Expand Client Modules | Web Search Server & Browse and select Web Search Server and Web Search Client.
 Click Next.

9. Click Yes.

- 10. Click Yes.
- **11.** Specify the SQL Server System Administrator password.

NOTES

• This is the password for the administrator's account created by SQL during the installation.

Click Next.

staller	
Select Platforms Select the platforms you want to configure.	
B Commodel concel Concel Concole Concel Modules Concel Modules Concert Modules Content Indexing and Search Content Index Index Index Content Index Conte	ne to see a of the platform and v it may be e mmended)
istaller	
software server that make use of these instances. Click Yes to continue or No to exit.	
staller	
Setup detected an instance of SQL Server with the name Company already exist this computer. If any thirdparty applications are using this instance, it is strongly recommended that you exit the install, uninstal Company instance and run Setup Otherwise, you may continue with the install.	ts on • again.
Click Yes to continue or No to exit.	
<u>N</u>	
staller	
SQL User Password Provide a password for SQL user 'sa'	
Please provide a password for SQL user 'sa'	
⊂ SQL user 'sa'	
Enter Password:	

Next > Cancel

License Agreement Please read the following License Agreement. Press the PAGE DOW/N key to view the entire agreement.

I accept the terms in the license agreement.
 I do not accept the terms in the license agreement.

Installer

End User License and Limited Warranty Agreement Software Release 9.0.0 (including Microsoft@ SQL Server⁷⁴⁴ 2008 Enterprise Edition, SQL Server⁷⁴⁴ 2008 Express Edition and Windows Pre-Installation Environment)

Fud Hoav I lanuas Agus

.....

< Back Next >

^

~

Cancel

12. Modify **Apache Tomcat Server port number** to **82**.

Click Next.

NOTES:

• Ensure that these port numbers are different and are not already used by any other services or application.

13. Click Next.

14. Select **Add programs to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List**, to add CommCell programs and services to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List.

Click Next.

This option enables CommCell operations across Windows firewall by adding CommCell programs and services to Windows firewall exclusion list.

It is recommended to select this option even if Windows firewall is disabled. This will allow the CommCell programs and services to function if the Windows firewall is enabled at a later time.

15. Enter the Web Search Server database installation path.

Click **Browse** to modify the default location.

Click Next.

Installer
Port Number Selection Please specify the port numbers you want to use for IIS and Apacht.
IIS Default WebSite port number: 80 Stop IIS default website
Apache Tomcat Server port number: 80
Search Service port number: 81
Installer Cancel
Installer 🛛 🔀
Download and Install Latest Update Packs Download and Install the latest service pack and post pack from the software provider website.
Download latest update pack(s) Make sure you have internet connectivity at this time. This process may take some time depending on download speed.
Installer Cancel Cancel
Installer
Windows Firewall Exclusion List Allow programs to communicate through Windows Firewall
Windows Firewall is DN
I Add programs to the Windows Firewall Exclusion List
If you plan on using Windows Firewall, it is recommended to add the software programs to the exclusion list.
Installer < Back Next > Cancel
Installer
Database Path Location for database files
Database Path Database Path CNProgram FilestMSSDL200BtMSSDL1 Biowse
Drive List Space Required / Recommended

< Back

Next>

Cancel

Installer

16. Click Next.

Administration Guide - Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent

		Installer
		Web Administration Web Administration for Web Search Client
		┌─Virtual Directories for Web Search Client:
		Compliance site: compliancesearch
		End-user site: search
		Admin site: searchadmin
		Installer (Back Next) Cancel
17.	Click Yes .	Installer
		Contraction of the state of the State State State Distribution of the State
		Setup must now stop and restart the World Wilde Web Publishing (W3SVC) service. Setup Type to continue or No to continue without restarting the service.
		 Select res to continue or no to continue without restarting the service.
		If you select No, you must manually stop and restart the World Wide Web Publishing (W3SVC) service when setup completes.
		<u>Yes</u> <u>N</u> o
18.	Click OK .	Installer
		Before starting any software services, this computer will require a reboot after completion
		Before starting any software services, this computer will require a reboot after completion of Setup.
		[<u> 0K </u>]
19.	Click Next.	Installer
		Summary
		Summary Summary of install selections
		Summary of install selections
		Summary of install selections
		Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files.
		Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files.
		Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. Destination Path = C\\Program Files\ CommServe Host = mycomputer.mycompany.com
		Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. Destination Path = C:\Program Files\ CommServe Host = mycomputer mycompary.com Interface Name = audi.mycompary.com
		Summary of instal selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. Destination Path = C\Program Files\ CommServe Host = nycomputer mocompany.com Interface Name = and mycompany.com Cleff = audit of the C\Program Files\UcbResults do heaud Path = C\Program Files\UcbResults
		Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. Destination Path = C\\Program Files\ CommServe Host = nycomputer.mycompary.com Interface Name = aud.mycompary.com Client = audi Job Results Path = C\\Program Files\\DefResults
		Summary of initial selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. Destination Path = C\Program Files\ CommServe Host = mycomputer mycompany.com Dent = raid Job Results Path = C\Program Files\ Biobal Filters = Use Cell level policy
		Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. Destination Path = C-\Program Files\ CommServe Host = nrycomputer.nrycompary.com Interface Name = audi.nrycompary.com Cellent = audi.nrycompary.com Gelent = audi.nrycompary.com Gelent = audi.nrycompary.com Cellent = audi.nrycom Cellent = audi.nry
20.	Click Next.	Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. Destination Path = C\Program Files\ CommServe Host = mycomputer.mycompany.com Interface Name = audi. mycomputer.mycompany.com Interface Name = audi.mycompany.com Interface Audi. Place Audi.mycompany.com Interface Audi. Place Audi.mycompany.com Interface Audi.mycompany.com Interface Audi.mycompany.com Installer
20.	Click Next .	Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. Destination Path = C\Program Files\ CommServe Host = mycomputer.mycompary.com Interface Name = audi.mycompary.com Client = audi.mycompary.com Client = audi.mycompary.com Client = audi.mycompary.com Client = audi.mycompary.com Installer <
20.	Click Next .	Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. Destination Path = C\Program Files\ CommServe Host = mycomputer.mycompany.com Interface Name = audi. mycomputer.mycompany.com Interface Name = audi.mycompany.com Interface Audi. Place Audi.mycompany.com Interface Audi. Place Audi.mycompany.com Interface Audi.mycompany.com Interface Audi.mycompany.com Installer
20.	Click Next .	Summary of initial selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. Destination Path = C-VProgram Files/ CommServe Host = mycomputer mycompany.com Dient = aud Job Result Path = C-VProgram Files/ Elected any company.com Dient = aud Job Result Path = C-VProgram Files/ CommServe Host = mycomputer mycompany.com Dient = aud Job Result Path = C-VProgram Files/ CommServe Host = mycompany.com Dient = aud Job Result Path = C-VProgram Files/ Dient = aud State Path = C-VProgram Files/ Dient = aud Die
20.	Click Next .	Summary of initial selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. Destination Path = C-VProgram Files/ CommServe Host = mycomputer mycompany.com Dient = aud Job Result Path = C-VProgram Files/ Elected any company.com Dient = aud Job Result Path = C-VProgram Files/ CommServe Host = mycomputer mycompany.com Dient = aud Job Result Path = C-VProgram Files/ CommServe Host = mycompany.com Dient = aud Job Result Path = C-VProgram Files/ Dient = aud State Path = C-VProgram Files/ Dient = aud Die
20.	Click Next .	Summary of install selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the install settings, click Next to begin copying files. Destination Path = C:\Program Files\ CommServe Host = mycomputer mycompany.com Interface Name and mycompany.com Interface Name and mycompany.com Interface Seck Next > Cancel Installer Installer Please note: You still need to create a Job Schedule for each DataAgent that has been installed on
20.	Click Next .	Summary of initial selections Setup has enough information to start copping the program files. If you are satisfied with the initial settings, click Next to begin copying files. Destination Path = C\Program Files\ CommServe Host = nyocomputer.nyocompany.com Interface Name = audi. mycomputer.nyocompany.com Client = audi. Global Filters = Use Cell level policy Installer Cancel Installer Installer Please note: Please note: You still need to reate a Job Schedule for each DataAgent that has been installed on the client = audi. Lob Schedules are required to allow the DataAgent to beform automated backup
20.	Click Next .	Summary of initial selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the instal settings, click Next to begin copying files. Destination Path = C\Program Files\ CommServe Host = nycomputer nycompany.com Intellace Name and mycompany.com Installer Installer Schedule Reminder Job Schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Schedule for each DataAgent that has been installed on this client computer. Job Schedule creation can be accomplished through the CommCel Conrole
20.	Click Next .	Summary of initial selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the initial settings, click Next to begin copying files. Destination Path = C.VProgram Files\ CommServe Host = nyccomputer nyccompany.com Interface Name = audi.nyccompany.com Client =
20.	Click Next .	Summary of initial selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the instal settings, click Next to begin copying files. Destination Path = C\Program Files\ CommServe Host = nycomputer nycompany.com Intellace Name and mycompany.com Installer Installer Schedule Reminder Job Schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Schedule for each DataAgent that has been installed on this client computer. Job Schedule creation can be accomplished through the CommCel Conrole
20.	Click Next .	Summary of initial selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the initial settings, click Next to begin copying files. Destination Path = C:\Program Files\ CommServe Host = nycomputer nycompany.com Tetral ace Name = audi. mycompany.com Client = audi. Usb Results Path = C:\Program Files\Usb Results Global Files = Use Cell level policy Installer Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: Please note: Vou still need to create a Job Schedule for each DataAgent that has been installed on this client computer. Job Schedule reation reminder Job Schedule reation can be accomplished through the CommCell Console administration interface.
20.	Click Next .	Summary of initial selections Setup has enough information to start copying the program files. If you are satisfied with the initial settings, click Next to begin copying thes. Destination Path = C\Program Files\ CommServe Host = nycomputer nycompany.com Interface Name = aud.nycompany.com Interface Name = aud.nycompany.com Interface Name = aud.nycompany.com Installer Cancel Installer Schedule Reminder Job schedule creation reminder Please note: You still need to create a Job Schedule for each DataAgent that has been installed on this client computer. Job Schedule creation reminder Job Schedule creation can be accomplished through the CommCell Console

21. Click **Reboot** to finish the installation.

X

a reboot after completion

×

~

Next >

essfullo		
m:81/SearchSvc		
m-80/cearch		
m:80/searchadmin		
	cuired that you reboot this	
		-
		_
	essfully. m:81/SearchSvc m:80/search m:80/searchadmin m:80/searchadmin m:80/searchadmin m:80/searchadmin m:80/searchadmin ore starting any service, it is re	m:81/SearchSvc m:80/search m:80/search

Desktop Browse - Exchange Public Folder Archiver Agent (Administrator)

Install Setup

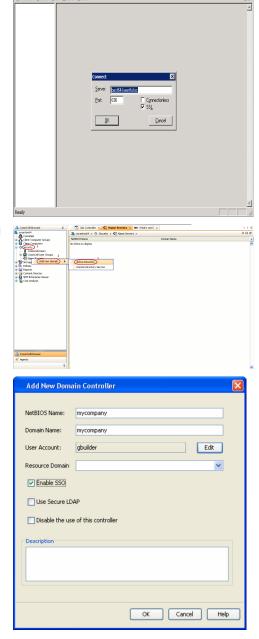
< Previous Next >

Once the Web Search Server and Web Search Client are installed, perform the following configurations:

SETTING UP PERMISSIONS FOR COMPLIANCE USERS

- 1. Obtain the domain name and fully qualified domain name of the Active Directory server.
- 2. Ensure that LDAP is configured on the AD server:
 - From the Active Directory Server, select Start | Run.
 - Type Idp on the Run dialog box and click OK.
 - Click the Connections menu option, and select Connect.
 - From the **Connect** dialog box, enter the following information:
 - Server: Enter the name of the external domain server, e.g., computer.domain.com.
 - Port: Enter 636 as the port number for the external domain server.
 - o SSL: Mark this checkbox to check for the proper certificate.
 - Click OK. If properly configured for LDAP, the external domain server details will be displayed in the LDP windowpane. If not configured for use with LDAP, an error message will appear indicating that a connection cannot be made using this feature.
- From the CommCell Browser, expand the Security node, right-click Name Servers | Add New Domain and click Active Directory.

- 4. Enter the domain name in NetBIOS Name text box, e.g., mydomain.
 - Enter the Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN), e.g., mydomain.mycompany.com in the Domain Name text box.



- Click Edit to enter the user account information for the domain.
 - Type Username and Password in Enter User Account Information.
 - Click OK.

5.

Add New Domai	n Controller 🛛 🔀
NetBIOS Name: Domain Name: User Account: User Name: User Name: Password: Onfirm Pas	er Account Information
	OK Cancel Help
Add New Domai	n Controller 🛛 🕅
NetBIOS Name:	
Domain Name:	
User Account:	Edit
Pecource Domain	

Enable SSO
 Use Secure LDAP
 Disable the use of this controller

Description

- Select Use Secure LDAP to enable the secure Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) with the external domain.
- Click **OK**.

- **7.** Once you have registered the Domain Controller, restart the IIS services on the Web Search Server.
 - From your CommServe computer, click the Start button on the Windows task bar and then click Administrative Tools.
 - Click Services.

6.

- In the Services window, select and right-click IIS Admin Service and click Restart.
- Restart Other Services dialog will be displayed, click Yes.
- 8. From the CommCell Browser, expand the Security node, right-click CommCell User Groups and select New User Group.

ConvoCel Browner		🔨 🎬 CommCell User Groups 🗵			Constructed User Groups 🛛 🖗
scrantoné4 🔏 Committet	🚴 scrankonéri > 😗	Security > 🌇 ConiniCel User Groups	,	000	
Clerk Computer Groups	User Group	Description	Enabled	¥	New User Group
Cleat Computers	Contraction (Contraction)	Administrative Group	2	0	
Security	A View All	Members of this group can s	ee al C 🗹		
ConniCel Users	2				
Connected Litter Grams					
Tites Al					
Mame Servers					
Storage Resources					
Policies					
a Reports					
Content Deector					
Cost Analysis					
Con sensitive					
CommCell Browser					
Agents					
	2				
				~	

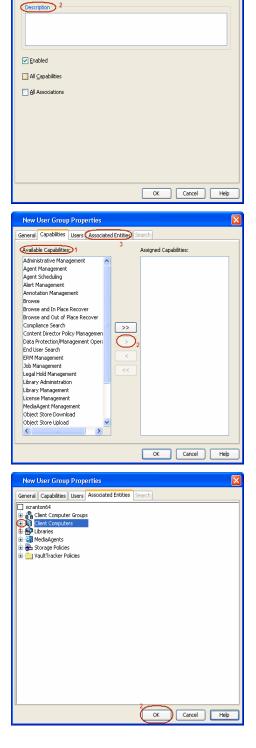
Cancel Help

OK

- 9. Type the user group name in **Name** text box.
 - Type a description on the user group in **Description** box.
 - Click Capabilities tab.

- **10.** Press **Ctrl** key and select the following capabilities:
 - o Browse
 - o Compliance Search
 - Legal Hold Management
 - Annotation Management
 - Tag Management
 - ERM Management
 - Click > to move the selected capabilities to the **Assigned Capabilities** list box.
 - Click Associated Entities tab.

- **11.** Expand **Client Computers** node and select the client computers to be browsed.
 - Click OK.



New User Group Properties

Name: 1

General Capabilities Users Associated Entities Search

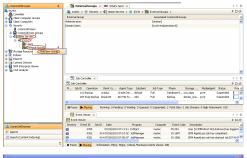
- 12. Ensure that the specific external user group in which the user belongs has Group Scope defined as Globalon the Active Directory Domain:
 - Navigate to Start | Administrative Tools | Active Directory Users and Computers.
 - Right-click the external group and select **Properties**.
 - Select Group from Group Scope and click OK.

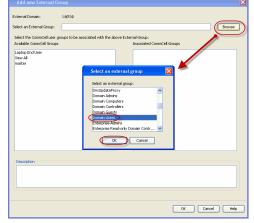
13. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to Security | Name Server |<Domain Name>, right-click External Groups and select Add New Group.

- Click Browse.
 - Select the **<external user group name>** in which the user belongs.

- **15.** Select the **CommCell User Group** to associate with the specified external user group.
 - Click OK.







Add new Externa	l Group	Þ
External Domain:	EXCH	
Select an External Group	group1 Bro	owse
Select the CommCell us	er groups to be associated with the above Externa	
<u>Available</u> CommCell Gro	ups <u>A</u> ssociated CommCell Groups	
Global Domino Enduser View All	Group	
exch-endusersearch master		
1	2	
Description		
	3	
	OK Cancel	Help
ford - CommCell Console File View Tools Windows	8	
2 💀 🖪 🗞 🖽	2	
	₩ ₩	
Grid Cart Computer Groups Gent Computer Groups Gent Computers Got Binnucn Got Grad cn Got File Syste Got File Syste Got Grad Syste		
Glent Computer Groups Glent Computers		
Br bmw_cn Br ford_cn		
All Tas	ks 🔸	
E _ Security View	•	
Storage Resource Proper Policies	ties	
Reports		
 Content Director SRM Enterprise Viewer 		
🗈 🚺 Cost Analysis 🗈 📲 Workflows		
e que montritions		
🛕 CommCell Browser		
🔗 Agents		
	» •	
1 object(s)	ford_cn admin	
Client Computer Propert	ies	
		Job Configura
	Activity Control Groups Firewall Configuration Policies : the Indexing Search Server UPLs Registry Key Settings Client S	Side Deduplica
	http://search3.dm3.company.com:82/compliancesearch	
	http://search3.dm3.company.com:82/search	
	http://search3.dm3.company.com:82/searchadmin	
	http://search3.dm3.company.com:81/SearchSvc	
Web Server Name: se	earch3.dm3.company.com	
	OK Cance	N He

16. From the CommCell Browser, right-click to **<Client Computer>** on which Web Search Server is installed and click **Properties**.

17. Click Search Server URLs tab.

Make a note of $\mbox{End}\ \mbox{User}\ \mbox{Url}$ to provide the URL to the user to browse and recover the data.

ENABLING SECURED ACCESS FOR WEB SEARCH CLIENT

Use the following steps to enable secured access on the Web search client. This will allow you to access the Web Console using https instead of http.

INSTALL JAVA WITH ALL THE UPDATES

- 1. Stop the Tomcat services
- 2. If UAC is enabled, disable it.
- 3. Download and install the latest version of JAVA with all the updates on the Web client computer.
- 4. Open the command prompt window on the Web client computer, and execute the following command to verify if JAVA has been properly installed on the Web client computer:

C:\java -version

If you find that JAVA with the latest updates has not been installed, uninstall JAVA that you have installed and reinstall it again with all the updates.

Navigate to the command prompt on the Web client computer, and run the command specified in step 4 to verify if JAVA has been installed successfully. Skip this step if the updates are installed successfully.

- 5. Start Tomcat services. If the Tomcat fails to start, point the JVM manually to Tomcat using the following steps:
 - O Open the command prompt window on the Web client computer, navigate to <PRODUCT_INSTALL_PATH>\Apache\bin folder and execute the following command:

C:\<PRODUCT INSTALL PATH>\Apache\bin>tomcat6w.exe //ES//GxTomcatInstance001

where, Instance001 is the instance installed on the WebClient computer.

- On the Tomcat Services Instance properties dialog box, click the Java tab, and clear the Use default check box.
- Restart Tomcat services

CONFIGURE SSL ON THE TOMCAT SERVER

Use the following steps for configuring SSL (Secure Socket layer) on the Tomcat Server:

1. Navigate to command prompt and run the following command:

C:\Program Files\Java\jre6\bin>keytool -genkey -alias cvtomcat -keyalg RSA -keystore "C:\Program Files\company\product\Apache\cert\keystore"

- 2. Backup the server.xml file located in <product_install_path>\Apache\conf before making any changes to it.
- 3. In order to setup a JAVA JSSE connector to support SSL, search for the following entry in the server.xml:

<Listener className="org.apache.catalina.core.AprLifecycleListener" SSLEngine="on" />

Modify the above entry as following:

<Listener className="org.apache.catalina.core.AprLifecycleListener" SSLEngine="off" />

4. Add the following entry to the server.xml file:

<Connector port="443" protocol="org.apache.coyote.http11.Http11NioProtocol" SSLEnabled="true" maxThreads="150" scheme="https" secure="true" clientAuth="false" keystoreFile="C:/Program Files/CommVault/Simpana/Apache/cert/keystore" keystorePass="mnoettomcat" sslProtocol="TLS" />

5. Save the server.xml file, and restart the Tomcat services.

< Previous Next >>

Desktop Browse - Exchange Public Folder Archiver Agent (User)

Getting Started Restore Advanced Options



Desktop Browse enables compliance users to browse and restore data using a web browser from any remote location without the need for installing the software.

LOGGING TO WEB CONSOLE

1. Open the supported Web Browser and type the Web Console URL in the address line. For example, http://amber.domain.company.com/<web_alias_name>

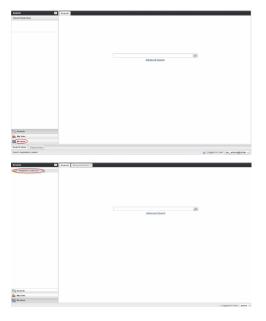
C Blank Page - Windows Internet Explorer			
() (http://amber.domain.company.com/compliancesearch			
File Edit View Favorites Tools Help			
🚖 Favorites 🏾 🎉 Blank Page			

- Type the login credentials to access the Web Console.
 - Click Login.



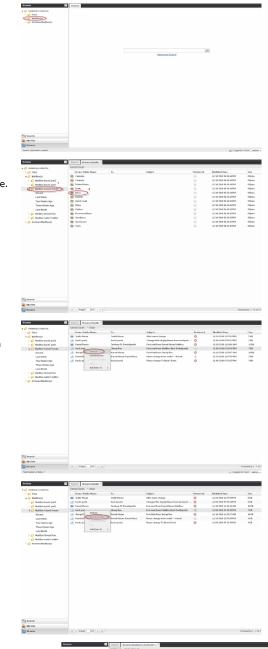
BROWSING AND RESTORING DATA

1. From the Web Console, click **Browse** on the left pane.



2. Double-click the **<CommServe computer name>**.

3. Double-click <Archived MailBoxes>



- 4. Click the <Mailbox name>.
 - Double-click the Mailbox item from which you want to restore from the right pane.

Right-click the item to be restored, and select **Restore**.
 The item is copied to the **MyReviewSe**t folder under **MySets** | **ReviewSet** node in the Web Console.

7. Right-click the item and select **Download Item**.

- 8.
- Click Save from the File Download dialog.
- Specify the location where the file needs to be downloaded in the Web Browser's download dialog box.
- Click Save.



Desktop Browse - Exchange Public Folder Archiver Agent (User)

Getting Started

Advanced Options



TABLE OF CONTENTS

Restore

Restoring Data From a Specific Time Range Finding Emails with a Specific Subject name Finding Emails From a Specific User Finding Emails To a Specific User Finding Emails with the Received time range

RESTORING DATA FROM A SPECIFIC TIME RANGE

You can also browse and restore data that was backed up some time earlier or within a specific time range.

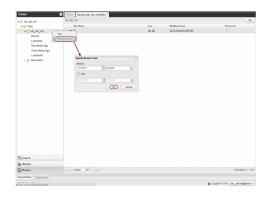
- 1. From the Web Console, click **Browse** on the left pane.
- 2. Double-click the **<CommServe computer name>**.
- 3. Double-click Archived MailBoxes.
- Double-click the specific <mailbox name> and select one of the following options:
 Recent
 - Last Week
 - Two Weeks Ago
 - Three Weeks Ago
 - Last Month
- 5. Right-click the **<mailbox>** and select **Browse By Time**.
- 6. Select the time range in the **Before** drop down boxes.
- 7. Click **After** and specify the time range.
- 8. Click OK.
- 9. Navigate to the mailbox item to be restored on the right pane.
- Right-click the item and select **Restore.** The mailbox item is copied to the MyReviewSet folder under MySets | ReviewSet node in the Web Console.
- 11. Right-click the item and select Download Item.
- 12. Click Save from the File Download dialog.
- 13. Specify the location where the mailbox item needs to be downloaded in the Web Browser's download dialog box , and click **Save**.

FINDING EMAILS WITH A SPECIFIC SUBJECT NAME

You can use **Find** option to search and locate emails with a specific **Subject** name.

Follow the steps given below to find and locate Mailbox items with a specific $\ensuremath{\textbf{Subject}}$ name.

- 1. From the Web Console, click **Browse** on the left pane.
- 2. Double-click the <CommServe computer name>.
- 3. Double-click Archived MailBoxes.
- 4. Right-click the **<Mailbox name>** and select **Find**.
- 5. Type the Subject details of the email.
- 6. Click OK.



d options in folder \setminus	
Email	
Subject	
From	
То	
Received Time	
Any	×

FINDING EMAILS FROM A SPECIFIC USER

You can use **Find** option to find and locate emails from a specific user.

Follow the steps given below to find and locate emails from a specific user..

- 1. From the Web Console, click **Browse** on the left pane.
- 2. Double-click the **<CommServe computer name>**.
- 3. Double-click Archived MailBoxes.
- 4. Right-click the **<Mailbox name>** and select **Find**.
- 5. Type the **From** details of the Email.
- 6. Click **OK**.

ind options in folder \setminus	×
Email	
Subject	
From	
То	
Received Time	
Any	¥
	Ok Cancel

FINDING EMAILS TO A SPECIFIC USER

You can use **Find** option to find and locate emails to a specific user.

Follow the steps given below to find and locate emails to a specific user.

- 1. From the Web Console, click **Browse** on the left pane.
- 2. Double-click the **<CommServe computer name>**.
- 3. Double-click Archived MailBoxes.
- 4. Right-click the **<Mailbox name>** and select **Find**.
- 5. Type the **To** details of the Mailbox item.
- 6. Click **OK**.

ind options in folder \setminus	×
Email	
Subject	
From	
То	
Received Time	
Any	v
	Ok Cancel

FINDING EMAILS WITH THE RECEIVED TIME RANGE

You can find and locate an email based on the received time range (such as Today, Yesterday, etc).

Follow the steps given below to find and locate Mailbox items based on the $\ensuremath{\textbf{Received}}$ $\ensuremath{\textbf{Time.}}$

- 1. From the Web Console, click **Browse** on the left pane.
- 2. Double-click the **<CommServe computer name>**.
- 3. Double-click Archived MailBoxes.
- 4. Right-click the **<Mailbox name>** and select **Find**.
- 5. Select Received Time from drop-down menu.
- 6. Click **OK**.

ind options in folder \setminus	X
Email	
Subject	
From	
То	
Received Time	

Administration Guide - Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent

Previous Next >

Desktop Browse - Exchange Public Folder Archiver Agent (User)

Getting Started

Advanced Options

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Restore

Retaining an Email for Long Term Moving an Email to a Records Management Site Adding Comments to an Email Adding Review Tags to an Email Grouping Emails by Sender Filtering Emails by Sender Downloading an Email Downloading Multiple Emails Saving an Email Properties Sharing Emails to Other Users Sharing Browse Results to Other Users

RETAINING AN EMAIL FOR LONG TERM

Compliance users can retain a specific mail for a longer term by moving them to a Legal Hold container.

- 1. From the Web Console, click **MySets** on the left pane.
- 2. Double-click Review Set and click the <Review Set Name>.
- 3. Right-click the mail, navigate to Add Item To | Legal Holds and select <Legal Hold Name>.

My Sets	G Search	Mythesiesdiet. ¹⁰						
😂 Review Sel								Stow At - Options -
Sevended MyReviewSet		Table	Excation	Size	Modified Time	Tagtil	Retrieved Hold	Record Center
 Lagat Hold Goard Stat Down Hold Down Hold Down Hold Trajield Trajield Mer connectors Juin Status 		 Institution And a first maximum of first in 	Cridgeneticit alla Copert fin Soleta i Toda Mari		IA 29/2964 40,344 - IA 29/2964 40,834 - IA 29/2964 40,834 - Enclass Sat Logarison 9 Coaste 1	ngaksig	,	• B
	File Name File Path Clert Name Betrieved	teanolution						

MOVING AN EMAIL TO A RECORDS MANAGEMENT SITE Compliance users can move mails to a Records Management Site (eg., Microsoft

- 1. From the Web Console, click **MySets** on the left pane.
- 2. Double-click Review Set and click the <Review Set Name>.
- 3. Right-click the mail, and select Submit To ERM.

SharePoint Site) using an ERM Connector.

- Click ERM Connector Name drop-down box and select the <ERM Connector name>.
- 5. Click **OK**.

ADDING COMMENTS TO AN EMAIL

- 1. From the Web Console, click **MySets** on the left pane.
- 2. Double-click Review Set and click the <Review Set Name>.
- 3. Right-click the mail and select Comment.
- 4. Type the statement for comments and click **Comment**.
- 5. Click **Close** to exit the Comment window.





ADDING REVIEW TAGS TO AN EMAIL

Compliance users can apply review tags to a mail to facilitate easy search based on tags at a later point of time.

- 1. From the Web Console, click **MySets** on the left pane.
- 2. Double-click Review Set and click the <Review Set Name>.
- 3. Right-click the mail and select Manage Tag.
- 4. On the Manage Tag(s) window, select the tag to apply.
- 5. Click Apply Tags.

GROUPING EMAILS BY SENDER

- 1. From the Web Browser, click My Sets on the left pane.
- Double-click Review Set, and then click the desired <Review Set Name>/<Legal Hold Set Name>.
- 3. On the Group By menu, click Sender.

FILTERING EMAILS BY SENDER

- 1. From the Web Browser, click My Sets on the left pane.
- Double-click Review Set, and then click the desired <Review Set Name>/<Legal Hold Set Name>.
- 3. On the Filter menu, click Sender.
- 4. On the right pane, select the name of the sender.
- 5. Click Apply.

You can click the **Clear** button on the right pane to clear all the selected senders. To clear a specific selected sender, click the cross-mark symbol corresponding to the selected sender on the right pane.

DOWNLOADING AN EMAIL

- 1. From the Web Console, click **MySets** on the left pane.
- 2. Double-click Review Set and click the <Review Set Name>.
- 3. Right-click the mail and select **Download Item**.
- 4. Specify the location where the mail needs to be downloaded in the Web Browser's download dialog box.

DOWNLOADING MULTIPLE EMAILS

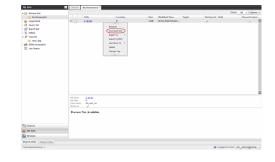
In order to download multiple mails, you can export the selected mails/folder to a compressed file format (CAB format) and then download the CAB file to your computer.

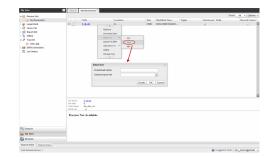
- 1. From the Web Console, click **MySets** on the left pane.
- 2. Double-click Review Set and click the <Review Set Name>.
- 3. Right-click the mail and select **Export To** | **CAB**.
- 4. Specify the Download Name.
- 5. Select the Select Export Set.
- 6. Click **OK**. The selected mail(s) are moved to the selected **Export Set** with the given name.
- 7. Click MySets | Export Set.











- 8. Click the Export Set which contains the CAB file.
- 9. Right-click the CAB file and select **Download**.
- 10. Click Save from the File Download dialog box.
- 11. Navigate to the location where you want to download the file.
- 12. Click OK.

SAVING AN EMAIL PROPERTIES

You can save the properties of all the mails in a review set as an XML file to your local computer.

- 1. From the Web Console, click **MySets** on the left pane.
- 2. Double-click Review Set.
- 3. Right-click the <Review Set Name> and select Save to XML.
- 4. Click Save from the File Download dialog.
- 5. Navigate to the location where you want to save the file.
- 6. Click **OK**.

SHARING EMAILS TO OTHER USERS

You can share and assign access permissions to all the mails in your Review Set folder to selected users.

- 1. From the Web Console, click **MySets** on the left pane.
- 2. Double-click Review Set and click the <Review Set Name>.
- 3. Right-click the review set and select **Share**.
- 4. Click Add.
- 5. Select the user/user groups from the Select User or Group window.
- 6. Click OK.
- 7. Select **Allow** check box to assign the respective privileges.
- 8. Click **OK**.

SHARING BROWSE RESULTS TO OTHER USERS

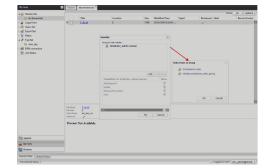
When browsing data, you can share the browse results with other users.

- 1. From the Web Console, click **Browse**.
- 2. Navigate to the Mailbox to be browsed.
- 3. Copy the URL of the browse result page from the browser's address bar and email to other users.

When the recipient users open the URL, they can directly view the browse result page as soon as they login to the Web Console.







Frequently Asked Questions - Exchange Public Folder Archiver Agent

WILL MY PUBLIC FOLDER MESSAGES OPEN AUTOMATICALLY AFTER A RECALL?

No. The recalled Public Folder messages will not open automatically after a recall. To view the recalled messages, they have to be manually opened.

CAN I RECALL MY MESSAGES IF THE EXCHANGE SERVER VERSION HOSTING THE PUBLIC FOLDER DATABASE AND THE CAS SERVER VERSION FROM WHERE THE OWA IS LAUNCHED ARE NOT SAME?

Recalls from OWA will not work if the Exchange Server version hosting the Public Folder database and the CAS server version from where the OWA is launched are not same.

HOW DO I FIX MAPI ISSUES?

If you experience MAPI issues, you should first do the following:

- Check the following:
 - The Exchange Services are running.
 - The databases are mounted.
 - Check the Windows Application Event logs on the Exchange Server for any errors.
 - For Exchange 2010, check the logs located in <Exchange Install Path>\v14\Logging\RPC Client Access) for any errors.
 - $\,\circ\,$ For Exchange 2010, the throttling policy is set:

Click Start, All Programs, and then click Microsoft Exchange Server 2010.

Click Exchange Management Shell.

Type the following commands:

- 1. New-ThrottlingPolicy -name "cvthrottlingpolicy"
- 2. Set-ThrottlingPolicy -identity <service account> -RCAMaxConcurrency \$null
- 3. Set-Mailbox -Identity <service account> -ThrottlingPolicy "cvthrottlingpolicy"

Where:

<service account> is the Exchange Administrator Service Account

- If you are unable to open an existing Outlook profile, create a new profile.
- If you get a MAPI_E_FAIL_ON_PROVIDER (8004011d) error while running a backup, check if the Outlook profile is in the Cache Mode. See Troubleshoot - Exchange Mailbox *i*DataAgent Backup - MAPI E FAIL ON PROVIDER (8004011d) for more details.
- If Multiple backup jobs running in parallel are failing with profile errors, create CreateProcessSpecificProfile key. See Troubleshoot - Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent Backup - Multiple Jobs Failing with Profile Errors for more details.
- To fix Service Account permission issues use ADSIEDIT for Exchange 2007 and set extended rights to **Receive As** for Exchange 2010. See Troubleshoot - Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent Backup - Service Account Permission Issues for more details.
- For Outlook, if automatic profile creation is failing, make the service account name unique for the auto discovery process. See Troubleshoot - Exchange Mailbox *i*DataAgent Backup - Automatic Profile Creation is Failing for more details.
- If you get MAPI_E_NETWORK_ERROR, for Exchange 2010 ensure there is connectivity to the Client Access Role Server. In case of Exchange 2007, ensure connectivity to Mailbox Role Server.
- In case you get the Cannot Open Folder for Mailbox "username" Error:MAPI_E_NOT_FOUND (0x8004010f) error message, verify that the extended rights on the service account have Receive As set on all database on the Exchange Server.

See Troubleshoot - Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent Backup - Error:MAPI_E_NOT_FOUND(0x8004010f) for more details.

In case you get the Could Not Open the Exchange Private Message Store with Profile ExchAdm (E_FAIL (0x80004005)) error message, verify
that the extended rights on the service account have Receive As set on all database on the Exchange Server.

See Troubleshoot - Exchange Mailbox *i*DataAgent Backup - Could Not Open the Exchange Private Message Store with Profile ExchAdm (E_FAIL (0x80004005)) for more details.

• In case you get the ERROR CODE [28:153]: The Mailbox Profile Used by this Product is Invalid error message, verify that the extended rights on the service account have Receive As set on all database on the Exchange Server.

See Troubleshoot - Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent Backup - ERROR CODE [28:153] for more details.

• You may get a MAPI CDO error during installation because MAPI CDO is not compatible with any version of Microsoft Outlook or Microsoft Exchange Server 2003 or earlier. It is recommended to uninstall MAPI CDO and install MAPI.

See Troubleshoot - Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent Backup - Error During Installation of MAPI CDO on Exchange 2003 for more details.

• If the backup process hangs during enabling/disabling of MAPI, create a new profile with Enable Referral option selected.

See Troubleshoot - Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent Backup - Process Hangs While Enabling/Disabling MAPI for more details.

• The process of profile creation may fail if the service account name is not unique. Also in case of Exchange Server 2010, verify that the Exchange Server name specified in agent properties has the Client Access Role installed.

See Troubleshoot - Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent Backup - Unable to Log on to Microsoft Information Store/Profile Creation is Failing for more details.

• If the backup process hangs up with extask.cpp:HrInitialize(1342) Initializing MAPI subsystem error message, uninstall MAPI CDO and install MAPI. See Troubleshoot - Exchange Mailbox *i*DataAgent Backup - extask.cpp:HrInitialize(1342) Initializing MAPI subsystem error for more details.

HOW DO I ASSIGN FULL ACCESS TO ALL MAILBOXES ON A SERVER

FOR EXCHANGE SERVER 2010

- Ensure that the service account is a member of Organization Management group.
- Ensure that the mail-enabled user is a member of the Local Administrator Group and have rights to all mailboxes on the server.

To assign full access follow the steps given below:

- Using ADSIEDIT navigate to Configuration | Services | Microsoft Exchange.
- Right-click your organization name, click Properties | Securities and click the Advanced tab.
- Click Edit to modify the permissions set for Organization Management group.
- Click to select Full Control, Receive As and Send As permissions and wait for replication.
- Click the Effective Permission tab and Select the name of the backup account.
- The backup account should display the following as selected:

Full Control

All Extended Rights

Send As

Receive As

• Start the PowerShell and type the following to add the backup account so it has full control over all the databases:

Get-MailboxDatabase -server (server name) | Add-ADPermission -user "backup account" -ExtendedRights Receive-As

Run the above PowerShell every time a new database is added.

 Navigate to the Exchange Management Console, right-click the <mailbox> and click Manage Full Access Permissions to view the mailbox listed under Full Access Permissions.

FOR EXCHANGE SERVER 2007

- Service account should be a member of Exchange Organization Administrators group.
- Ensure that the mail-enabled user is a member of the Local Administrator Group and have rights to all mailboxes on the server.

FOR EXCHANGE SERVER 2003

- The mail-enabled user is a member of the Local Administrator Group and have rights to all mailboxes on the server.
- Using the Exchange System Manager snap-in, right-click the organization object and delegate control.
- Using the Wizard, assign the MailboxAdmin user Exchange Full Administrator privileges.

Troubleshooting - Exchange Public Folder Archiver Agent

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Unable to Select Offline Archiving Backup Process Hangs in a Pending State Multiple Jobs are Failing with Profile Errors Automatic Profile Creation is Failing Unable to Log on to Microsoft Information Store/Profile Creation is Failing Process Hangs While Enabling/Disabling MAPI Error During the Installation of MAPI CDO on Exchange 2003 Microsoft MAPI Version Error Error Message: MAPI_E_FAIL_ON_PROVIDER (8004011d) Error Message: extask.cpp:HrInitialize(1342) Initializing MAPI Subsystem Error Message: MAPI_E_NETWORK_ERROR Error Message: Cannot Open Folder for Mailbox "username" Error:MAPI_E_NOT_FOUND (0x8004010f) Error Message: Could Not Open the Exchange Private Message Store with Profile ExchAdm (E_FAIL (0x80004005)) Error Message: ERROR CODE [28:153]

UNABLE TO SELECT OFFLINE ARCHIVING

PROBLEM

While setting properties, the option to select Offline Archiving is not available.

SOLUTION

If you are unable to select Offline Archive, verify if the DisablePST key is enabled. In case it is enabled follow the procedure given in KB article 258277: Disabling the AutoArchive and Personal Folder File Features.

BACKUP PROCESS HANGS IN A PENDING STATE

PROBLEM

The backup processes may hang up in pending state because of incorrect permissions set at the service account level.

SOLUTION

To fix service account permission issues ensure the following:

- Service account is the local administrator on the client where the backups are run.
- Service account should be a member of Exchange Organization Administrators group for Exchange 2007 or Organization management group for Exchange 2010.

Follow the steps given below for fixing permission issues on Exchange 2010:

- 1. Using ADSIEDIT navigate to Configuration | Services | Microsoft Exchange.
- 2. Right-click your organization name, click Properties | Securities and click the Advanced tab.
- 3. Ensure that Organization Management group does not have "Receive As" or "Send As" access set to Deny.

Follow the steps given below for fixing permission issues on Exchange 2010 server:

- 1. On the Exchange 2010 server, open the command prompt.
- 2. Type get-mailboxDatabase | add-adpermission -user <service account> -ExtendedRights Receive-As.

MULTIPLE JOBS ARE FAILING WITH PROFILE ERRORS

PROBLEM

Multiple jobs will fail with profile errors when there is one profile for more than one job.

SOLUTION

Enable the following registry key to create job specific profiles:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to **Client Computers**.
- 2. Right-click the <*Client*> in which you want to add the registry key, and then click **Properties**.
- 3. Click the Registry Key Settings tab.
- 4. Click Add.
- 5. Enter CreateProcessSpecificProfile in the Name field.
- 6. Enter MSExchangeMBAgent in the Location filed.
- 7. Enter REG_DWORD in the **Type** filed.
- 8. Enter 1 to enable and 0 to disable the key in the Value field.
- 9. Click OK.
- 10. From the CommCell Console, navigate to <Client> | Exchange Mailbox |defaultBackupSet.
- 11. Right click the subclient and click **Backup**.
- 12. Select **Full** as backup type and **Immediate** to run the job immediately.
- 13. Click **OK**.

You can track the progress of the job from the Job Controller or Event Viewer window.

AUTOMATIC PROFILE CREATION IS FAILING

PROBLEM

Automatic profile creation process is failing as the service account name is not unique and have similar starting series.

SOLUTION

It is recommended to make the service account name unique for the process of auto discovery. It should not have similar starting series as any other account. Follow the steps given below to verify this manually:

- 1. Use Manual Profile Creation to create a new profile.
- 2. Enter the service account name and click Check Name.
- 3. If many names are displayed, it is recommended to change the service account name.

UNABLE TO LOG ON TO MICROSOFT INFORMATION STORE/PROFILE CREATION IS FAILING

PROBLEM

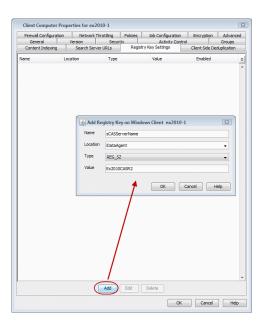
For Exchange Server 2010 you will not be able to log on to Microsoft Information Store and profile creation may also fail, if there is a mismatch in the Exchange Server name and the Exchange Server name specified in the agent properties that has the Client Access Role installed.

SOLUTION

For Exchange Server 2010 verify that the Exchange Server name specified in agent properties has the Client Access Role installed. In case the Exchange Server does not have the Client Access Role specified follow the steps given below to point to another server with client access role installed on it:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, right-click the client computer that has Exchange Mailbox *i*DataAgent installed.
- 2. Click Properties.
- 3. Select Registry Key Settings tab.
- 4. Click Add.
- 5. Enter ${\tt sCASServerName}$ in the Name field.
- 6. From the Location list, select iDataAgent.
- 7. From the **Type** list, select REG_SZ.
- 8. Enter a CAS server name (e.g., Ex2010CASR2) in the Value field. The CAS server is used to create the profile.

9. Click OK.



PROCESS HANGS WHILE ENABLING/DISABLING MAPI

PROBLEM

Process hangs while enabling/disabling MAPI because the Exchange client is unable to connect Twith the Global catalogue.

SOLUTION 1.

Create a new profile using Enable Referral Option by following one of the options mentioned below:

Open the command prompt.

Type C:\>gcreconnect.

Usage: GCReconnect [-?] -m mailbox -s server [-e] [-x] [-n name] [-1] [-r] [-w]

Options:

- -m mailbox Specifies the mailbox to log on to.
- -s server Specifies the Exchange server where the mailbox resides.
- -e Enable referral and reconnect If referral and reconnect are not enabled, MAPI will connect directly to the Exchange server for name lookup
- -x Enable additional referral and reconnect settings for Exchange 2007 Implies-e
- -n name Specifies a name to resolve with ResolveName If not specified, QueryIdentity will be used instead
- -I Loop over MAPILogonEx. Will log on and off repeatedly until key is hit
- -r Loop over ResolveName. Will log on once and do name lookup repeatedly until key is hit Requires -n, not valid with -I
- -w Wait for keyboard input before and after creating and configuring profile

-? Displays this usage information.

SOLUTION 2

Delete the existing profile and follow the steps given below:

- 1. From the CommCell Browser, navigate to **Client Computers**.
- 2. Right-click the <*Client*> in which you want to add the registry key, and then click **Properties**.
- 3. Click the **Registry Key Settings** tab.
- 4. Click Add.
- 5. Enter enableReferral in the Name field.
- 6. Enter MSExchangeMBAgent in the Location filed.
- 7. Enter REG_DWORD in the **Type** filed.

- 8. Enter 1 in the **Value** field.
- 9. Click **OK**.

ERROR DURING THE INSTALLATION OF MAPI CDO ON EXCHANGE 2003

PROBLEM

If you try to install MAPI CDO on Exchange 2003, you may encounter error messages during installation. This is due to lack of compatibility between MAPI CDO and Microsoft Exchange Server 2003.

SOLUTION

It is recommended to uninstall MAPI CDO and install MAPI by following the steps given below:

On Exchange Server:

- 1. Navigate to the system32 folder.
- 2. Run FixMapi.
- 3. Uninstall old mapicdo.
- 4. Reboot the computer.
- 5. Verify the presence of mapi32.dll and msmapi32.dll and rename them.

PROBLEM

On the Proxy Computer that has Outlook installed, in case there are any MAPI issues, follow the steps given below:

- 1. Uninstall old mapicdo if any.
- 2. Reboot the computer.
- 3. Install Outlook.
- 4. Navigate to the system32 or the syswow64 folder.
- 5. Run FixMapi.
- 6. Reboot the computer.

MICROSOFT MAPI VERSION ERROR

PROBLEM

During Outlook installation, you might encounter a MAPI version error. This is because two MAPI versions cannot coexist.

SOLUTION

The MAPI version error may occur if you have a 32-Bit Outlook version and you are trying to install a 64-Bit Outlook version. This is because the 64-Bit MAPI and 32-bit MAPI cannot coexist on the same computer. It is recommended to uninstall one of the outlook versions.

ERROR MESSAGE: MAPI_E_FAIL_ON_PROVIDER (8004011D)

PROBLEM

You will get this error message if the Outlook profile is in the **Cache** mode.

SOLUTION

- 1. On the client computer, open the ${\bf Control\ Panel}$ and click the ${\bf Mail}$ icon.
- 2. Open the <**Profile**>, click the email account and select the related <**Account**>.
- 3. Click Change.
- 4. Verify that the Use Cached Exchange Mode box is unchecked.

ERROR MESSAGE: EXTASK.CPP:HRINITIALIZE(1342) INITIALIZING MAPI SUBSYSTEM

PROBLEM

You will get this error message when a backup process hangs due to the MAPI CDO conflict.

SOLUTION 1.

1. On the client computer navigate to the following files:

Mapi32.dll

msmapi32.dll

emsmdb32.dll

- 2. Right-click the above mentioned files, click **Properties** and click the **Details** tab.
- 3. Click the Version tab and verify that all the files point to Outlook.

SOLUTION 2.

On the Proxy Computer:

- 1. Uninstall old mapicdo.
- 2. Reboot the computer.
- 3. Install Outlook.
- 4. Navigate to the system32 or the syswow64 folder.
- 5. Run FixMapi.
- 6. Reboot the computer.

Note that running **FixMapi** will solve the above mentioned error on the proxy computer.

On Exchange Server:

- 1. Uninstall old mapicdo.
- 2. Reboot the computer.
- 3. Verify the presence of mapi32.dll and msmapi32.dll and rename them.
- 4. Install Outlook.

ERROR MESSAGE: MAPI_E_NETWORK_ERROR

PROBLEM

You will get this error message when there is no connectivity with Client Access Role server for Exchange 2010 and for Mailbox Role Server for Exchange 2007.

SOLUTION

Ensure for Exchange 2010 there is connectivity to the Client Access Role Server. In case of Exchange 2007, ensure connectivity to Mailbox Role Server.

ERROR MESSAGE: CANNOT OPEN FOLDER FOR MAILBOX "USERNAME" ERROR:MAPI_E_NOT_FOUND (0x8004010F)

PROBLEM

You will get this error message when the backup processes hangs in a pending state and the extended right on your service account is not set to **Receive As** on all databases on the Exchange Server.

SOLUTION 1

- 1. Open the profile in Outlook, it should open successfully.
- 2. Use MFCMapi utility to open the service account profile.
- 3. Click Session | Logon and click Display Stores.
- 4. Select the service account profile.
- 5. Click the MDB menu and click Open Other Users Mailbox.

- 6. Click the <**Mailbox**> and select the default flags to open it.
- 7. Navigate to the tree level for Top of Information Store, browse mailbox folders.

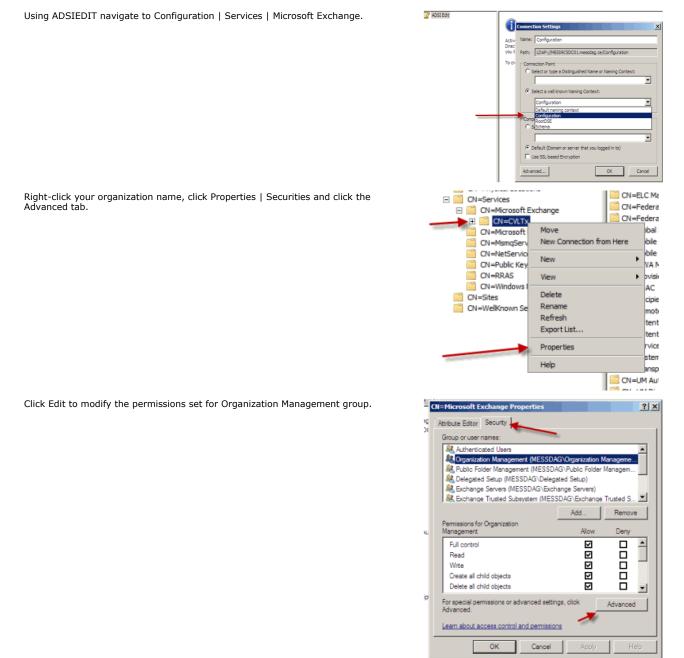
If there are no permission errors through the above mentioned process, then the service account should have the extended right set to **Receive-As** on all databases on the Exchange Server as follows:

SOLUTION 2

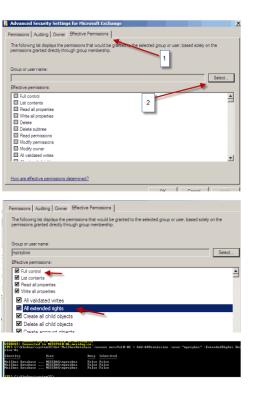
1.

2.

з.



- Click to select Full Control, Receive As and Send As permissions and wait for replication.
- 5. Click the Effective Permission tab and Select the name of the backup account.





The backup account should display the following as selected:

- Full Control
- All Extended Rights
- Send As

6.

- Receive As
- Start the PowerShell and type the following to add the backup account so it has full control over all the databases:

Get-MailboxDatabase -server (server name) | Add-ADPermission -user "backup account" -ExtendedRights Receive-As

 Navigate to the Exchange Management Console, right-click the <mailbox> and click Manage Full Access Permissions to view the mailbox listed under Full Access Permissions.

SOLUTION 3

For Exchange 2010 and 2007 verify that the **Cache** mode is disabled on the Service Account. For more details, on Microsoft permission settings, see Allow Mailbox Access.

ERROR MESSAGE: COULD NOT OPEN THE EXCHANGE PRIVATE MESSAGE STORE WITH PROFILE EXCHADM (E_FAIL (0x80004005))

PROBLEM

You will get this error message when the extended right on your service account is not set to Receive As on all databases on the Exchange Server.

SOLUTION

- 1. Open the profile in Outlook, it should open successfully.
- 2. Use **MFCMapi** utility to open the service account profile.
- 3. Click Session | Logon and click Display Stores.
- 4. Select the service account profile.
- 5. Click the MDB menu and click Open Other Users Mailbox.
- 6. Click the <**Mailbox**> and select the default flags to open it.
- 7. Navigate to the tree level for **Top of Information Store**, browse mailbox folders.
- 8. If there are no permission errors through this process, the service account should have the extended right set to **Receive-As** on all databases on the Exchange Server.

ERROR MESSAGE: ERROR CODE [28:153]: THE MAILBOX PROFILE USED BY THIS PRODUCT IS INVALID. PLEASE TRY USING MDBVU, OUTLOOK OR ANY OTHER EXCHANGE CLIENT TO CHECK IF THE

PROFILE WORKS CORRECTLY

PROBLEM

You will get this error message when the extended right on your service account is not set to Receive As on all databases on the Exchange Server.

SOLUTION

- 1. Open the profile in Outlook, it should open successfully.
- 2. Use MFCMapi utility to open the service account profile.
- 3. Click Session | Logon and click Display Stores.
- 4. Select the service account profile.
- 5. Click the MDB menu and click Open Other Users Mailbox.
- 6. Click the <**Mailbox**> and select the default flags to open it.
- 7. Navigate to the tree level for Top of Information Store, browse mailbox folders.
- 8. If there are no permission errors through this process, the service account should have the extended right set to **Receive-As** on all databases on the Exchange Server.

Agent Properties (General)

Use this dialog box to obtain or provide general and/or user account information for the agent.

Client Name

Displays the name of the client computer on which this Agent is installed.

Billing Department

Displays the name of the billing department, when the Agent is associated with a billing department.

iDataAgent

Displays the identity of the Agent that is installed on the client computer.

Installed date

Displays the date on which the Agent was installed or upgraded on the client computer.

Profile Name

Displays the name of the profile that is associated with the appropriate Administrator Mailbox. Use this space to modify this name.

Mailbox Name

Displays the name of the mailbox that is associated with the appropriate Administrator profile. Use this space to modify this name.

Exchange Administrator Account

Displays the Exchange Administrator Account for the site in which this Exchange Server resides. Click Change Account to modify the account credentials.

Change Account

Click to change the Exchange Administrator Account associated with this agent. These credentials are initially provided during agent installation. Populate the resulting dialog box only if you changed the Exchange Administrator Account and it now differs from the one displayed in the **Exchange Administrator Account** field.

Backup Deleted Item Retention

Specifies whether to enable backups for Deleted Item Retention. By default, the Deleted Item Retention folder is not included in backups.

When cleared, backups of the Deleted Item Retention folder are disabled.

Use CSVDE For Discovery

Specifies whether to use CSVDE filtering for discovery operations. When selected, a CSVDE filter must be entered into the corresponding entry space.

Use of this option requires expert-level knowledge of CSVDE, which is a Microsoft tool used for extracting and filtering information from Active Directory. Incorrect use of the CSVDE filtering option can result in failed discovery and data protection operations.

The following example filters out system mailboxes residing on the SERVERNAME server from discovery operations:

"(&(msExchHomeServerName=*/cn=SERVERNAME)(!(CN=SystemMailbox{*)))"

When cleared, user-specified CSVDE filtering will not be used for discovery operations.

Exchange Server Name

Displays the hostname of the Exchange Server that is installed on the client computer. Use this space to modify the hostname if the name displayed is incorrect. If more than one hostname is entered, separate the hostnames with the semi-colon delimiter.

When backing up Exchange 2010 Database Availability Group (DAG) servers, enter the Mailbox server role that is used by backup and restore operations and configure the sCASServerName registry key to specify a CAS server for creating the profile.

Exchange Version

Lists the version of the Exchange Server that is installed on the client computer. To modify the version, select one from the list.

Manage Content Automatically

Specifies to automatically assign auto discovered content to the subclients.

By default, if a change is made to an automatically discovered mailbox that alters the association criteria it was discovered with, the next backup will automatically reassign the mailbox to the appropriate subclient that satisfies the new criteria.

Clear this option to disable this functionality.

Back to Top

Version

Use this dialog box to view the iDataAgent version.

Activity Control

Use this dialog box to enable or disable data management and data recovery operations on a selected client or client computer group.

Enable Backup

Specifies whether data management operations will occur from this agent.

If cleared:

- The button **Enable after a Delay** appears to the right side of this operation activity. It allows to pre-determine the date and time at which data management operations will begin on the selected agent.
- Data management operations from this agent cannot be started and are skipped.
- Running and waiting data management operations for this agent run to completion.
- Stopped data management operations for this agent cannot be resumed until this option is enabled.
- Pending data management operations for this agent do not run until this option is enabled.

(Job states are indicated in the Job Controller.)

Enable Restore

Specifies whether data recovery operations will occur from this agent.

If cleared:

- The button **Enable after a Delay** appears to the right side of this operation activity. It allows to pre-determine the date and time at which data recovery operations will begin on the selected agent.
- Data recovery operations for this agent cannot be started and are skipped.
- Running data recovery operations for this agent run to completion.
- Pending data recovery operations for this agent do not run until data recovery operations are enabled.

(Job states are indicated in the Job Controller.)

Security

Use this dialog box to:

- Identify the user groups to which this CommCell object is associated.
- Associate this object with a user group.
- Disassociate this object from a user group.

Available Groups

Displays the names of the user groups that are not associated with this CommCell object.

Associated Groups

Displays the names of user groups that are associated with this CommCell object.

Agent Properties (AD Server)

Use this dialog box to specify one or more Active Directory (AD) servers (i.e., domain controllers) that host an Exchange Server. Specifying additional AD Servers provides complete backup coverage of all Exchange mailboxes.

AD Server List

Displays the domain name of one or more Active Directory (AD) servers. You can use this space along with the **Add** and **Delete** buttons to include or remove Active Directory (AD) servers. For example, you may need to add an AD server in these scenarios:

- In cases where an Exchange Server is installed in a child domain and the schema master is in the parent domain, add the Active Directory (AD) server name of the schema master in the parent domain.
- In cases where a domain or forest has multiple domain controllers which may not fully replicate to each other, multiple domain controllers can be added to

ensure a complete list of mailboxes are backed up.

Add

Click to include an Active Directory (AD) server. Enter either a hostname, a fully-qualified domain name, or IP address.

Delete

Click to remove an Active Directory (AD) server.

Agent Properties (Storage Device)

Use this tab to view or change the filter storage policy for Erase Data by Browsing.

Filter Storage Policy

Displays the filter storage policy for Erase Data by Browsing that is associated with this agent. To associate a filter storage policy to a new agent or to change the filter storage policy associated with an existing agent, click one in the list.

Change User Account

Use this dialog box to view or change the Exchange Administrator account information that was set during installation.

Exchange Administrator Account

Displays the Exchange Administrator Account for the site in which this Exchange Server resides. Use this space to modify the account if it has changed and now differs from the one displayed here or if the account was incorrectly entered during installation.

Password

Use this space to specify or modify the Administrator Account password.

Confirm Password

Use this space to retype the password for confirmation.

Security

Use this dialog box to:

- Identify the user groups to which this CommCell object is associated.
- Associate this object with a user group.
- Disassociate this object from a user group.

Available Groups

Displays the names of the user groups that are not associated with this CommCell object.

Associated Groups

Displays the names of user groups that are associated with this CommCell object.

Save as Script

Use this dialog box to choose a name and path for the script file and the mode of execution.

Client

Enter or select the name of the client computer where the script will be created.

Path

Enter the path for the script that will be created.

Browse

Click this button to browse to a path for the command line script.

- Scripts are not supported on the Windows NT platform.
- It is recommended not to use any reserved device names (e.g., LPT1) as the name of the file.
- The file names are not case-sensitive.
- Do not end the file name with a trailing space or a period. Although the underlying file system may support such names, the operating system does not support them.

Mode

Synchronous

Specifies that the script execute in synchronous mode. A synchronous operation exits only when the operation has completed. This option is only available when scripting a single job.

Asynchronous

Specifies that the script execute in asynchronous mode. An asynchronous operation submits the job to the CommServe and exits immediately, returning control to the calling program or script.

Specify User Account to Run the Script

Specifies to use the given user account to save the operation as a script.

• Use the Currently Logged in User Account

Click to use the same user account used for logging into the CommCell Console.

• User Name

Type the user name that was used for logging into the CommCell Console.

• Password

Type the password for the user account used for logging into the CommCell Console.

o Confirm Password

Type to re-confirm the password.

• Use a Different User Account

Click to specify a different user account to save the operation as a script.

O User Name

Enter the different user name to be used for saving the operation as a script.

o Password

Enter the password for the user account to be used for saving the operation as a script.

• Confirm Password

Type to re-confirm the password.

Back to Top

Startup

Select from the following options. Note that all the options described in this help may not be available and only the options displayed in the dialog box are applicable to the operation for which the information is being displayed.

Priority

• Use Default Priority

If selected, the default priority for this type of job will be used in determining how the Job Manager will allocate resources for this job.

• Change Priority

Use this option to manually specify the priority for the job, between 0 (highest priority) and 999 (lowest priority). The Job Manager will use the priority setting when allocating the required resources. This is useful if you have jobs that are very important and must complete, or jobs that can be moved to a lower priority.

Start up in suspended state

Specifies that this job will start in the Job Controller in a suspended state and cannot run until the job is manually resumed using the Resume option. This

option can be used to add a level of manual control when a job is started. For example, you could schedule jobs to start in the suspended state and then choose which scheduled jobs complete by resuming the operation started in the suspended state.

Description

Use this field to enter a description about the entity. This description can include information about the entity's content, cautionary notes, etc.

Job Retry

Note that all the options described in this help may not be available and only the options displayed in the dialog box are applicable to the agent or operation for which the information is being displayed.

Enable Total Running Time

The maximum elapsed time, in hours and minutes, from the time that the job is created. When the specified maximum elapsed time is reached, as long as the job is in the "Running" state, it will continue; if the job is not in the "Running" state when the specified time is reached, Job Manager will kill the job.

Enable Number of Retries

The number of times that Job Manager will attempt to restart the job. Once the maximum number of retry attempts has been reached, if the job has still not restarted successfully, Job Manager will kill the job. Note that this job-based setting will not be valid if restartability has been turned off in the Job Management Control Panel.

Kill Running Jobs When Total Running Time Expires

Option to kill the job when the specified Total Running Time has elapsed, even if its state is "Running". This option is available only if you have specified a Total Running Time.

Vault Tracking

Select options to export and track media, using Vault Tracker.

👷 Vault Tracking Options will be displayed only when a Vault Tracker license is available in the CommServe.

Vault Tracking options are only applicable for data protection operations using a storage policy associated with a library containing removable media (e.g., tape, optical or stand-alone.)

Export media after the job finishes

Specifies the media used by the data protection operation and media with the specific Media Status (if specified) will be exported and tracked by Vault Tracker.

Exclude Media Not Copied

When selected, allows you to exclude media with jobs that have to be copied.

Media Status

• All

Click to select all media. Clear this option to select media with a specific status.

• Active

Click to select media with its status marked as active.

• Full

Click to select media with its status marked as full.

Overwrite Protected

Click to select media with its status marked as read-only .

Bad

Click to select media with its status marked as bad.

Export Location

Specifies the destination location and lists the stationary locations entered using the Export Location Details dialog box.

Track Transit

Specifies that transit information must be tracked, and lists the transit locations entered using the Export Location Details dialog box.

Use Virtual Mail Slots

Specifies the exported media is stored within the library in the virtual mail slots defined in the Library Properties (Media) dialog box.

Filter Media By Retention

Specifies that the system must automatically filter media based on whether the media has extended retention jobs or not.

Media with extended retention job(s)

Specifies that media with at least one extended retention job will be exported.

• Media with no extended retention job(s)

Specifies that media with no extended retention jobs will be exported.

Alert

Use this tab to configure an alert for a schedule policy.

Configure Alert

• Alert

The currently configured Alert.

• Add/Modify Alert

When clicked, opens the Alert Wizard to configure alerts for this operation.

• Delete Alert

When clicked, deletes any existing alerts that are already configured.

Alert Wizard

Threshold and Notification Criteria Selection

Use this step to select or modify the alert threshold and notification criteria. (See Alerts and Monitoring in Books Online for detailed information.)

Alert Criteria

Select the conditions that will initiate the alert. The alerts available are grouped into five categories:

- Application Management
- Automatic Updates
- Configuration
- Job Management
- Media Management

Send Individual Notification for This Alert

Enable this option to send an individual alert notification, instead of multiple alerts within a single alert notification, for the criteria selected.

Notification Criteria

Select whether the alert notification should be repeated, the frequency and whether notification should be sent when the condition clears.

Escalation Notification Criteria

Some alert notifications allow for configuration of an escalated alert. If this option is available, select the time at which the escalated alert notification should be sent, the frequency and whether notification should be sent when the condition clears.

Notify only when jobs qualify for extended retention*

Select this option when configuring a Job Management Data Protection alert. If selected, when a data protection job meets the thresholds of the configured alert criteria, users will only be notified of those jobs that are set for extended retention.

Notify only when job contains failed objects*

Select this option when configuring a Job Management Data Protection alert. If selected, when a data protection job meets the thresholds of the configured alert criteria, users will only be notified of those jobs that contain failed objects.

*This notification option is applicable for Job Management Data Protection alerts only.

ALERT CRITERIA

The following tables identify the types of available alerts within each category, the user capabilities needed for each alert, the entities the alert can be associated with, the types of criteria available, and a description.

APPLICATION MANAGEMENT

		Entities that can be Associated with the Alert		Description		
ContinuousDataReplicator		Clients Client Groups	Log File Volume Reached Low Watermark	 One of the following has occurred: A destination computer has imposed throttling on the source computer, based on the percentage of allocated log space remaining on the destination computer. A destination computer has stopped the source computer from sending logs, based on the percentage of allocated log space remaining on the destination computer. A source computer has run out of log space, and CDR has stopped monitoring the source paths for all the Replication Pairs, put the pairs in an aborted state, and deleted all log files. The free disk space thresholds are configurable in the ContinuousDataReplicator Properties (Operational 		
			No transfer activity Failed Replication	Parameters) window. There has been no data replicated from the source to the destination. The CommServe automatically checks for transfer activity every 15 minutes. A Replication Pair's job has failed, been aborted by a user, or		
	Agent Management or Alert Management capability with association at the object associated with the alert.	Clients Client Groups	Journal Mailbox Threshold Exceeded	 aborted by the system. The journal mailbox exceeded its limit. (The mailbox threshold is set by the user in the CommCell console.) NOTES See <i>Configure the Agent for a Journal Mailbox Threshold Alert</i> in Books Online for step-by-step instructions for setting the threshold limit on the agent. If you would like to change the interval at which the threshold limit is checked or the time-out for the monitoring process, you can set these through the nArcMonitorIntervalInMins and nArcMonitorTimeOutInMins registry keys. 		
	Alert Management capability with association at the SharePoint vers		SharePoint version is upgraded. Restart	New virtual servers were found on the SharePoint server after an archive operation, which requires the Internet Information Services (IIS) to be restarted. The SharePoint server has been upgraded, which requires the Internet Information Services (IIS) to be restarted.		

AUTOMATIC UPDATES

Alert Type	User Capabilities Needed for Each Alert type	Entities that can be Associated with the Alert	Criteria	Description
Download Updates Administrative Management or Alert Management capability with CommCell association.	Management or Alert		Job Failed	Updates failed to be downloaded.
			Job Succeeded	Updates were downloaded successfully.
		Job Succeeded with Errors	A download updates operation completed with errors.	
Install Updates	Management or Alert	Machines	Job Failed	An update installation failed.
		Client Groups	Job Succeeded	An update installation completed successfully.
Management capability with CommCell association.		Job Succeeded with Errors	An update installation operation completed with errors.	
	association.		Job Initiated	An update installation was initiated.
Updates Available to Download	Administrative Management or Alert Management capability with CommCell association.		Updates Available to Download	An update is available to be downloaded for installation. The frequency interval at which these updates are detected is configurable in the registry key.
Upgrades and Service Packs	Management or Alert	Machines Client Groups	Release Upgrade Required	A new release software upgrade is required. (If configured, this alert occurs when a Client and/or MediaAgent software version is lower than that of the CommServe.)

.....

association.		The frequency interval at which these updates are detected is configurable in the registry key.
	Service Pack Required	A software update is required.
		(If configured, this alert occurs when a Client and/or MediaAgent service pack version is lower than that of the CommServe.)
		The frequency interval at which these updates are detected is configurable in the registry key.

CONFIGURATION

Alert Type	User Capabilities Needed for Each Alert type	Entities that can be Associated with the Alert	Criteria	Description
Clients	Alert Management	Clients Client Groups	Properties Modified	The properties of a client were modified, or there was an unauthorized attempt to alter properties.
	capability with association at the object associated with the alert.			The minimum thresholds have been reached for the client software installation and system directories, which include the Job Results.
				The threshold for Job Results directory is configurable in the CommCell Console's Client Computers Properties window.
				The thresholds for the software installation and system directories and the frequency interval at which the directories are monitored are configurable in the registry key.
				If Data Classification Enabler is installed, this alert, if configured, will be sent if 85 percent or more of the volume's disk space is consumed.
				For computers where QSnap and either the Quick Recovery Agent or ContinuousDataReplicator are installed, this alert, if configured, will be sent if 80 percent or more of a volume's disk space is consumed, for all of the client computer's volumes.
				If Content Indexing Engine is installed, this alert, if configured will be sent for the following:
				• If 80 percent or more of the volume's disk space is consumed.
				• If the minimum free space falls below 10 GB.
		Agents	Properties Modified	The properties of an agent were modified, new content was added (for the Oracle agent only), or there was an unauthorized attempt to alter properties. This alert is also generated if the content, pre-post commands, or storage policy of a subclient were modified.
CommCell	MCell Administrative Management or Alert		Alert every <i>n</i> failed login attempts	There were <i>n</i> failed attempts made to login to the CommCell.
	Management capability with CommCell association		Alert CommServe License Expires With <i>n</i> Days	The CommServe license will expire in <i>n</i> days.
			Alert when License	The CommServe license has reached n %.
			Consumed reaches <i>n</i> %	License Capacity Usage details get updated every 24 hours. It may also be updated if a Data Aging Job is run or if CommServe services are restarted.
			Properties Modified	The properties of the CommServe were modified, or there was an unauthorized attempt to alter properties.
			Alert Modified	A user was added or removed to an alert, an alert was modified, or there was an unauthorized attempt to modify the properties of an alert.
			Force De-configured	A user failed or successfully forced de-configured an Agent, Client, or MediaAgent.
			Disk Space Low	The minimum thresholds have been reached for the CommServe software installation and system directories or there is insufficient disk space for the CommServe database to grow.
				The threshold for the software installation and system directories and the frequency interval at which the directories are monitored are configurable in the registry key.
				The threshold for CommServe database directory, and the frequency interval at which the database directory is monitored, are configurable in the CommCell Console's Control Panel - System window (Database space check interval and Database Space Check Thresholds).

Library	Library Management or Alert Management capability with library association	Libraries	Properties Modified	The properties of a library were modified, an overwrite media option was selected for the library, or there was an unauthorized attempt to alter properties of a library.
MediaAgents	Alert Management	MediaAgents	Properties Modified	The properties of a MediaAgent were modified, or there was an unauthorized attempt to alter the properties of a MediaAgent.
	capability with MediaAgent association		Disk Space Low	The minimum thresholds have been reached for the MediaAgent software installation and system directories, which include the Index Cache.
				The threshold for MediaAgents Index Cache directory is configurable in the CommCell Console's MediaAgents Properties window.
		corrupted MediaAge Offline Notify onl persists fo		The threshold for the software installation and system directories and the frequency interval at which the directories are monitored are configurable in the registry key.
			DDB Store got corrupted	Deduplication Store of a MediaAgent is corrupted.
			MediaAgent went Offline	A MediaAgent was switched on/offline.
			Notify only if Condition persists for	Notify only if the condition persists for certain length of time.
			Repeat notification every	Repeat the notification for every n hours and m minutes. (n and m are set by the user at the time of configuration.)
Schedules	Alert Management capability with CommCell association		Scheduler Changes	A schedule was added, deleted, or modified, a job failed to be scheduled, a user added, removed, or modified a holiday.
Storage Policy	Storage Policy Management or Alert Management capability with storage policy association	Storage Policies	Properties Modified	The properties of a storage policy were modified, or there was an unauthorized attempt to alter the properties of a storage policy.

JOB MANAGEMENT

Alert Type	User Capabilities Needed for Each Alert type	Entities that can be Associated with the Alert	Criteria	Description
Auxiliary Copy	Administrative	Storage Policies	Job Succeeded	An auxiliary copy operation completed successfully.
	Management or Alert Management capability	Storage Policy Copies	Job Succeeded with Errors	An auxiliary copy operation completed with errors.
	with CommCell association		Job Skipped	A scheduled auxiliary copy operation ran late, was skipped, or was skipped due to a holiday.
			Job Failed	An auxiliary copy operation failed, failed to start, or the operation was aborted by the system.
			Job Activity	An auxiliary copy operation was killed, resumed, or suspended by a user.
			Auxiliary Copy fallen behind alert	The following criteria have been met for the selected storage policy:
				• data to be copied is more than <i>n</i> GB
				• jobs have not been copied in more than <i>n</i> days
				(<i>n</i> is set by the user in the Storage Policy Properties (Advanced) window.)
				The interval at which the storage policy is checked for this criteria can be configured in the Media Management Configuration (Auxiliary Copy Configuration) window; the default Interval (Hours) between Auxiliary Copy Fallen Behind alerts is 24 hours.
			Delayed by <i>n</i> Hrs	An auxiliary copy operation was in a waiting state for n hours. (n is set by the user at time of configuration.)
			Alert every <i>n</i> attempt (Phase failures)	There were <i>n</i> attempts made to resume the auxiliary copy operation after a phase failure.
		Alert every <i>n</i> attempt (Network failures)	There were <i>n</i> attempts made to resume the auxiliary copy operation after a network failure.	
Backup Copy	Administrative	Storage Policies	Job Succeeded	A backup copy operation completed successfully
Workflow	Management or Alert Management capability		Job Succeeded with Errors	A backup copy operation completed with errors.
with CommCell association			Job Skipped	A scheduled backup copy operation ran late, was skipped, or was skipped due to a holiday.
			Job Failed	A backup copy operation failed, failed to start, or the operation was aborted by the system.
			Job Activity	A backup copy operation was killed, resumed, or suspended by a user.

			Job Started	A backup copy operation was started by a user.
Continuous Data Replication	Data Protection Operations or Alert Management capability at each associated entity.	Clients Agents Replication Sets	Job Succeeded	A Recovery Point creation, Consistent Recovery Point creation, or CopyBack operation completed successfully.
		Job Succeeded with Errors	A Recovery Point creation, Consistent Recovery Point creation, or CopyBack operation completed with errors.	
			Job Skipped	A scheduled Recovery Point creation, Consistent Recovery Point creation, or CopyBack operation ran late, was skipped, or was skipped due to a holiday.
			Job Failed	A Recovery Point creation, Consistent Recovery Point creation, or CopyBack operation failed, failed to start, or the operation was aborted by the system.
			Job Activity	A Recovery Point creation, Consistent Recovery Point creation, or CopyBack operation was killed, resumed, or suspended by a user.
			Delayed by <i>n</i> Hrs	A Recovery Point creation, Consistent Recovery Point creation, or CopyBack operation was in a waiting state for <i>n</i> hours. (<i>n</i> is set by the user at time of configuration.)
			Alert every <i>n</i> attempt (Phase failures)	There were n attempts made to resume the Recovery Point Creation or CopyBack operation after a phase failure.
			Alert every <i>n</i> attempt (Network failures)	There were <i>n</i> attempts made to resume the Recovery Point Creation or CopyBack operation after a network failure.
Data Aging	Administrative		Job Succeeded	A data aging operation completed successfully.
	Management or Alert Management capability		Job Succeeded with Errors	A data aging operation completed with errors.
	with CommCell association		Job Skipped	A scheduled data aging operation ran late, was skipped, or was skipped due to a holiday.
			Job Failed	A data aging operation failed, failed to start, or the operation was aborted by the system.
		Job Activity	A data aging operation was killed by a user.	
Data Classification	Alert Management capability	Clients Client Groups	Classification Failed	A data classification operation failed to write to the database.
Data Protection Data Protection Operations or Alert Management capabilit		lert Client Crouns	Job Succeeded Job Succeeded with Errors	A data protection operation completed successfully. A data protection operation completed with errors.
	at each associated entity.	Agents Backup Sata	Job Skipped	A scheduled data protection operation ran late, was skipped, or was skipped due to a holiday.
		Backup Sets Instance/Partition All Subclients**	Job Failed	A data protection operation failed, failed to start, or was aborted by the system.
			Job Activity	A data protection operation was killed, resumed, or suspended by a user.
		Subclients	No Data Protection	A data protection operation failed to start.
			Delayed by <i>n</i> Hrs	A data protection operation was in a waiting state for n hours. (n is set by the user at time of configuration.)
			No Backup for last <i>n</i> Days	A data protection operation did not complete successfully for the last <i>n</i> days. (<i>n</i> is set by the user at the time of configuration in the alert wizard.)
			Job exceeded running time of <i>n</i> Hrs	A data protection operation was in a suspended, running or in a pending state for more than n hours. (n is set by the user at the time of configuration in the alert wizard.)
			Alert every <i>n</i> attempt (Phase failures)	There were n attempts made to resume the data protection operation after a phase failure.
			Alert every <i>n</i> attempt (Network failures)	There were n attempts made to resume the data protection operation after a network failure.
			Increase in Data Size by <i>n</i> %	A data protection job is at least <i>n</i> % larger in data size than the previous data protection job of the same type (full, incremental, differential or synthetic full). Default is set at 10%. (<i>n</i> is the percentage of increase in data size, at which if met, will trigger the alert. The actual data size increase may
			Decrease in Data Size by <i>n</i> %	be larger than the $n\%$.) A data protection job is at least $n\%$ smaller in data size than the previous data protection job of the same type (full, incremental, differential or synthetic full). Default is set at 10%. (<i>n</i> is the percentage of decrease in data size, at which if met, will trigger the alert. The actual data size decrease may be larger than the $n\%$.)
			Notify only when jobs qualify for extension retention	The data protection job is set for extended retention.
			Notify only when job contains failed objects	The data protection job contains one or more failed objects.

		Instance/Partition		A data recovery operation failed, failed to start, or the operation was aborted by the system.
			Job Activity	A data recovery operation was killed, resumed, or suspended by a user.
			Job Started	A data recovery operation was started by a user.
			List Media	A user requested a list of media used for the original data protection operation.
Data Verification	Administrative	Storage Policies	Job Succeeded	A data verification operation completed successfully.
	Management or Alert Management capability	Storage Policy Copies	Job Succeeded with Errors	A data verification operation completed with errors.
			Job Skipped	A scheduled data verification operation ran late, was skipped, or was skipped due to a holiday.
			Job Failed	A data verification operation failed, failed to start, or the operation was aborted by the system.
			Job Activity Delayed by <i>n</i> Hrs	A data verification operation was killed, resumed, or suspended by a user. A data verification operation was in a waiting state for <i>n</i> hours
Disaster Recovery	Administration		Job Succeeded	(<i>n</i> is set by the user at time of configuration.) A disaster recovery backup completed successfully, a backup
Backup	Management or Alert			set was pruned during the operation (default = 5 backup sets)
	Management capability with CommCell		Job Succeeded with Errors	A disaster recovery backup operation completed with errors/warnings.
	association.		Job Skipped	A scheduled disaster recovery backup ran late, was skipped, or was skipped due to a holiday.
			Job Failed	A disaster recovery backup failed, failed to start, the operation was aborted by the system, or no storage policy was defined for the operation.
			Job Activity	A disaster recovery backup operation was killed by a user.
		Delayed by <i>n</i> Hrs	A disaster recovery backup operation was in a waiting state for n hours. (n is set by the user at time of configuration.)	
Erase Data Administration Management or Aler Management capabi with CommCell association.	Administration Management or Alert Management capability	Clients	Job Succeeded	An erase data operation completed successfully
		Agents	Job Succeeded with Errors	An erase data operation completed with errors/warnings.
	with CommCell	Backup Set Subclients	Job Skipped	A scheduled erase data operation ran late, was skipped, or was skipped due to a holiday.
		Subchents	Job Failed	An erase data operation failed, failed to start, was killed by a user, was aborted by the system.
			Job Activity	An erase data operation was killed, resumed, or suspended by a user.
Media Erase	Library Management or Alert Management	Libraries	Job Succeeded	A media erase operation completed successfully.
	capability with library association		Job Succeeded with Errors	A media erase operation completed with errors/warnings.
			Job Failed Job Activity	A media erase operation failed, failed to start, or was killed by a user. A media erase operation was killed, resumed, or suspended by
			SOD Activity	a user.
Media Inventory	Library Management or	Libraries	Job Succeeded	An inventory operation completed successfully.
	Alert Management capability with library association		Job Succeeded with Errors Job Failed	An inventory operation completed with errors.
Media Refreshing	Administrative	Storage Policies	Alert every <i>n</i> attempt	An inventory operation failed, failed to start, or was killed by a user. There were <i>n</i> attempts made to resume the data protection
	Management or Alert Management capability	-	(Phase failures) Alert every <i>n</i> attempt	operation after a phase failure. There were n attempts made to resume the data protection
	with CommCell		(Network failures)	operation after a network failure.
a	association		Delayed by <i>n</i> Hrs	An offline content indexing operation was in a waiting state for n hours. (n is set by the user at time of configuration.)
			Job Succeeded Job Succeeded with Errors	An offline content indexing operation completed successfully. An offline content indexing operation completed with errors.
			Job Skipped	An offline content indexing operation ran late, was skipped, or was skipped due to a holiday.
			Job Failed	An offline content indexing operation failed, failed to start, the operation was aborted by the system.
		- ···	Job Activity	An offline content indexing operation was killed by a user.
Offline Content	Administrative	Storage Policies	Job Succeeded	An offline content indexing operation completed successfully.
Indexing	Management or Alert Management capability	-	Job Succeeded with	An offline content indexing operation completed with errors.

	with CommCell association		Job Skipped	An offline content indexing operation ran late, was skipped, or was skipped due to a holiday.
			Job Failed	An offline content indexing operation failed, failed to start, the operation was aborted by the system.
			Job Activity	An offline content indexing operation was killed by a user.
			Delayed by <i>n</i> Hrs	An offline content indexing operation was in a waiting state for n hours. (n is set by the user at time of configuration.)
Information	Administrative		Job Succeeded	An information management operation completed successfully.
Management	Management or Alert Management capability		Job Skipped	An information management operation ran late, was skipped, or was skipped due to a holiday.
	with CommCell association		Job Succeeded with Errors	An information management operation completed with errors.
			Job Failed	An information management operation failed, failed to start, the operation was aborted by the system.
			Job Activity	An information management operation was killed by a user.
			Delayed by <i>n</i> Hrs	An information management operation was in a waiting state for n hours. (n is set by the user at time of configuration.)
Report	rt Administration		Job Activity	A report operation was killed by a user.
	Management capability with CommCell		Job Failed	A report operation failed, failed to start, the operation was aborted by the system, or a report failed to be saved.
	association.		Job Skipped	A report operation ran late, was skipped, or was skipped due to a holiday.
			Job Succeeded	A report operation completed successfully.
			Job Succeeded with Errors	A report operation completed with errors.
SRM Data Collection	Management capability	Clients Client Groups	Alert every n attempt (Phase failures)	There were n attempts made to resume the data collection operation after a phase failure.
	with CommCell association.		Alert every n attempt (Network failures)	There were n attempts made to resume the data collection operation after a network failure.
			Job Activity	A data collection operation was killed by a user.
			Job Failed	A data collection operation failed, failed to start, the operation was aborted by the system.
			Job Skipped	A data collection operation ran late, was skipped, or was skipped due to a holiday.
			Job Succeeded	A data collection operation completed successfully.
			Job Succeeded with Errors	A data collection operation completed with errors.
			No Data Protection	A data collection operation failed to start.

**DataArchiver agents only

MEDIA MANAGEMENT

Alert Type	User Capabilities Needed for Each Alert type	Entities that can be Associated with the Alert	Criteria	Description
Device Status	Library Management or	Libraries	Drive went Offline	A drive in a library switched offline.
	Alert Management		Library went Offline	A library switched offline.
	capability with CommCell association		Mount Path went Offline	A mount path went offline.
	ibrary Management Library Management or Alert Management capability with library association.	Libraries	Insufficient Storage	The number of spare media inside the library for a scratch pool and cleaning pool fell below the low water mark defined or there is no spare media inside the library. For a disk library, the free disk space fell below the low water mark or there is insufficient disk space.
			Maintenance Occurred	A drive cleaning operation completed successfully or failed.
			Maintenance Required	The library or drive has exceeded its threshold, a drive requires cleaning, or the mount path has exceeded its fragmentation threshold.
				The percentage threshold at which the mount path is deemed fragmented can be configured in the Media Management Configuration (Service Configuration) window, Mount Path Fragmentation Threshold Percentage option.
			Media Handling Errors	The system found a duplicate barcode/label in the library, or the system detected a media in the wrong library.
			Media Handling Required	A media is not in the library, or a media in a drive needs changing because the system detected wrong or no media in the drive.
			Media Mount and Usage Errors	A media is marked read only, bad or depreciated, or a mount or an unmount error has occurred.

			User Overwrite of Media	The media was overwritten due to an option selected by the user.
			Media Ready in Mail	Media in mail slot is ready to be picked up by the user.
			Slot	NOTES
				 This criterion is applicable to a VaultTracker media export (to mail slot) only, which requires a VaultTracker license. For more information, see License Administration in Books Online.
				• It is recommended that the <media list=""> and <more MEDIA Y/N> tokens be added to the notification message when configuring this alert. For more information, see Alert Tokens in Books Online.</more </media>
			Media Recalled	The media has been retrieved from an export location for a specific operation. For more information, see Recall Media in Books Online.
VaultTracker	Library Management or	Tracking Policies	Job Succeeded	A pending media movement completed successfully.
	Alert Management capability with Library		Job Succeeded with Errors	A pending media movement completed with errors.
	association.		Job Failed	A pending media movement failed.
			Job Initiated	A pending media movement was created.
			Media Handling Required	A media is moved to a virtual mail slot, or a media needs import.
			Media Picked Up	Media was picked up.
			Media Reached Destination	A media has reached the required destination.
			Media Returned to Source	A media was returned to the source.
			Rolled Back	A media movement was rolled back.

Browse Options

Use this dialog box to select the basic options under which you want to browse the data secured by a data protection operation in the selected client, agent, instance/partition, or backup set level depending on the functionality of a given agent.

The system provides several browse options. These options influence the behavior of the browse operation in the subsequent Browse window. Note that all the options described in this help may not be available and only the options displayed in the dialog box are applicable to the agent for which the information is being displayed.

Browse the Latest Data

Specifies whether the browse operation must display data from the most recent data protection operation (from now back to the last full backup) in the Browse window. (This option is selected by default.)

Specify Browse Time

Specifies whether the browse operation must display data, up to the specified date and time in the Browse window. Data secured after the specified date and time will be omitted in this window.

Browse Data Before/Browse to Point-In-Time

Specifies the date and time that must be used to display the data in the Browse window.

• Time Zone

Lists the time zones. To change the time zone, click one in the list.

Select from Available Browse Times

Displays a list containing the time of different backup jobs available in the destination, from which data can be browsed. For Workstation Backup Agent, this option displays the list of recovery points available in the destination. Select the desired time.

Use MediaAgent

Specifies the name of MediaAgent that will be used to perform the browse (and restore) operation. If necessary, you can change the name of the MediaAgent. For example, if the library is shared and you wish to use a specific MediaAgent (instead of the system selected MediaAgent, or a MediaAgent which may be idle, or less critical) or if you know that the media containing the data you wish to restore is available in the library attached to the specified MediaAgent.

If the media containing the data is not available in the tape/optical library attached to the MediaAgent, the system will automatically prompt you to insert the appropriate media. In the case of a disk library, the operation will fail if the requested data is not available in the disk library attached to the specified MediaAgent.

Client Computer

Lists the client computers available for the browse operation. This option is available only when the browse operation is performed either from the client node in

the CommCell Browser, Browse & Recover option from the Tools menu in the CommCell Console or when the New Browse button is clicked in the Browse window.

Specify Browse Path

Specifies the starting point for the browse operation. Also provides a space for you to type the path.

Show Deleted Items

Specifies whether the operation will browse all the data (including deleted items) secured by all data protection operations for the selected backup set as of the specified browse items.

Table View

Specifies whether the backup data should be displayed as database tables during the browse operation.

Image Browsing

Specifies whether the operation will browse all the data (including deleted items) secured by all data protection operations for the selected backup set as of the specified browse times.

The main difference between image browse and no-image browse is that deleted items are shown only by the no-image browse.

Keep in mind that the display of deleted items depends on whether full backup transparency is enabled. If full backup transparency is disabled (the default), only those deleted items that existed back through the most recent full backup are shown. However if full backup transparency is enabled, the deleted items shown includes those that existed during the time interval from initial index creation through the time being browsed.

To determine whether full backup transparency is enabled or disabled, from the CommCell Browser, right-click the *i*DataAgent and then select **Properties.** Click the **Index** tab. If **Create new index on full backup** is selected, then full backup transparency is disabled.

File Level Browse (Restore individual files/folders from disk image)

Specifies whether the operation will browse all the files and folders secured by all data protection operations for the selected backup set as of the specified browse items.

Volume Level Browse (Restore the disk image/volume)

Specifies whether the operation will browse all the volumes secured by all data protection operations for the selected backup set as of the specified browse items.

Database

For SQL Server, specifies whether to browse individual databases.

File/File Group

For SQL Server, specifies whether to browse file groups and files for the databases.

Page Size

Use the space to enter the default number of objects to be displayed in the Browse window. This field reverts back to the default setting after use. In the Browse window, you can browse through each page list by selecting the appropriate page number.

Browse Data from SQL

Specifies that SharePoint documents can be mined from an offline mining database.

SQL Instance

For SharePoint Offline mining, specifies the SQL instance that is associated with the offline mining database. Click ... to select from a list or type the instance name.

User Account

For SharePoint Offline mining, specifies the Username and Password of the account that can access the instance. Click Edit to enter the username and password.

Config Database

For SharePoint Offline mining, specifies the Configuration Database that will be used to mine SharePoint documents. Click ... to select from a list or type the Configuration Database name.

Browse only volumes

Specifies that the browse operation must display only a list of volumes; required for a Volume Level Restore.

Advanced

Click to access additional browse capabilities.

List Media

Click to display media required for restore or index restore operations.

Type of Intended Restore (Virtual Server *i*DataAgent)

This section provides the facility to select the type of restore you want to perform following the Browse operation.

• Individual Files/Folders

Select this option if you intend on performing a file/folder-level restore.

Entire Volume

Select this option if you intend on performing a volume-level restore.

• Container Restore

Select this option if you intend on performing a disk-level restore.

Browse/Restore Directory Server data from database

For Active Directory Offline Mining, enter the path to the database from which you want to restore directory server data. For Active Directory Server databases, this file will be the ntds.dit file. For ADAM and Lightweight Server databases, this file will be the adamntds.dit file. Click **Browse** to locate the database or enter the complete database path in the **File Path** field.

Back to Top

Advanced Browse Options

Use this dialog to access additional browse capabilities for the browse window. Note that all the options described in this help may not be available and only the options displayed in the dialog box are applicable to the agent for which the information is being displayed.

Use MediaAgent

Select the MediaAgent associated with the data you want to browse, or select Any MediaAgent.

Show Deleted Items

Specifies whether the operation will browse all the data (including deleted items) secured by all data protection operations for the selected backup set as of the specified browse items.

Page Size

Specifies the number of objects to be displayed in the browse window.

Include Metadata

Specifies that the browse operation results must also include data containing metadata information.

Exclude Data Before

Specifies that the browse operation must return data that has been backed up after the specified date. Also provides a space for you to type the date and time.

Browse from copy precedence

When selected, the system retrieves the data from the storage policy copy with the specified copy precedence number. If data does not exist in the specified copy, the operation fails even if the data exists in another copy of the same storage policy.

When cleared, (or by default) the system retrieves data from the storage policy copy with the lowest copy precedence. If the data was pruned from the primary copy, the system automatically retrieves the data from the other copies of the storage policy starting with the copy with the lowest copy precedence and proceeding through the copies with higher copy precedence. Once the data is found, it is retrieved, and no further copies are checked.

Back to Top

List Media

Use this dialog box to select the options that must be used to predict the required media.

Media For the Latest Data

Specifies whether the list media operation must display media associated with the most recent data protection operation (from now back to the last full backup) This option is selected by default.

Specify Time Range

Specifies whether the whether the list media operation must display media associated with the specified date and time.

Data Before/Time Range

Specifies the date and time that must be used to display media.

• Time Zone

Lists the time zones. To change the time zone, click one in the list.

Advanced

Click to access additional options.

Operation Window

Use this dialog box to add, modify, or delete operation rules for system operations.

Name

The friendly name assigned to the operation window.

Operations

The operations included in the rule.

Days

Displays the days in which the operations in this rule should not be run.

Do not run intervals

Displays the times in which the operations in this rule should not be run.

Add

Click this button to add an operation rule from the Operation Rule Details dialog box.

Modify

Click this button to modify an operation rule from the Operation Rule Details dialog box.

Delete

Click this button to delete an operation rule.

Ignore Operation Rules at Higher Levels (not applicable at the CommServe and Client group level)

Select this option to disable all operation rules set at levels above the currently selected entity.

Subclient Properties (General)

Use this dialog box to add, modify or view general information on the selected subclient.

Client Name

Displays the name of the Client computer to which this subclient belongs.

Billing Department

Displays the name of the billing department, when the subclient is associated with a billing department.

iDataAgent

Displays the name of the Agent to which this subclient belongs.

Backup Set

Displays the name of the Backup Set to which this subclient belongs.

Subclient Name

Displays the name of this Subclient. You can use this space to enter or modify the name of the subclient.

Default Subclient

Displays whether this is the default subclient. When a subclient is designated as the default subclient, it will back up all the data for the subclient that is not assigned to any other subclients within the backup set, and it cannot be deleted.

Description

Use this field to enter a description about the entity. This description can include information about the entity's content, cautionary notes, etc.

Back to Top

Subclient Properties (Content)

Use this tab to define the contents of a new subclient or to change the content of an existing subclient. Mailboxes that are listed in the **Contents of subclient** pane are backed up/migrated/archived/content indexed by the subclient.

Contents of subclient

Displays a list of mailboxes included as content for this subclient. The autodiscovered mailboxes are displayed in italics whereas manually discovered mailboxes are displayed in normal font. This is to differentiate which mailboxes will be qualified for Automatic Content Management.

• Display Name

Displays the Display Name of the mailbox included as content for this subclient.

• Alias Name

Displays the Alias Name of the mailbox included as content for this subclient.

SMTP Address

Displays the Simple Mail Transfer Protocol Address of the mailbox included as content for this subclient.

Mailbox Store

Displays the Mailbox Store in which the mailbox resides.

Configure

Click to discover and change the associations of the mailboxes to the subclients. Any mailboxes included as content for a user-defined backup set/subclient will be automatically excluded from the default backup set/subclient.

Delete Archived messages after successful archive operations

Specifies whether to delete the contents of the mailbox after the data has been successfully archived. Selecting this option will cause the system to delete the data from mailboxes included in subclient content after the data has been successfully archived.

Only backup following folders (separated by ;)

This allows you to configure the Exchange Mailbox *i*DataAgent to backup messages that reside in a specific root-level mailbox folder for the subclient of any backup set. Other folders in the mailbox will not be backed up.

Perform backup using mining off snapshot

Click to run a data protection job from an offline snapshot copy of the Exchange data. Snap mining can improve performance in that it offloads processing on the production application server.

Exchange DB client

Specifies the client computer where the Exchange Database is installed.

Client

Specifies the client computer that was used to create the snapshot.

Agents

Specifies the agent that was used to create the snapshot of the Exchange data.

Instance

Specifies the instance that was used to create the snapshot of the Exchange data.

Backupset

Specifies the backupset that was used to create the snapshot of the Exchange data.

subclient to use

Specifies the subclient that was used to create the snapshot of the Exchange data

Exchange DB subclient to use

Specifies the Exchange Database iDataAgent subclient to use for mining the SnapProtect backup.

Proxy Client

Click and select a proxy computer to run the data protection job of the snapshot on a Proxy Client.

Subclient Properties (Auto-discovery)

Use this dialog box to view and establish the criteria to automatically discover new mailboxes. The criteria that can be configured depends on the assignment method that was selected in **Backup Set Properties (Auto Discover)**. Assignment methods include:

- Regular Expressions
- Database Affinity
- Active Directory User Group Affinity

Automatically add new mailboxes that don't qualify for membership in any of the sub-clients

Specifies whether to assign auto-discovered mailboxes to the contents of this subclient. This is useful in cases where mailboxes have not been assigned to any other subclient within the Backup Set. This option applies only to the default subclient. Clearing this option will disable auto-discovery on the default subclient.

Add Mailbox Display Name

Displays a list of mailbox display name patterns i.e., regular expressions. Mailboxes that match the specified patterns entered in **Mailbox Display Names** will be automatically discovered and assigned to this subclient. This display pane is enabled when the **Match Mailboxes by Regular Expressions** option was selected in Backup Set Properties (Auto Discover).

Mailbox Display Names

Use this space to enter a mailbox display name pattern using regular expressions (i.e., wildcards). See Wildcards for a list of supported wildcards.

Wildcard Example	Description
Accounting*	Auto-discovers any mailbox display name that begins with Accounting followed by any number of any characters (e.g., Accounting Mailbox, Accounting Manager, etc.).
[!ei]nsure	Auto-discovers any mailbox display name that ends with nsure but does not begin with e or i (e.g., unsure).
[!a-k]Lee	Auto-discovers any mailbox display name that does not begin with a through k and that ends with Lee (e.g., xLee, yLee, etc.).

Add

Click to commit the mailbox display name pattern for auto-discovery entered in **Mailbox Display Names** and add it the **Add Mailbox Display Name** display pane. This button is enabled when the **Match Mailboxes by Regular Expressions** option was selected in Backup Set Properties (Auto Discover).

Remove

Click to delete the selected mailbox display name pattern. This button is enabled when the **Match Mailboxes by Regular Expressions** option was selected in Backup Set Properties (Auto Discover).

Newly discovered mailboxes from the following mailbox stores will automatically be associated with this subclient

Displays a list of databases. Mailboxes in these databases will be automatically discovered and assigned to this subclient. This display pane is enabled when the **Database Affinity** option is selected in Backup Set Properties (Auto Discover).

The new discovered mailboxes of the following AD User Group will be backed up to this subclient

Displays a list of the Active Directory User Groups. Mailboxes in these AD User Groups will be automatically discovered and assigned to this subclient. This display pane is enabled when the **AD User Group Affinity** option is selected in Backup Set Properties (Auto Discover).

Configuration

Click to configure the databases or AD User Groups that will be used to automatically discover mailboxes and assign them to this subclient.

Back to Top

Configure Mailbox Stores for Auto-discovery

Use this dialog box to change the assignment of databases to subclients. Mailboxes in these databases will be automatically discovered and assigned to this subclient.

Mailbox Store

Displays the name of the database where newly discovered mailboxes for the assigned subclient will be backed up.

Subclient

Displays the name of the subclient whose newly discovered mailboxes will be backed up to the assigned database. To change the subclient assignment, click on the subclient and select a different one from the drop-down list.

Change all selected stores to:

Lists subclients that can be assigned to databases for auto-discovery. To change the subclient assignment, select one or more databases and click a subclient in the list.

Configure AD User Group for Auto-discovery

Use this dialog box to add or change Active Directory (AD) User Groups. Mailboxes in these AD User Groups will be automatically discovered and assigned to this subclient.

AD User Group Name

Displays the name of the Active Directory User Group where newly discovered mailboxes for this subclient will be backed up.

Subclient

Displays the name of the subclient that is assigned to the Active Directory User Group. Newly discovered mailboxes that reside in the AD User Group will be assigned to this subclient. To change the assignment, click on the subclient and select a different one from the drop-down list.

Move all selected items to:

Lists subclients that can be assigned to Active Directory User Groups. To change the subclient assignment, select one or more Active Directory User Groups and click a subclient in the list.

Discover

Specifies to discover an Active Directory User Group. When clicked, the Authenticate Active Directory Domain Controller dialog box will prompt you to provide authentication information before proceeding with the discovery process.

Configure Subclient Mailbox Affinity

Mailbox Affinity

Use this list to select the assignment method by which newly discovered mailboxes will be included in the contents of user-defined subclients. To change the assignment method, select one from the list. Choose from the following assignment methods:

• Ad Hoc

Manual assignment of newly discovered mailboxes.

• Mailbox

Automatic assignment of newly discovered mailboxes that match a wildcard pattern or mailbox name specified in the Subclient Properties (Mailboxes) dialog.

• Active Directory User Group

Automatic assignment of newly discovered mailboxes by Active Directory User Group specified in the Subclient Properties (Mailboxes) dialog.

Subclient Properties (Pre/Post Process)

Use the Pre/Post Process tab to add, modify or view Pre/Post processes for the selected subclient.

Pre-Backup process

Displays the name/path of the backup that you want to run before the respective phase. You can use this space to enter a path for the backup process that will execute before this phase on the subclient. Click **Browse** to search for and select the name/path of the process. The system allows the use of spaces in the name/path, provided they begin with an opening quotation mark and end with a closing quotation mark.

Post-Backup process

Displays the name/path of the backup process that you want to run after the respective phase. You can use this space to enter a path for the backup process that will execute after this phase on the subclient. Click **Browse** to search for and select the name/path of the process. The system allows the use of spaces in the name/path, provided they begin with an opening quotation mark and end with a closing quotation mark.

Run Post Backup Process for all attempts

Specifies whether this process will execute for all attempts to run the phase. Selecting this option will execute the post backup process for all attempts to run the phase, including situations where the job phase is interrupted, suspended, or fails. Otherwise, when the checkbox is cleared the specified process will only execute for successful, killed, or failed jobs.

PreSnap process

Displays the name/path of the Snap process that you want to run before the respective phase. You can use this space to add or modify PreSnap processes for a subclient. Click **Browse** to search for and select the name/path of the process. The system allows the use of spaces in the name/path, provided they begin with an opening quotation mark and end with a closing quotation mark.

PostSnap process

Displays the name/path of the Snap process that you want to run after the respective phase. You can use this space to add or modify PostSnap processes for a subclient. Click **Browse** to search for and select the name/path of the process. The system allows the use of spaces in the name/path, provided they begin with an opening quotation mark and end with a closing quotation mark.

On Source

Specifies whether the PreSnap/PostSnap process will execute on the source computer.

On Proxy

Specifies whether the PreSnap/PostSnap process will execute on the proxy computer.

Browse

Click to search for and select the Pre/Post Process.

Run As / User Account

Displays either the Local System Account, or for added security, another account as having permission to run these commands.

Change

Click to add or modify the account that has permission to run these commands.

Back to Top

Storage Device

Use this dialog box to establish the storage device related settings on the selected subclient. Note that all the options described in this help may not be available and only the options displayed in the dialog box are applicable to the agent or enabler for which the information is being displayed.

The following tabs are displayed:

- (Data) Storage Policy
- Data Transfer Option
- Deduplication

STORAGE POLICY

Use this tab to select or view storage policy settings on the selected subclient.

Data/Database/Transaction Log Storage Policy

Displays the storage policy to which this subclient is currently associated. To associate a storage policy to a new subclient or to change the storage policy associated with an existing subclient, click one in the list.

Incremental Storage Policy

Displays the name of the Incremental Storage Policy associated with this subclient, if the storage policy has the Incremental Storage Policy option enabled.

Data Paths

Click to view or modify the data paths associated with the primary storage policy copy of the selected storage policy.

Number of Data/Database/Transaction Log Backup Streams

Displays the number of streams used for backup operations. To change the number of streams, click one in the list. For DB2 DPF, be sure to set the appropriate number of streams for each database partition by double-clicking the appropriate **Stream** space and typing the desired number.

Client/Instance/Status/Stream

Displays the names of the instances according to current backup priority along with other associated information that are included in the Oracle RAC node. To change the backup priority of the instances, click the instance name as appropriate and use the directional arrows provided.

Maximum Backup Streams

For Informix, displays the maximum number of streams used for database backup operations, which is determined from the ONCONFIG file. The number of streams for backups cannot be set currently from the CommCell Console. Instead, you must set the BAR_MAX_BACKUP parameter in the \$ONCONFIG file on the Informix client. Also, the number of streams specified by the storage policy must be greater than or equal to the number specified by the BAR_MAX_BACKUP parameter.

Data Threshold Streams

For Oracle RAC, specifies whether to run the backup job immediately when the total number of reserved streams is greater than or equal to the value in this field. If you click this option, use the space provided to change this value if desired.

Create Storage Policy

Click to launch the Create a Storage Policy wizard. Once the storage policy has been created, it will be displayed in the list of storage policies to which the selected subclient can be associated.

Buffer Size

Use this space to specify the size (in 4 KB pages) of each buffer to be used for building the backup image. The minimum value is 8, and the default value is 1024. If you select value 0, the value of the backbufz database manager configuration parameter will be used as the buffer allocation size.

DATA TRANSFER OPTION

Use this tab to establish the options for data transfer. Note that all the options described in this help may not be available and only the options displayed in the dialog box are applicable to the agent for which the information is being displayed.

Software Compression

Indicates whether software compression for the subclient or instance is enabled or disabled, and if enabled whether it is performed on the client or MediaAgent computer.

• On Client

Click to enable software compression on the client computer.

• On MediaAgent

Click to enable software compression on the MediaAgent computer.

• Use Storage Policy Settings

Click to use the settings enabled on deduplicated storage policy copy.

This option applies when subclient is associated with a storage policy copy that is deduplicated. See Copy Properties (Deduplication) - Advanced tab for compression settings on deduplicated storage policy copy.

• Off

Click to disable software compression.

Note that hardware compression has priority over the software compression. Hardware compression is established in the Data Path Properties dialog box. The above software compression option will take effect when the data path is associated with a disk library, or when hardware compression is disabled in the data path associated with tape libraries.



For non-deduplicated storage policy copy, select **On Client** or **On MediaAgent** options to turn on compression, depending upon your environment.

Resource Tuning

Indicates the processes used by the client to transfer data based and whether bandwidth throttling is enabled or not.

Network Agents

Specifies the number of data pipes/processes that the client uses to transfer data over a network. Increasing this value may provide better throughput if the network and the network configuration in your environment can support it. On non-UNIX computers, the default value is 2 and a maximum of 4 can be established if necessary. On UNIX computers the default value is 1 and a maximum of 2 can be established if necessary.

• Throttle Network Bandwidth (MB/HR)

Specifies whether the backup throughput is controlled or not. (By default this option is not selected and therefore the throughput is not controlled). When selected, use the space to specify a value for the throughput. By default, this is set to 500. The minimum value is 1 and there is no limit to the maximum value. (In this case the backup throughput will be restricted to the maximum bandwidth on the network.)

Use this option to set the backup throughput, based on the network bandwidth in your environment. Use this option to reduce the backup throughput, so that the entire network bandwidth is not consumed, especially in slow links. Increasing this value will end up consuming the bandwidth with the maximum throughput limited to the network bandwidth capability.

Note that throttling is done on a per Network Agent basis.

Application Read Size

This option specifies the amount of application data (such as SQL data, Windows File System data, and virtual machine data) backup jobs will read for each unit transferred to the MediaAgent.

The default value for this options is 64KB; however, this value may be increased to reduce the amount of data read from the given application, which in turn reduces the amount of I/O operations performed against it. As a result, overall backup performance may increase. However, backup memory usage may also increase, which may inadvertently consume additional resources from the application. Thus, it is recommended that this value be set at either the default value or match the block size directed by the application.

DEDUPLICATION

Use this tab to establish the options for deduplication on the subclient. It indicates whether deduplication for the subclient is enabled or disabled, and if enabled whether the signature generation (a component of deduplication) is performed on the client or MediaAgent computer.

Note that deduplication is supported on disk storage devices. So the deduplication options are applicable only if the subclient is associated with a Storage Policy containing disk storage.

On Client

Click to enable signature generation on the client computer.

On MediaAgent

Click to enable signature generation on the MediaAgent computer.

Back to Top

Filters

Use this dialog box to add, modify, or view the filters on the selected subclient.

Include Global Filters

Displays a list of options for enabling or disabling Global Filters which can be used in addition to the filters set at the subclient level to exclude data from data protection operations for this subclient. To change the setting, select one of the following values from the list:

- OFF Disables Global Filters for this subclient.
- **ON** Enables Global Filters for this subclient.
- Use Cell Level Policy Enables or disables Global Filters for this subclient depending on whether the Use Global Filters on All Subclients option is enabled or disabled on the Control Panel (Global Filters) dialog. If the Use Global Filters on All Subclients option is enabled, then the Use Cell Level Policy option will enable Global Filters on this subclient. If the Use Global Filters on All Subclients option is disabled, then the Use Cell Level Policy option will disable Global Filters on this subclient.

Exclude the following folders

Displays entries that will be excluded from data protection operations for this subclient.

Exclude the folders that contain the following patterns

Displays wildcard patterns to filter mailboxes from backups. The pattern you enter will be applied to all content defined for the subclient. Enter each wildcard pattern on a separate line. For a comprehensive wildcard list, see Wildcards.

Wildcard Example	Description
Sent*	To filter out a folder which begins with Sent, specify the name of the folder and the asterisk * wildcard with no delimiters.
Sent Items\test*	To filter out a subfolder called test, specify the full path including the leader \setminus backslash.
\test	To filter out any path that ends in a folder name, use the full path including the leader $\$ backslash and the asterisk $*$ wildcard for the first level.

Add

Click to manually add an entry to be included in, or excluded from, data protection operations for this subclient.

Edit

Click to manually edit an entry to be included in, or excluded from, data protection operations for this subclient.

Delete

Click to delete a selected filter entry.

Back to Top

Wildcards

The supported wildcards include:

Wildcards	Description

*	Any number of any characters. For example:
	 Accounting* For search operations, the above wildcard pattern returns search results for any messages or items that match the pattern "Accounting" followed by any number of any characters, found in any of the following fields (where applicable): Subject, From, To, Cc, Bcc, Content, or Attachment; (e.g., Accounting Meeting Minutes, Accounting Manager, Accounting Records,
	 etc.). For filtering operations, the above wildcard pattern filters any mailbox folder name that begins with "Accounting" followed by any number of any characters (e.g., Accounting Mailbox, Accounting Folder, etc.). For more filtering examples using this wildcard character, see the note at the bottom of this page.
	• For auto-discovery operations, the above wildcard pattern auto-discovers any mailbox display name that begins with "Accounting" followed by any number of any characters (e.g., Accounting Mailbox, Accounting Manager, etc.).
?	Any one character. For example: user_group?
	 For search operations, the above wildcard pattern returns search results for any messages or items that match the pattern beginning with "user_group" followed by any one character, found in any of the following fields (where applicable): Subject, From, To, Cc, Bcc, Content, or Attachment; (e.g., user_groupA, user_group1, etc.). For filtering operations, the above wildcard pattern filters any mailbox folder name that begins with "user_group" followed by any one character (e.g., user_group1, etc.).
	• For auto-discovery operations, the above wildcard pattern auto-discovers any mailbox display name that begins with "user_group" followed by any one character (e.g., user_groupA, user_group1, etc.).
[]	Any range of characters. For example: [JT]im
	• For filtering operations, the above wildcard pattern excludes from data protection operations any mailbox folder name that begins with "J" or "T" and ends with "im" (e.g., Jim, Tim).
	• For auto-discovery operations, the above wildcard pattern auto-discovers any mailbox display name that begins with "J" or "T" and ends with "im" (e.g., Jim, Tim).
	 [a-k]Lee For filtering operations, the above wildcard pattern excludes from data protection operations any mailbox folder name that begins with any character in the range of "a" through "k" inclusive and that ends with "Lee" (e.g., aLee, bLee, etc.).
	 For auto-discovery operations, the above wildcard pattern auto-discovers any mailbox display name that begins with any character in the range of "a" through "k" inclusive and that ends with "Lee" (e.g., aLee, bLee, etc.). This wildcard cannot be used for search operations.
[!]	The negation of a range of characters. For example:
	[!ei]nsure
	• For filtering operations, the above wildcard pattern excludes from data protection operations any mailbox folder name that ends with "nsure" but does not begin with "e" or "i" (e.g., unsure).
	• For auto-discovery operations, the above wildcard pattern auto-discovers any mailbox display name that ends with "nsure" but does not begin with "e" or "i" (e.g., unsure).
	 [!a-k] Lee For filtering operations, the above wildcard pattern excludes from data protection operations any mailbox folder name that
	 does not begin with "a" through "k" and that ends with "Lee" (e.g., xLee, yLee, etc.). For auto-discovery operations, the above wildcard pattern auto-discovers any mailbox display name that does not begin
	• For auto-discovery operations, the above wildcard pattern auto-discovers any mailbox display name that does not begin with "a" through "k" and that ends with "Lee" (e.g., xLee, yLee, etc.).
	 For auto-discovery operations, the above wildcard pattern auto-discovers any mailbox display name that does not begin with "a" through "k" and that ends with "Lee" (e.g., xLee, yLee, etc.). This wildcard cannot be used for search operations.
<u> </u>	• For auto-discovery operations, the above wildcard pattern auto-discovers any mailbox display name that does not begin with "a" through "k" and that ends with "Lee" (e.g., xLee, yLee, etc.).
<u></u>	 For auto-discovery operations, the above wildcard pattern auto-discovers any mailbox display name that does not begin with "a" through "k" and that ends with "Lee" (e.g., xLee, yLee, etc.). This wildcard cannot be used for search operations. You can also use a combination of wildcards in a single expression, if the wildcards are supported for the type of operation you are performing. For example, if you wanted to auto-discover all mailbox display names beginning with any characters in the range of "A" through "K" inclusive followed by any number of any characters, you would enter the following wildcard
<u></u>	 For auto-discovery operations, the above wildcard pattern auto-discovers any mailbox display name that does not begin with "a" through "k" and that ends with "Lee" (e.g., xLee, yLee, etc.). This wildcard cannot be used for search operations. You can also use a combination of wildcards in a single expression, if the wildcards are supported for the type of operation you are performing. For example, if you wanted to auto-discover all mailbox display names beginning with any characters in the range of "A" through "K" inclusive followed by any number of any characters, you would enter the following wildcard combination: [A-K]* Keep in mind that the path entered for the subclient filter is based on what level is being filtered out. The examples provided below illustrate this point:
	 For auto-discovery operations, the above wildcard pattern auto-discovers any mailbox display name that does not begin with "a" through "k" and that ends with "Lee" (e.g., xLee, yLee, etc.). This wildcard cannot be used for search operations. You can also use a combination of wildcards in a single expression, if the wildcards are supported for the type of operation you are performing. For example, if you wanted to auto-discover all mailbox display names beginning with any characters in the range of "A" through "K" inclusive followed by any number of any characters, you would enter the following wildcard combination: [A-K]* Keep in mind that the path entered for the subclient filter is based on what level is being filtered out. The examples provided below illustrate this point: To filter out a root folder called "Sent Items", specify the name of the folder and the asterisk "*" wildcard with no delimiters, as shown in the following example:
<u></u>	 For auto-discovery operations, the above wildcard pattern auto-discovers any mailbox display name that does not begin with "a" through "k" and that ends with "Lee" (e.g., xLee, yLee, etc.). This wildcard cannot be used for search operations. You can also use a combination of wildcards in a single expression, if the wildcards are supported for the type of operation you are performing. For example, if you wanted to auto-discover all mailbox display names beginning with any characters in the range of "A" through "K" inclusive followed by any number of any characters, you would enter the following wildcard combination: [A-K]* Keep in mind that the path entered for the subclient filter is based on what level is being filtered out. The examples provided below illustrate this point: • To filter out a root folder called "Sent Items", specify the name of the folder and the asterisk "*" wildcard with no delimiters, as shown in the following example: Sent*
<u></u>	 For auto-discovery operations, the above wildcard pattern auto-discovers any mailbox display name that does not begin with "a" through "k" and that ends with "Lee" (e.g., xLee, yLee, etc.). This wildcard cannot be used for search operations. You can also use a combination of wildcards in a single expression, if the wildcards are supported for the type of operation you are performing. For example, if you wanted to auto-discover all mailbox display names beginning with any characters in the range of "A" through "K" inclusive followed by any number of any characters, you would enter the following wildcard combination: [A-K]* Keep in mind that the path entered for the subclient filter is based on what level is being filtered out. The examples provided below illustrate this point: To filter out a root folder called "Sent Items", specify the name of the folder and the asterisk "*" wildcard with no delimiters, as shown in the following example: Sent* To filter out a subfolder called "test", specify the full path including the leader "\", as shown in the following example:
<u>^</u>	 For auto-discovery operations, the above wildcard pattern auto-discovers any mailbox display name that does not begin with "a" through "k" and that ends with "Lee" (e.g., xLee, yLee, etc.). This wildcard cannot be used for search operations. You can also use a combination of wildcards in a single expression, if the wildcards are supported for the type of operation you are performing. For example, if you wanted to auto-discover all mailbox display names beginning with any characters in the range of "A" through "K" inclusive followed by any number of any characters, you would enter the following wildcard combination: [A-K]* Keep in mind that the path entered for the subclient filter is based on what level is being filtered out. The examples provided below illustrate this point: To filter out a root folder called "Sent Items", specify the name of the folder and the asterisk "*" wildcard with no delimiters, as shown in the following example: Sent* To filter out a subfolder called "test", specify the full path including the leader "\", as shown in the following example: Sent Items\test*
<u>\$</u>	 For auto-discovery operations, the above wildcard pattern auto-discovers any mailbox display name that does not begin with "a" through "k" and that ends with "Lee" (e.g., xLee, yLee, etc.). This wildcard cannot be used for search operations. You can also use a combination of wildcards in a single expression, if the wildcards are supported for the type of operation you are performing. For example, if you wanted to auto-discover all mailbox display names beginning with any characters in the range of "A" through "K" inclusive followed by any number of any characters, you would enter the following wildcard combination: [A-K]* Keep in mind that the path entered for the subclient filter is based on what level is being filtered out. The examples provided below illustrate this point: To filter out a root folder called "Sent Items", specify the name of the folder and the asterisk "*" wildcard with no delimiters, as shown in the following example: Sent* To filter out a subfolder called "test", specify the full path including the leader "\", as shown in the following example: Sent Items\test* To filter out any path that ends in a folder name, use the full path including the leader "\" and the asterisk "*" wildcard for the first level, as shown in the following example:
<u>\$</u>	 For auto-discovery operations, the above wildcard pattern auto-discovers any mailbox display name that does not begin with "a" through "k" and that ends with "Lee" (e.g., xLee, yLee, etc.). This wildcard cannot be used for search operations. You can also use a combination of wildcards in a single expression, if the wildcards are supported for the type of operation you are performing. For example, if you wanted to auto-discover all mailbox display names beginning with any characters in the range of "A" through "K" inclusive followed by any number of any characters, you would enter the following wildcard combination: [A-K]* Keep in mind that the path entered for the subclient filter is based on what level is being filtered out. The examples provided below illustrate this point: To filter out a root folder called "Sent Items", specify the name of the folder and the asterisk "*" wildcard with no delimiters, as shown in the following example: Sent* To filter out a subfolder called "test", specify the full path including the leader "\", as shown in the following example: Sent Items\test*

• To filter all directories that begin with a particular word on all drives (e.g. My_Filter), use the global filter:
*:**\My_Filter***
• If you know the drive letter to filter, use the subclient filter as follows:
C:**\My_Filter***
• To filter every directory named "temp" on all drives, use the global filter:
*:**\temp**
Or use the subclient filter:
C:**\temp**
• To filter every "recycler" directory on all drives, use the global filter:
*:**\RECYCLER**
Or use the subclient filter:
C:**\RECYCLER**
Do not use "temp*" when all you want to filter is temp, as it will get "template" and other directories with word "temp".

Back To Top

Encryption

Use this dialog box to select the data encryption options for the selected content. When accessing this dialog box from the Subclient Properties Encryption tab, this setting applies only to the selected subclient content for operations run from the CommCell Console. When accessing this dialog box from the Instance Properties Encryption tab, this setting applies only to third-party Command Line operations. The functionality is not propagated to the Subclient Properties Encryption tabs.

None

When selected, no encryption will take place during a data protection operations.

Media Only (MediaAgent Side)

When selected, for data protection operations, data is transmitted without encryption and then encrypted prior to storage. During data recovery operations, data is decrypted by the client.

When using this setting in conjunction with the client property **With a Pass-Phrase**, you will be required to provide a pass-phrase for data recovery operations unless you export the client pass-phrase to the destination client(s). When using pass-phrase security for third-party Command Line operations or DataArchiver Agents stub recovery operations, you must export the pass- phrase to the destination client.

Network and Media (Agent Side)

When selected, for data protection operations, data is encrypted before transmission and is stored encrypted on the media. During data recovery operations, data is decrypted by the client.

When using this setting in conjunction with the client property **With a Pass-Phrase**, you will be required to provide a pass-phrase for data recovery operations unless you export the client pass-phrase to the destination clients.

Network Only (Agent Encrypts, MediaAgent Decrypts)

When selected, for data protection operations, data is encrypted for transmission and then decrypted prior to storage on the media. During data recovery operations, data is encrypted by the MediaAgent and then decrypted in the client.

When using this setting in conjunction with the client property **With a Pass-Phrase**, you will not be required to provide a pass-phrase for data recovery operations.

Script Preview

Click to display the backup script, based on the current subclient configuration, that will be submitted to RMAN when backups are performed for the selected Oracle subclient.

Job Initiation

Select from the following options. Note that all the options described in this help may not be available and only the options displayed in the dialog box are applicable to the operation for which the information is being displayed.

Immediate

Run This Job Now

Specifies this job will run immediately.

Schedule

Specifies this job will be scheduled. When you click Configure, the Schedule Details dialog box will open and allow you to configure the schedule pattern.

Result file location on CommServe

This option is only applicable for List Media operations. Specifies the name of the file in which the results of the scheduled list media job must be saved. Click **Browse** to access to the **Directory Browse** dialog box which allows you to select the folder / file in the CommServe computer.

Automatic Copy

Specifies that an auxiliary copy operation will be performed at the interval specified. This operation will occur when new data that must be copied is found on the primary copy.

Interval

The time interval in which the Automatic Copy will be performed. The default interval is 30 minutes.

Save As Script

Click to open the Save As Script dialog, which allows you to save this operation and the selected options as a script file (in XML format). The script can later be executed from the Command Line Interface using qoperation execute command.

When you save an operation as a script, each option in the dialog will have a corresponding xml parameter in the script file. When executing the script, you can modify the value for any of these XML parameters as per need.

To view the XML values for each of the options in the dialog, see the following:

Operations Supporting Save As Script

Configure Alert

Provides the necessary options to configure the alerts associated with this operation.

• Add/Modify Alert

When clicked, opens the Alert Wizard to configure necessary alerts for this operation.

Delete Alert

When clicked, deletes any existing alerts that are already configured.

Advanced

Click to select additional options.

Script Preview

Click to display the restore script, based on the selected restore options, that will be submitted to RMAN when restores are performed for the selected Oracle client.

Startup

Select from the following options. Note that all the options described in this help may not be available and only the options displayed in the dialog box are applicable to the operation for which the information is being displayed.

Priority

• Use Default Priority

If selected, the default priority for this type of job will be used in determining how the Job Manager will allocate resources for this job.

• Change Priority

Use this option to manually specify the priority for the job, between 0 (highest priority) and 999 (lowest priority). The Job Manager will use the priority setting when allocating the required resources. This is useful if you have jobs that are very important and must complete, or jobs that can be moved to a lower priority.

Start up in suspended state

Specifies that this job will start in the Job Controller in a suspended state and cannot run until the job is manually resumed using the **Resume** option. This option can be used to add a level of manual control when a job is started. For example, you could schedule jobs to start in the suspended state and then choose which scheduled jobs complete by resuming the operation started in the suspended state.

Description

Use this field to enter a description about the entity. This description can include information about the entity's content, cautionary notes, etc.

Alert

Use this tab to configure an alert for a schedule policy.

Configure Alert

• Alert

The currently configured Alert.

• Add/Modify Alert

When clicked, opens the Alert Wizard to configure alerts for this operation.

• Delete Alert

When clicked, deletes any existing alerts that are already configured.